



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

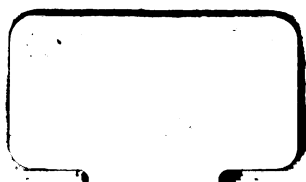
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

NEDL TRANSFER



HN 1MX9 J

32357









Heath's Modern Language Series

A

COMPENDIOUS

# FRENCH GRAMMAR

IN TWO INDEPENDENT PARTS

(INTRODUCTORY AND ADVANCED)

BY

A. HJALMAR EDGREN, PH.D.

PROFESSOR OF MODERN LANGUAGES AND SANSKRIT IN THE UNIVERSITY OF  
NEBRASKA; AUTHOR OF ENGLISH AND SANSKRIT GRAMMARS, ETC.

*3.00  
variant. copy*



BOSTON, U. S. A.

D. C. HEATH & CO., PUBLISHERS

1890

KD32357



*Copyright, 1890,*  
**By A. HJALMAR EDGREN.**

**TYPOGRAPHY BY J. S. CUSHING & Co., BOSTON.**

**PRINTED BY ROCKWELL AND CHURCHILL.**

## PREFACE.

---

THIS grammar is prepared with special reference to the needs of our American schools and colleges. Its *limit* — for it purposely disavows all claims to completeness — is determined by the average time devoted to French in such institutions; and its *method*, by practical as well as critical aims.

To meet a twofold need, first, of an easy and rapid introduction to reading, secondly, of a critical exposition of both grammar and syntax, the book is divided into two parts, each forming by itself an independent whole.

**The First Part** is intended to enable the learner to begin reading with profit at the earliest practicable moment, — or in from three to six weeks. It contains merely an elementary outline of the essentials of French *pronunciation* and *accidence* (some indispensable syntactical directions included), as well as accompanying *exercises*. The rules are purposely few, and as simple as has seemed compatible with accuracy of statement. Details and exceptions are left to the Second Part, where each of the subjects contained here, as well as others, receives fuller and independent treatment.

Though entirely elementary, this First Part is thought to contain sufficient material for its purpose. It may even be all that is needed where only a minimum of time can be given to grammar, or where scholars are too young to undertake a more earnest study of details.

**The Second Part** is intended for a more critical study of the language after reading has begun. Here a methodical presen-

tation of its grammar and syntax, each by itself, has been adopted, exercises being arranged separately at the end of the book, where they will not obstruct such a presentation, nor impede reference. In the framing of rules I have purposely tried to reconcile in each comparative fulness with conciseness, preferring one rule, unless too unwieldy, to several. Too much disintegration is apt to slacken the student's grasp and prevent a clear comprehension of principles. On the same ground the leading features of such difficult topics as the Irregular Verbs and the Subjunctive are briefly outlined by themselves before details are given, lest the student be lost in the mazes of the latter. Moreover, I have attempted to distinguish by a difference in type what has seemed to me more or less necessary to commit to memory. Everything that may be left out in a first course is printed in small type, part of this — as especially the lists of indeclinables (164, etc.), of words or phrases requiring the subjunctive (324–30), of verbs requiring the infinitive with or without *de* or *à* (344, 347, 351) — being even intended for reference only. The syntactical rules are accompanied by copious examples, which the student is recommended to learn one and all, more genuine French being acquired in this way than by too early attempts at composition.

A few explanatory remarks about some of the more direct innovations of this grammar may not here be out of place.

*The Irregular Verbs* are first classified in a brief survey (155–60), where they should be studied in the order they are described. Then follow full conjugation tables in an alphabetical list to serve as an aid in that study, and for rapid and immediate reference when later the student wishes to find a form without refreshing his recollection of the rules for making it. The index contains all irregular verbs, simple and compound.

For the *Subjunctive* I have attempted an entirely new classification. That the use of this mode, yet involving in a large

measure a psychological distinction due to the nature of the subjunctive clause, should be classified primarily with reference to that distinction, and only secondarily with reference to certain preceding expressions causing the mental attitude expressed by the subjunctive, but not at all, or only incidentally, with reference to the syntactical nature of the clause where it occurs (as being subjective, objective, etc.), seems to me evident. I have consequently attempted such a classification. The brief synopsis of the use of the subjunctive, page 188 (farther illustrated and explained on the following pages) contains all, I think, the student need commit to memory in order to have a good grasp of the nature of the French subjunctive. That the simple method there adopted for explaining a mode so subtle and so affected by conventionalism in its use should be more than measurably complete and satisfactory is not expected; but it is hoped that it will be adapted to foster in the learner that feeling for the nature of the French subjunctive which must be his safest guide in using it himself. •

For the purpose of giving to the student a useful as well as interesting glimpse of the historical growth of the French language, as also to prepare him for those syntactical peculiarities he will meet with in older authors, a brief sketch of the main features of the *historical development* of actual forms and constructions has been included in Part II. That this extraneous matter may not, however, encumber the learner's progress, each historical topic is presented, in the merest outline only, at the head of appropriate chapters (or sections), where it may be looked over, by those interested, as a suggestive introduction to the actual laws of the language. It should be stated here that § 1, containing *in nuce* the outlines of French phonetics according to recent theories, is intended not so much for immediate use as for forming later a condensed synopsis of the subject, by the aid of which the teacher, expanding it as he may deem advisable, can explain to his class intelligently

the derivation of French words. My own experience is that a small fraction of each hour judiciously devoted to such explanation, after the class is fairly started in reading, is apt to be both inspiring and productive of good results.<sup>1</sup>

To the grammar proper have been added a chapter on *French Versification*, and one on *The Relation of Anglo-French and French words*. This, I suppose, needs no plea.

Among grammars referred to in the preparation of my own should be mentioned those of Mätzner, Brunot, Clédât, Chas-sung, Cayer, Pløetz, Lücking, and Plattner. I am greatly indebted to Professor Edward S. Joynes for valuable comments on my MS. in its inchoate state, and for kindest aid and encouragement during the farther progress of the work. Also to Professors Adolphe Cohn, C. Fontaine, Alcée Fortier, A. N. Van Daell, L. A. Sherman, and others my thanks are due for timely suggestions in the proofs or otherwise.

If this grammar be deemed an effort in the right direction, and can contribute, in its humble way, towards promoting true educational interests, which should consider not only the *how*, but also the *why*, and aim at developing critical discernment rather than versatility, its ambition will be amply fulfilled.

A. H. EDGREN.

UNIVERSITY OF NEBRASKA,  
May, 1890.

---

<sup>1</sup> To students wishing to pursue further the subject of historical French grammar may be especially recommended the excellent works of Brunot (*Grammaire historique de la langue française*) and Clédât (*Grammaire historique du français*). The latter is the more elementary and destined no doubt to continue (with its companion-volume *Grammaire élémentaire de la vieille langue française*) the valuable services rendered the student of French by Brachet's short grammar, now in several regards behind date.

*Remark.* — The following general suggestions as to how to use this book may not be entirely out of place. Learn well Part I. (with or without the English exercises, according to taste and age). Then begin reading easy French (for instance Super's Reader), referring for such verb-forms, as may not yet be understood to the reference-list, p. LVIII.; and study in connection with the reading, the irregular verbs, p. 79 etc., Part II., learning them well one by one as they are there classed and described. When all the irregular verbs are mastered, learn the remainder of Part II. to syntax (with or without the fine print, according to taste and age); and then the syntax, dealing with the fine print and the exercises according to circumstances. These grammar-studies should all be subordinated to critical and copious reading.





# CONTENTS.

[ALL REFERENCES ARE TO PAGES.]



## FIRST PART.

### INTRODUCTORY SURVEY OF FRENCH GRAMMAR.

	PAGE
Pronunciation . . . . .	I
Article and Partitive Sign. . . . .	VIII
Nouns. . . . .	XIII
Adjectives . . . . .	XV
Numerals . . . . .	XX
Pronouns. . . . .	XXIII
Verbs, Regular, xxxv; Irregular, L . . . . .	xxxv
Indeclinable . . . . .	LXI

## SECOND PART.

### GRAMMAR AND SYNTAX.

<i>The French Language: History</i> . . . . .	3-5
---	-----

#### I. ELEMENTARY SOUNDS AND ACCENT.

<i>History</i> . . . . .	1-7
Notation of Sounds . . . . .	7-9
Alphabet, 7. — Subsidiary signs (accents, etc.), 8. — Syllabication, 9.	
Accent and Quantity . . . . .	9-10

	PAGE
Pronunciation . . . . .	10-24
Simple vowels, 10-12. — Monophthongs, 13. — Diphthongs and dissyllabics, 14-15. — Nasal vowels, 15-16. — Conso- nants (General rule, 16-17; Special rules, 17-23). — Proper nouns and foreign words, 23.	
Joining of Words . . . . .	24-5

## II. COMMON CHANGES . . . . . 26-7

### III. ARTICLE AND PARTITIVE SIGN.

<i>History</i> . . . . .	27
Definite or Generic Article . . . . .	27-8
Indefinite Article . . . . .	28
Partitive Sign . . . . .	29-30

### IV. NOUNS.

<i>History</i> . . . . .	30-1
Plural Formation . . . . .	32-5
Common nouns, 32. — Proper nouns, 34. — Compound nouns, 35.	
Gender . . . . .	35-8
Masculines, 32. — Feminines, 36. — Formal relation between kindred masculines and feminines, 38.	

### V. ADJECTIVES.

<i>History</i> . . . . .	38-9
Plural Formation . . . . .	39
Formation of the Feminine . . . . .	40-2
General rule, 40. — Etymological changes, 40-1. — Ortho- graphical changes, 41-2. — Compound adjectives, 42.	
Comparison . . . . .	43-4

### VI. NUMERALS.

<i>History</i> . . . . .	44
Cardinals . . . . .	44-6

	PAGE
Ordinals . . . . .	46
Other Numerals . . . . .	46-7

## VII. PRONOUNS.

<i>History</i> . . . . .	47-8
Classification . . . . .	48
Personal . . . . .	49-53
List, 49. — Pronominal particles, 50. — Position of conjunctive pronouns, 50-1. — Reflexive expression, 52-3.	
Possessives . . . . .	53-4
Demonstratives . . . . .	54-5
Interrogatives . . . . .	55-6
Relatives . . . . .	56-7
Indefinite . . . . .	58-60

## VIII. VERBS.

<i>History</i> . . . . .	60-2
Classification . . . . .	63-4
Regular Verbs . . . . .	64-79
<i>aimer, finir, rompre</i> , 65-7. — Phonetic and other changes, 68-9.	
— Minor irregularities, 69. — Principal parts, 69-70. — Impersonal verbs, 70. — Compound verb-forms, 70. — <i>avoir, être</i> , 71-3. — Compound active tenses, 73-4. — Passive tenses, 74. — Reflexive verbs, 76-7. — Interrogative forms, 78-9. — Negative forms, 79. — Negative-interrogative forms, 79.	
Irregular Verbs . . . . .	79-104
General classification and description, 79-83. — Alphabetical reference-list, 83.	

## IX. INDECLINABLE WORDS.

<i>History</i> . . . . .	105
Adverbs . . . . .	105-8
Lists, 106-7. — Comparison, 107. — Negation, 107-8.	
Prepositions . . . . .	108
Conjunctions . . . . .	109
Interjections . . . . .	109

## SYNTAX.

	PAGE
X. INTRODUCTORY . . . . .	110-11

## XI. ARTICLES AND PARTITIVE SIGN.

<i>History</i> . . . . .	111
Use of the Definite (or Generic) Article . . . . .	111-18
Definite article [before common nouns, 112-14; before proper nouns, 114-16]. — Generic article, 117-18.	
Use of the Indefinite Article . . . . .	119
Use of the Partitive Sign . . . . .	119-22
Dependent partitive sign, 119-20. — Independent partitive sign, 120-22.	
Repetition of Articles and Partitive Sign . . . . .	123
Omission of Articles . . . . .	123-5

## XII. NOUNS.

<i>History</i> . . . . .	125
Nouns without Preposition . . . . .	125-7
Nouns with a Preposition . . . . .	127-34
With <i>de</i> , 128-30. — With <i>à</i> , 130-1. — With <i>dans</i> , <i>en</i> , 131-2. — With other prepositions, 133. — Repetition of prepositions, 133-4.	

## XIII. ADJECTIVES.

<i>History</i> . . . . .	134
Agreement of Adjectives . . . . .	134-7
Place of Attributive Adjectives . . . . .	137-40
Comparison . . . . .	141-3

## XIV. NUMERALS.

<i>History</i> . . . . .	143
Idiomatrical Uses . . . . .	143-4

## XV. PRONOUNS.

	PAGE
<i>History</i> . . . . .	144-5
Personals . . . . .	145
Use of conjunctives and disjunctives, 145-50. — Dative relation, 147-9. — <i>en</i> and <i>y</i> , 149. — 1st and 2d persons, 151-2. — 3d persons, 152-7 ( <i>il</i> or <i>ce</i> with <i>être</i> , 154). — Position, 156-7.	
Possessives . . . . .	157-9
Demonstratives . . . . .	159-63
Interrogatives . . . . .	163-5
Relatives . . . . .	165-8
Indefinites . . . . .	168-73

## XVI. VERBS.

<i>History</i> . . . . .	174
Agreement of Verb and Subject . . . . .	174-8
Indicative . . . . .	178-85
Simple present, 178-80. — Compound present, 180. — Simple and compound imperfect and preterit, 181-3. — Simple and compound future, 183. — Simple and compound conditional, 184-5. — Certain idiomatic uses, 184-5.	
Subjunctive . . . . .	186-201
<i>History</i> , 319. — Subjunctive in subordinate clauses [General principles, 186-7; Tabular statement, 188; Alphabetical reference-lists of words followed by subjunctive, 193-5. — Infinitive for subjunctive, 195-6. — Special cases of subjunctive use, 196-8. — Use of tense, 198-9]. — Subjunctive in independent clauses, 200-1.	
Infinitive . . . . .	201-10
<i>History</i> , 201. — Inf. without preposition, 202-4. — Inf. with <i>de</i> , 204-6. — Inf. with <i>à</i> , 206-7. — Inf. alone or with <i>de</i> or <i>à</i> , 207-9. — Inf. with other prepositions, 209-10. — Inf. after nouns and adjectives, 210.	
Participles . . . . .	210-15
<i>History</i> , 211. — Present participle, 211-12 (with <i>en</i> , 212). — Past participle, 212-15.	

## XVII. INDECLINABLES.

	PAGE
Negations . . . . .	216-25
<i>History</i> , 216. — <i>non pas, pas</i> , 216-17. — <i>ne pas</i> , 217-18. — <i>ne</i> alone, 218-20. — <i>ne</i> expletive, 220-3. — Other negations, 223-5 ( <i>ni</i> , 225).	
Other Indeclinables . . . . .	226-30
Adverbs, 226-8. — Conjunctions, 228-30.	

## XVIII. ARRANGEMENT OF THE SENTENCE.

<i>History</i> . . . . .	230
Direct Arrangement . . . . .	231-2
Inverted Arrangement . . . . .	232-5

## XIX. PUNCTUATION AND CAPITALS . . 235-6

## XX. FRENCH VERSE.

General Character . . . . .	236-8
Details . . . . .	238-42
Number of syllables; <i>cæsura</i> , 238. — <i>Hiatus</i> , 239. — <i>Rhyme</i> , 239-40. — Choice of words and constructions, 240.	

## XXI. RELATION OF ANGLO-FRENCH AND FRENCH WORDS.

French Words in English . . . . .	242-3
Difference in Form between Anglo-French and French Words . . . . .	244-6
Difference in Meaning between Anglo-French and French Words . . . . .	246
Anglo-French Words lost in French . . . . .	249
Exercises to the Syntax . . . . .	250-72
Vocabulary . . . . .	273-86
Index . . . . .	287-93

# **PART I.**

## **PRACTICAL SURVEY OF FRENCH GRAMMAR**

**(CALCULATED FOR HALF A TERM, OR LESS)**





# BRIEF INTRODUCTORY SURVEY OF FRENCH GRAMMAR.

---

## PRONUNCIATION.

[For fuller information the student is here, as elsewhere in this Survey, referred to Part II.]

**1. ALPHABET.**—The French alphabet contains the **same written letters** as the English.

Some of these letters, however, may have an orthographical sign attached to them. Thus, a vowel may have an **Accent** (acute ´, as in *dé*; grave ` , as in *dès*; or circumflex ^, as in *mât*) to denote sound or origin; or the **Diæresis** (¨, as in *naïf*) to denote separation from a preceding vowel. And *c* may have the **Cedilla** (¸, as in *ça*) to denote that it sounds like *s* before *a*, *o*, *u*.

**NOTE.**—Name the letters as usually pronounced (5, 10), adding *e* ‘mute’ to the consonants (*be*, *ce*, etc.). Particulars in Part II, § 3.

**2. SYLLABICATION.**—The general principle of syllabication is that a non-initial syllable should begin, if possible, with **one** consonant-sound [i.e. in writing, one consonant or a consonant-digraph (*ch*, *ph*, *th*, nasal *gn*)]; with **two** only if the last is a liquid (*r*, *l*) preceded by one that is not a liquid.—Ex. *fe-ra*, *par-lé*, *é-pe-lé*, *af-fec-té*, *symp-tô-me*; *a-che-ter*, *ga-gné*; — *trem-blé*, *a-près*.

NOTE.—In writing, however, *x* (not being a simple consonant) goes with the preceding vowel (e.g. *ex-il*), and in pronunciation, silent *h* is left out of account (e.g. *bo-nheur*, written *bon-heur*).

**3. ACCENT-STRESS.**—In French a slight prominence (accent) is given to the **last sonorous vowel** of a single word, while preceding sonorous vowels are uttered with equal stress.—Ex. *parlé*, *salade*, \* *probabilité*.

By a *sonorous vowel* is meant any vowel, except *e* ‘mute’ (which, however, counts as a syllable).

**4. VOWELS.**—The pronunciation of the vowels is given below. Their **quantity** may be long or short. The distinction, however, is often slight, and even uncertain; and only direct oral instruction can teach the beginner the right quantity in every case. French vowels never have the ‘vanish’ of English long vowels.

### 5. SIMPLE VOWELS.

**a** (*â*): 1. as in English ‘father’ (not quite so deep);—2. midway between ‘father’ and ‘at.’—Ex. (1) *bas*, *grâce*;—(2) *ma*, *salade*.

**e**: 1. **Closing a syllable** (cf. § 2), *e* has a sound approaching that of *e* in ‘err’ (being uttered rapidly, with a narrower aperture of the lips: = Germ. *ö*) at the end of monosyllables, and, usually, within polysyllables (e.g. *le*, *me-na†*). It is silent, or practically so, in polysyllables, as final or before final *s*; and it may be silent medially when no harsh sound arises (e.g. *âme*, *âmes*, *ma-la-de*; *de-ve-nir*).—2. **Not closing a syllable**, it usually sounds like *e* in ‘ere’ (i.e. = Fr. *è*); sometimes like *e* in ‘they’ (i.e. = Fr. *é*).—Ex. (= *è*) *fer*, *bel-le*; (= *é*) *nez*, *parler*.

**ô**: almost like *e* in ‘they,’ but usually short, except before *e* mute:—(long) *donnée*; (short) *donné*, *blé*.

---

\* Letters here printed in Roman type are mute (as described later).

† Hyphens here used simply to divide syllables.

**è, ê**: 1. long as *e* in 'ere' (or *ei* in 'heir'); or 2. short as *e* in 'let': — (1) *père, fête*; — (2) *brève, fêter*.

**i (î), y**: as *i* in 'police,' but long or short: — (long) *lie, île, hydre*; (short) *ni, inutile*.

**o (ô)**: close as in 'no,' or more open, approaching *o* in 'not': — (close) *rose, pôle*; (open) *sotte, folle*.

**u (û)**: to produce the sound of this vowel (which is = Germ. *ü*), prepare to utter *u* as in Engl. 'rue,' and then try, instead, to pronounce Fr. *i* without moving the lips. It is long or short: — (long) *rue, mûr*; — (short) *du, butte*.

**EXERCISE I.** — **a**: (1) *car, mât, fable, table, bas, grâce, âne, âme*; (2) *a, ma, ta, papa, salade, assez*. — **ø**: (1) *le, me, ve-nir, bre-bis, re-ce-vra; âme, âmes, base, malade, re-le-va*; (2: = *è*) *es, des, fer, ver-re, bel-le, met-tre, despote, promets*; (= *é*) *nez, assez, parlez, parler, des-servir, ef-ficace*; — **é** (long) *donnée, parlée*; (short) *donné, parlé, dé, blé, été, révééré, créé*. — **è, ê** (long) *père, mère, fête, bête, être, fe-nêtre, pèse*; (shorter) *brève, modèle, nièce*. — **i (î), y**: (long) *lie, amie, dise, île, abîme, hydre*; (short) *ni, fini, bâti, inutile, arrive*. — **o, ô**: (as in 'no') *rose, suppose, pôle, dôme, rôder*; (more open) *sotte, obéir, procède, folle*. — **u (û)**: (long) *rue, vue, ruse, mûr, flûte, déluge*; (short) *du, tu, butte, futur, fêrûle, minute*.

## 6. MONOPHTHONGS (combined vowels uttered as one).

**ai (aî), ei (eî)**: like *è*; but final *ai* of verbs like *é*: — (long) *baise, maître*; (short) *reine*; — (= *é*) *parlai*.

**au, eau**: like Fr. *o*: — (as in 'no') *pause*; (more open) *Paul*.

**eu (eû), œu**: 1. closer than *e* in 'err'; or 2. open, almost like *e* in 'err': — (close and long) *creuse, vœux, vœux*; — (open and short), *seul, veule*; longer, *leur, cœur (c = k)*.

**ou (oû, où)**: like *oo* in 'fool,' but long or short: — (long) *goût, roue*; (shorter) *doute, où*.

EXERCISE II. — **ai, ei**: (= è long) *baise, raie, maître, naïtre, grasseie*; (= è short) *aime, aimer, fait, parfaite, pleine, peiner*; (like é) *ai, parlai*. — **au, eau**: (close) *pause, pauvre, beau, beaucoup; fuseau*; (open) *Paul, restaure*. — **eu, œu**: (close) *creuse, deux, veux, neutre, vœux, bœufs*; (open) *seul, jeune, leur, bœuf*. — **ou**: (long) *goût, épouse, roue, bravoure*; (short) *ou, où, loup, couteau, foule, route*.

## 7. DIPHTHONGS.

In other vowel-combinations than those described above, each element usually has its own sound, though the first is apt to be only slightly pronounced. The chief exceptions are:—

**oi**: nearly like *wa-* in ‘waft’: — (1) *poivre, joie*; — (2 shorter) *moi, roi*.

**u + vowel** (or vowel-combination): If preceded by *g* or *q*, *u* is in most cases but a silent graphic sign to denote that *g* and *q* sound like hard *g* (in ‘go’) and *k* respectively (i.e. **gua, gué** = *ga, gé* as in ‘get’; **qua, que** = *ka, ke*; etc.): — **Ex.** *fatigua, fatigué, fatigue (fā-tīg); pratiqua, pratique*.

EXERCISE III. — **oi**: (1) *botte, poivre, voir, avoir*; (2) *moi, voit, voiture, tournoi*. — **gua, gue**, etc.: *fatigua, fatigue, pratiqua, quatre, guère, que-relle, gué, que, guide, qui, langue, plaque, bague*. — **Other combinations** (first vowel slightly dimmed): *pièce* (= *p<sup>i</sup>-ès*), *lui, cruel, Dieu, béat, lia, riez, lieu, diable*.

**8. y** between vowels is equivalent to French *i-y*, of which *i* combines with its preceding vowel. Hence *payer* = *pâ-yer* (*ai* as *è*), *royal* = *roi-yal* (*oi* as *wa-* in ‘wag’). But *pays* ‘country’ = *pai-i*.

**9. NASAL VOWELS.** — A single vowel or monophthong followed in the same syllable by one nasal (*n, m*) is **nasalized** (very nearly as *a* in Engl. ‘thank’ is nasalized by *n*), *n, m* losing entirely their independent utterance.

The French nasal vowels have no exact English equivalents. Denoting their nasality (which is *one* with them) by the sign ~, their sound may be represented in French as follows :

<b>an, am</b>	= $\tilde{a}$ ( <i>a</i> as in 'far').	Ex. <i>an, ruban, ambre.</i>
<b>on, om</b>	= $\tilde{o}$ (close <i>o</i> ).	" <i>on, mouton, ombre.</i>
<b>ain, aim</b>	} = $\tilde{ai}$ ( <i>ai</i> as è 2).	" { <i>main, poulain, faim.</i>
<b>ein, eim</b>		
<b>oun</b>	= $\tilde{eu}$ ( <i>eu</i> 2).	" <i>jeûn.</i>

But, besides this nasalization, **ø** (except chiefly in final *-ien*), *i* (*y*), and *u*, unless they are the finals of a monophthong (6), receive the value of French **a**, **ai**, and **eu** respectively. Hence :

<b>en, em</b>	= $\tilde{a}$ .	Ex. <i>en, empereur.</i>
<b>in, im</b>	} = $\tilde{ai}$ .	" <i>vin, nymphe.</i>
<b>yn, ym</b>		
<b>un, um</b>	= $\tilde{eu}$ .	" <i>un, humble.</i>

EXERCISE IV. — **y**: *payer, essayer, noyer, foyer, royal, appuyer, envoyer*. — **nasal vowels**: *an, volcan, quand, banquet, lampe, ample*; *en, vent, pente, enfant, temps, empereur, orient, patience*; *bien, tien*; *vin, cousin, pincer, timbre, simple, nymphe, point* (= *po-in*), *joint, moins*; *vain, essaïm, sainte, craindre*; *on, lion, ombre, tomber*; *un, lundi, tribun, emprunter, humble, parfum, jeûn*; — (but without nasalization) *â-ne, année, ve-nu, ennemi, u-ne, cousi-ne, ho-norer, vai-ne, bonne, homme*, etc.

**10. CONSONANTS.** — The French consonants are usually pronounced as in English, except in the following cases : —

#### a. INITIAL OR MEDIAL.

**ç** sounds like *s*: *ça, façon*.

**ch** sounds like *sh* or *k* (as *k* before *r, l*, and usually in such foreign words as are also in English pronounced with a *k* sound): *cher, vache*; (= *k*) *Christ, chaos*.

*g* (before *e, i, y*) } sounds like *z* in 'azure': *geste, joli, jambe*.  
*j* (always)

*h* is virtually silent. But for grammatical reasons (12, note etc.) a distinction is made between *h* 'mute' and *h* 'aspirated' (once slightly enounced in foreign, chiefly Germanic, words): — ('mute') *habit, heure*; ('asp.') *héros, harpe*.

*s* sounds as in 'so,' except between vowel-sounds (and in *trans* + vowel, and a few other combinations), where it sounds as in 'rose': *son, astre*; (= *z*) *rose, base, transitif*.

*-gn-* sounds nearly as *ny* in 'canyon': *gagna* (nearly = *ga<sup>n</sup>ya*).

*-il*, final and preceded by a vowel, sounds like *y* in 'boy': *bétail* (= *bé-ta'y*), *vieil* (= *vi-è'y*).

*-ill-*, medial, usually sounds like *i'y*; but after a vowel simply like *y*: *briller* (= *brī-yé*), *travailler* (= *trā-vā-yé*).

NOTE. — *-l, -ll-* may also be sounded like *illi* in 'million'; but this pronunciation, though preferred by good authorities, is less common.

*-ti* before a vowel sounds like *s'* [except after *s* (or *x*), in *-tié*, the verb-ending *-tions*, and (often) *-tien*]: e.g. (= *s'*) *nation* = *nas'ō*, *partial, prophétie, factieux*; (= *t'*) *question, moitié, partions* (verb-form).

#### b. FINAL.

*Final* consonants are usually silent. Only *c, f, l, q*, and *r* (except in polysyllabics in *-er, -ier*) are for the most part sounded. Nasals, of course, nasalize a preceding vowel. — Ex. *chat, aimer, ses*; — *sec* (*c* = *k*), *chef, il, fer, cinq, on*.

NOTE. — Even *l* is often silent (as in *baril, outil, fusil*, etc.); and *-il* preceded by a vowel sounds like *y* (*travail* = *trā-vā'y*: cf. *-il*, above).

EXERCISE V. — *ç*: *ça, reçu, garçon*. — *ch*: *chat, chaleur, cher, vache, cochon, chuchoter*. — *g, j*: *gèle, gilet, gypse, germe, rouge, orageux, mangea* (*e* only to soften *g*), *George; jardins, jour, juge, je, jeune, joie, jamais*; (but *g* as in 'go') *gant*,

*goûter*, *grand*, etc. — **h**: *habit*, *heure*, *homme*, *heureux*; *héros*, *harpe*, *hasard*, *haut*, *halte*. — **s**: *sa*, *son*, *estime*; (= *z*) *rose*, *raser*, *raison*, *déshonorer*, *transaction*. — **gn**: *gagna*, *gagner*, *gagne*, *agneau*, *régna*, *régner*, *règne*, *ligne*, *ignorant*, *cygne*, *baigner*, *seigneur*, *rognon*. — **-il, -ill-**: *bétail*, *vieil*; *briller*, *brillant*, *brille*, *filles*, *gentille*, *sillon*, *travailler*, *travailleur*, *guillotine* (*gu* simply = hard *g*: *gi-yo-tin*), *conseiller*, *vieillir*, *feuille*, *feuillage*, *houille*, *cueillir* (*cue* = *ke*: *ke-yir*); (*but* = *ill* in Engl.) *illustre*, *illuminer*, etc. — **ti**: *nation*, *section*, *patient*, *partial*, *égyptien*, *plénipotentiaire*, *prophétie*, *minutie*, *inertie*, *démocratie*; (= *t*) *chrétien*, *question*, *mixture*, *moitié*. — **Finals**: *plomb*, *pied*, *trop*, *les*, *draps*, *vingt*, *vends*; *sec*, *avec*, *choc*, *chef*, *vif*, *il*, *fol*, *nul*, *fatal*; *travail* (= *trä-va'y*), *conseil*, *vieil*, *seuil*, *œil* (= *eu'y*), *accueil* (= *a-keu'y*); *fer*, *mer*, *fier*, *hier*, *leur*, *honneur*, *hauteur*; *parler*, *aimer*, *entier*, *premier*.

Exceptions to the rules of pronunciation given above will be noticed as they occur hereafter.

**11. LINKING OF WORDS.** — In connected reading or discourse, words closely combined in construction are apt to be joined in such a way that the end-consonant of the preceding word, even when otherwise silent, is pronounced with the initial syllable of the next word, if beginning with a vowel-sound (vowel or *h* 'mute'). Final *c*, *d*, *g*, *s* (*x*) then sound as follows: *c* = **k**, *d* = **t**, *g* = **k**, *s* (*x*) = **z**. — **Ex.**:

<i>les amis</i>	<i>les hommes</i>	<i>nous avons</i>	<i>vous avez</i>
(lè-z`ami)	(lè-z`omm)	(nou-z`avô)	(vou-z`avé)
'the friends'	'the men'	'we have'	'you have'
<i>grand homme</i>	<i>rang élevé</i>	<i>six heures</i>	<i>mon ami</i>
(grä-t`omm)	(rä-k`élevé)	(si-z`eur)	(mô-n`ami)
'great man'	'high rank'	'six hours'	'my friend'



## ARTICLES AND PARTITIVE SIGN.

**12. THE DEFINITE ARTICLE** is: singular masc. *le*, fem. *la*; plural masc. or fem. *les* (pronounce *lè*): 'the.'


NOTE. — Before a vowel or *h* 'mute,' *le* and *la* both, by elision ('striking out') of their final vowel, become *l'*. — E.g. *l'ami* (m.) 'the friend,' *l'âme* (f.) 'the soul,' *l'homme* 'the man.'

**13.** French, unlike English, requires the definite article before nouns used in an absolute or generic sense (so that 'all,' 'generally,' etc., may be understood). It may then be called the **Generic Article**. Thus *le fer* may mean 'the iron' or 'iron' (generally); *les hommes* 'the men' or 'men' (generally).

**14. THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE** is: sing. masc. *un*, fem. *une*: 'an, a.'

NOTE. — French has no neuter gender.

## EXERCISE V (a, b).

 To facilitate the recollection of gender, masculine and feminine nouns are in the vocabularies to the following exercises arranged in opposite columns.

Of French nouns not implying a natural distinction of sex, those in *-e*, *-té*, *-tié*, *-x*, *-eur*, *-ion*, *-son* are usually fem.; but there are many exceptions.

## MASC.

## FEM.

<i>le père</i> 'the father' . . .	<i>la mère</i> 'the mother' .
<i>le fils</i> ( <i>ls</i> = <i>ss</i> ) 'the son' . .	<i>la fille</i> 'the daughter, girl'
<i>le frère</i> 'the brother' . . .	<i>la sœur</i> 'the sister'
<i>un ami</i> 'a friend' . . . .	<i>une amie</i> 'a friend'
<i>un homme</i> ( <i>h</i> mute) 'a man,'	<i>une femme</i> (pr. <i>fä-m</i> ) 'a woman,
	wife'

## MASC.

## FEM.

*le roi* 'the king' . . . . . *la reine* 'the queen'  
*le palais* 'the palace' . . . . . *la maison* 'the house'  
*j'ai* (for *je* 'I,' *ai* 'have'), 'I have'  
*et* (pr. *é*; and *t* never linked) 'and'

a. — 1. *Le* \* *père* et *la* *mère*. 2. *Les* *pères* et *les* *mères*.  
 3. *L'ami*; *l'amie*; *l'homme*; *les* *amis*; *les* *amies*. 4. *J'ai un*  
*frère* et *une* *sœur*. 5. *J'ai un* *ami*; *j'ai une* *amie*. 6. *J'ai*  
*un fils* et *une* *filles*; *j'ai un* *palais* et *une* *maison*. 7. *Le* *roi* et  
*la* *reine*.

b. — 1. The brother and the sister. 2. The man and the  
 woman. 3. The friend (*m.*); the friend (*f.*). 4. The brothers  
 and the sisters (*French nouns, like English, add s in the plural*).  
 5. I have a palace; I have a house.

*de* 'of (from).'      *à* 'to (in).'

15. CONTRACTION. — The prepositions *de* 'of,' and *à* 'to,'  
 blend with a following *le* or *les* (never with *la* or *l'*) into one  
 form, viz. : —

<i>de le</i>	into	<i>du</i> .	Ex.	<i>du père</i>	'of the father.'
<i>de les</i>	"	<i>des</i> .	"	<i>des pères (mères)</i>	'of the fathers (mothers).'
<i>à le</i>	"	<i>au</i> .	"	<i>au père</i>	'to the father.'
<i>à les</i>	"	<i>aux</i> .	"	<i>aux pères (mères)</i>	'to the fathers (mothers).'

But: *de la mère* 'of the mother,' *de l'ami* 'of the friend.'

16. *De* before a vowel or *h* 'mute' is *d'*. — Ex. *d'un*.

17. French nouns have no different case-forms, not even a  
 possessive, like English. Hence the English possessive must

---

\* Items in heavy type to be carefully noted and explained by the student,  
 not to be emphasized in reading. The stress is usually on the last word  
 of a clause.

in French be expressed like all other oblique relations, by the aid of a preposition (*de*). — Ex. *du* (= *de le*) *père* ‘the father’s’ (or ‘of the father’), *de la mère* ‘the mother’s’ (or ‘of the mother’); *du sel* ‘of the salt,’ *des pommes* ‘of the apples.’

**18. INDEPENDENT PARTITIVE SIGN.** — *De* with *le*, *la*, *les* means not only ‘of the,’ but is used also before nouns independently of any preceding word to denote the **partitive** idea ‘some (any),’ whether expressed or not in English. Thus *du* (= *de le*) *pain* may mean either ‘of the bread’ or ‘(some) bread,’ ‘(any) bread,’ according as it is used; *de la farine* ‘of the flour,’ ‘(some) flour,’ ‘(any) flour’; *des fils* ‘of the sons,’ ‘(some) sons,’ ‘(any) sons’; *du sel* ‘salt’; *des pommes* (f.) ‘apples.’

In its independent partitive use, *du* (etc.) is usually called the *Partitive Article*.

### EXERCISE VI (a, b).

#### MASC.

*le blé* ‘(the) wheat, grain’ . . . .  
*le pain* ‘(the) bread’ . . . .  
*le beurre* ‘(the) butter’ . . . .  
*le lait* ‘(the) milk’ . . . .  
*le papier* ‘(the) paper’ . . . .  
*le cœur* ‘the heart’ . . . .  
*le toit* ‘the roof’ . . . .

#### FEM.

*la farine* ‘(the) flour’  
*la soupe* ‘(the) soup’  
*la viande* ‘(the) meat’  
*l’eau* ‘(the) water’  
*la plume* ‘the pen’  
*l’âme* ‘the soul’  
*la fenêtre* ‘the window’

*mon* (f. *ma*, or, before vowel-sound, *mon*); pl., m. f., *mes* ‘my’

*son* (f. *sa* or, as above, *son*); pl. *ses* ‘his, her, its’

*vous avez* ‘you have’; *avez-vous ?* ‘have you?’

*il est* (pronounce *è*) ‘he (it) is’

*je parle* ‘I speak’

*je donne* ‘I give’

*que* (acc.) ‘whom, which’

NOTE. — *De* and *à* must be expressed before every noun they respectively govern.

- a. — 1. *Le cœur du père* (but *de l'homme*); *le cœur de la mère*; *l'âme des hommes*. 2. *Le blé de mon père*. 3. *Le toit et les fenêtres de la maison*. 4. *Je parle du pain, de la viande et des pommes que vous avez*. 5. *J'ai du pain, de la viande et des pommes*. 6. *Avez-vous du* ('some' or 'any') *pain? Avez-vous de la viande?* 7. *Avez-vous des frères et des sœurs?* - 8. *Vous avez de l'eau et du pain*. 9. *Je parle au père, à la sœur et à l'homme*. 10. *Je parle aux hommes*. 11. *Je donne de la viande à l'ami de mon frère*. 12. *Je donne du papier et des plumes à ma sœur*. 13. *Je parle d'un ami (de son ami)*.

b. — 1. The son's heart; the man's heart, the heart of man, man's heart, the heart of the man (*these last four expressions are identical in French*). 2. The girl's pen. 3. The roofs of the houses. 4. I speak of the butter, the soup (cf. note above), and the water. 5. I speak of my brother's apples. 6. You have bread, soup, and apples (18). 7. Have you paper and pens? 8. I give salt and bread to the girl's father. 9. I give meat to the girl's mother, and to the men.

### 19. *De* is used alone as independent partitive sign :

a. When its noun is *preceded* by an adjective. — Ex. *J'ai de bon pain* 'I have (some) good bread.'

b. When its noun is the unmodified accusative object of a negative verb. — Ex. *Je n'ai pas de pain* 'I have not any (no) bread'; but *Cela n'est pas du pain* 'This is not bread.'

20. **DEPENDENT PARTITIVE SIGN.** — *De* also represents the English preposition 'of' required by a preceding word spoken of as a **part of** something (e.g. 'a piece of bread'). It is then used alone or with the article precisely as in English. But it is to be observed that French, contrary to English usage, requires this partitive preposition also after **adverbs of quantity** (*beaucoup* 'much,' *plus* 'more,' *moins* 'less,' etc.). — Ex. *Un*

*morceau de pain* 'a piece of bread;' *un morceau du pain que vous avez* 'a piece of the bread you have;' *beaucoup de pain* 'much bread;' *plus de pain* 'more bread.'

## EXERCISE VII (a, b).

MASC.

FEM.

<i>le livre</i> 'the book'	<i>la carte</i> 'the map'
<i>le morceau</i> 'the piece, morsel'	<i>la pièce</i> 'the piece'
<i>bon</i> 'good'	<i>bonne</i> 'good'
<i>noir</i> 'black'	<i>noire</i> 'black'

*beaucoup (de)* 'much, many'

*peu (de)* 'little, few'

*trop (de)* 'too much, too many'

*assez (de)* 'enough'

} adverbs of  
quantity

*je n'ai pas* 'I have not' ['not' *ne* (bef. vowel or *h* 'mute' *n*)] . . . *pas*, on either side of the personal verb]

NOTE. — Adjectives are expressed before every noun they qualify.

a. — 1. *J'ai du pain et de la viande.* 2. *J'ai de bon pain et de bonne viande.* 3. *J'ai du pain noir* (adjectives frequently follow their nouns, as explained Exc. X, note 2). 4. *Je n'ai pas de pain.* 5. *Avez-vous de bonnes plumes?* 6. *Je parle des bons frères et des bonnes sœurs; je parle de bons frères et de bonnes sœurs.* 7. *Je donne de bonne eau à la sœur du bon homme.* 8. *Je n'ai pas de viande.* 9. *Vous n'avez pas de livres.* 10. *J'ai de l'eau; vous n'avez pas d'eau.* 11. *Vous avez beaucoup de pain et de viande.* 12. *J'ai peu de livres.* 13. *Je n'ai pas assez de plumes.* 14. *Je donne trop de pain et de viande à la sœur.*

b. — 1. You have bread and soup. 2. You have good bread and soup ('good' repeated before 'soup'). 3. I give some black bread (cf. 3 above) to my son. 4. Have you any good pens? 5. I have not any pens (or I have no pens: — *the same in French*). 6. I have some good bread and some water. 7. I

give much bread and many apples to the good man (or I give the good man, etc.). 8. Have you too many books? 9. I have not books enough. 10. I have little paper and few pens.

## NOUNS.

**21. PLURAL.** — French nouns usually form their plural by adding (silent) *s* to the singular form. — Ex. *le père*, pl. *les pères*. Exceptions: —

[22.] Nouns ending in *s*, *x*, or *z* are **unchanged** in the plural. — Ex. *le fils*, pl. *les fils*; *le prix*: *les prix*; *le nez*: *les nez*.

[23.] Nouns in *-au*, *-eu*, and a few in *-ou*, add *x*, instead of *s*; and most of those in *-al* (as well as many in *-ail*) change that ending to *au* and then add *x*. — Ex. *chapeau* ‘hat,’ pl. *chapeaux*; *feu* ‘fire,’ pl. *feux*; *cheval* ‘horse,’ pl. *chevaux*; *corail* ‘coral,’ pl. *coraux*.

## EXERCISE VIII (a, b).

### MASC.

*le cousin* (pl. *-s*) ‘the cousin’ .  
*le chien* (pl. *-s*) ‘the dog’ . .  
*le fils* (pl. —) ‘the son’ . .  
  
*le nez* (pl. —) ‘the nose’  
*le chapeau* (pl. *-x*) ‘the hat’  
*le neveu* (pl. *-x*) ‘the nephew’  
*le cheval* (pl. *chevaux*) ‘the  
horse’ . . . . .  
*le général* (pl. *généraux*) ‘the  
general’ . . . . .  
*le corail* (pl. *coraux*) ‘the  
coral’ . . . . .

### FEM.

*la cousine* (pl. *-s*) ‘the cousin’  
*la chienne* (pl. *-s*) ‘the bitch’  
*la fille* (pl. *-s*) ‘the daughter,  
girl’  
  
*la voix* (pl. —) ‘the voice’  
*la peau* (pl. *peaux*) ‘the skin’  
*la nièce* (pl. *-s*) ‘the niece’  
  
  
  
*la jument* (pl. *-s*) ‘the mare’  
  
  
  
*une armée* (pl. *-s*) ‘an army’  
  
  
  
*la mer* (pl. *-s*) ‘the sea’

*il (elle) a* 'he (she) has'; *a-t-il* 'has he?'

*il n'a pas* 'he has not'

*ils ont* 'they have'

*ils n'ont pas* 'they have not'

*mais* 'but'; *enfant*, m., 'child'

- a.* — 1. *Il a des frères et des sœurs, des cousins et des cousines.*  
 2. *Il a beaucoup de fils, mais il n'a pas de filles.* 3. *Beaucoup de voix.* 4. *Mes cousins n'ont pas de chapeaux.* 5. *Les généraux ont des chiens et des chevaux.* 6. *Les coraux de la mer.*  
 7. *Mon général a beaucoup de neveux. A-t-il des enfants?*

- b.* — 1. Have you brothers and sisters? 2. Has he any sons?  
 3. I give the hats to my sister. 4. He has few nephews, but many nieces. 5. I give the corals to my sister. 6. The generals have good horses. 7. The voices of the sea. 8. The general has many palaces.

#### ADDITIONAL RULES FOR THE PLURAL.

[24.] A few nouns in *-al* (*bal* 'ball,' *carnaval* 'carnival,' etc.), and about half of those in *-ail* (*détail* 'detail,' *portail* 'doorway,' etc.), simply add *s* in the plural.

- [25.] *aïeul* (*ax* = *a-i*), m., 'ancestor,' is in pl. *aïeux*  
*ciel*, m., 'sky, heaven,' is in pl. *cieux*  
*œil* (pr. *eu'y*), m., 'eye,' is in pl. *yeux* (pr. 'eu')

NOTE. — These three words have also, in some special and less common significations, a regular plural form (*aïeuls* 'grandparents,' *ciels* 'artificial skies,' *œils* in some compounds).

#### EXERCISE IX (a, b).

MASC.

FEM.

- le bijou* (pl. *-x*) 'the jewel' . . . . . *la perle* 'the pearl'  
*le bœuf* (pl. *bœufs*, *j's* mute), 'the ox' . . . *la vache* 'the cow'





27. In adding *e* some changes may occur. Thus : —

[28.] Final *f* becomes *v*. — Ex. *vif* 'lively,' f. *vive*.

[29.] When the penultimate letter of the masculine form is *e*, the openness of this vowel-sound is in the feminine form denoted either by its change to *è*, or (often) by the **doubling** of a final *l*, *n*, or *t*. — Ex. *cher* 'dear': *chère*; *cruel* 'cruel': *cruelle*; *net* 'neat': *nette*.

[30.] Final *l*, *n*, *t* of adjectives in *eil*, *on*, *ot*, and final *s* of monosyllabics, and a few polysyllabics (as *épais* 'thick,' etc.), are also **doubled**. — Ex. *bon* 'good': *bonne*; *pareil* 'similar': *pareille*; *gros* 'big': *grosse*.

[31.] *Beau* 'beautiful,' *nouveau* 'new,' *fou* 'foolish,' *mou* 'soft,' *vieux* 'old,' are before a vowel-sound *bel*, *nouvel*, *fol*, *mol*, *vieil* (the last optionally); and their feminines are invariably made from the latter form by doubling *l* before *e* (*belle*, *nouvelle*, *folle*, *molle*, *vieille*), both in singular and plural.

[32.] Final *c*, *g*, and *x* are before *e* usually written *qu*, *gu*, *s*. — Ex. *public*: *publique*; *long* 'long': *longue*; *jalous*: *jalouse*.

[33.] Among exceptions to the above rules may be noticed here: *frais* 'fresh,' f. *fraîche*; *blanc* 'white,' f. *blanche*; *sec* 'dry,' f. *sèche*; *grec* 'Grecian,' f. *grecque*; *faux* 'false,' f. *fausse*; *doux* 'sweet,' f. *douce*; *roux* 'red,' f. *rousse*.

**34. PLURAL.** — Adjectives usually form their plural (for the masculine and feminine forms respectively) **like nouns** with corresponding finals (cf. 21, etc.). — Ex. *bon* (f. *bonne*) 'good,' pl. *bons* (*bonnes*); *beau* (f. *belle*) 'beautiful,' pl. *beaux* (*belles*); *nouveau*, pl. *-x*, *fou*, pl. *-s*, *mou*, pl. *-s*, *vieux*, pl. *same*.

## EXERCISE X (a, b).

[fine]

<i>grand</i> (f. -e) 'great'	<i>beau</i> (f. <i>belle</i> ) 'beautiful,
<i>petit</i> (f. -e) 'little, small'	<i>vieux</i> (f. <i>vieille</i> ) 'old, aged'
<i>joli</i> (f. -e) 'pretty'	<i>public</i> (f. <i>publique</i> ) 'public'
<i>utile</i> (f. —) 'useful'	<i>heureux</i> (f. <i>heureuse</i> ) 'happy'
<i>aimable</i> (f. —) 'lovely, agreeable'	<i>grec</i> (f. <i>grecque</i> ) 'Grecian'
<i>actif</i> (f. <i>active</i> ) 'active'	<i>frais</i> (f. <i>fraîche</i> ) 'fresh'
<i>cher</i> ( <i>chère</i> ) 'dear'	<i>blanc</i> (f. <i>blanche</i> ) 'white'
<i>secret</i> ( <i>secrète</i> ) 'secret'	<i>faux</i> (f. <i>fausse</i> ) 'false'
<i>cruel</i> (f. <i>cruelle</i> ) 'cruel'	<i>doux</i> (f. <i>douce</i> ) 'sweet'
<i>muët</i> (f. <i>muette</i> ) 'mute'	<i>très</i> 'very,' <i>aussi</i> 'also,' <i>ou</i> 'or'
<i>ancien</i> (f. <i>ancienne</i> ) 'ancient, old'	<i>le garçon</i> 'the boy'
<i>bon</i> (f. <i>bonne</i> ) 'good'	<i>le voisin</i> 'the neighbor'
	<i>le monde</i> 'the world'
	<i>la laine</i> 'the wool'

NOTE 1. — Adjectives agree in gender and number with the noun they qualify, whether as attributes or predicate complements. — Ex. *le bon père*; *la bonne mère*; *les bons pères*; *ma mère est bonne*.

NOTE 2. — An adjective may precede or follow its noun. Only some fifteen common adjectives (*beau, joli; bon, mauvais; grand, petit, jeune, vieux*, etc.) usually **precede** the noun in their ordinary sense. Others usually **follow** when they denote a **distinguishing** quality (such as nationality, color, form, etc.), serving to separate the object spoken of from other objects of the same kind (e.g. *la rose blanche* 'the white rose'), and always when they are past participles. Often, however, euphony decides the place of the adjective.

a. — 1. *Le grand garçon et la grande fille.* 2. *Je parle aux jeunes filles.* 3. *Mon frère est actif et ma sœur est aussi très active.* 4. *Les filles de ma bonne cousine sont très aimables.* 5. *La brebis a la laine très douce.* 6. *Mon cher père et ma chère mère.* 7. *Il y a beaucoup de belles maisons dans l'ancienne ville de N.* 8. *Il a un beau chien et une belle brebis, de beaux chevaux et de belles vaches.* 9. *Ma mère est très bonne et elle est aussi très heureuse.* 10. *Avez-vous du lait frais, ou*

*de l'eau fraîche?* 11. *J'ai de l'eau fraîche, et j'ai aussi du lait frais.* 12. *Il est faux, et elle est fausse.* 13. *La maison de mon ami est blanche.* 14. *Son voisin est un homme du monde.*

b. — 1. My little son and my little daughters. 2. I give some good bread to my sister's good daughter. 3. An active man and a very active woman. 4. My dear friend's pretty little sister is mute. 5. A beautiful man and a beautiful woman; beautiful men and beautiful women (*partitive*). 6. There are many good men and (good, *adj. repeated*) women in the old village of N. 7. He is a very cruel father, and she (*elle*) is a cruel mother. 8. My niece has a very sweet voice. 9. I give fresh milk and fresh water to my little girl. 10. The happy man and the happy woman. 11. I have not any white horses. 12. Have you any white pearls? 13. I have a beautiful new house.

**35. COMPARISON.** — **Plus** means 'more,' or, if preceded by the definite article or a possessive pronoun, 'most'; and **moins** means, in the same way, 'less' or 'least.' — Ex. *grand* 'great': *plus grand* ('more great' =) 'greater,' *le plus grand* 'the greatest'; *mon plus grand*, 'my greatest.'

**36.** Only three adjectives form their comparative and superlative without *plus* (or *moins*). They are: —

Pos.	Comp.	Sup.
<i>bon</i> 'good':	<i>meilleur</i> 'better,'	<i>le meilleur</i> 'the best'
<i>mauvais</i> 'bad':	<i>pire</i> 'worse,'	<i>le pire</i> 'the worst'
<i>petit</i> 'little':	<i>moindre</i> 'less,'	<i>le moindre</i> 'the least'

NOTE. — If *petit* means 'small' (in size), its comp. and superl. are *plus petit*, *le plus petit*. Even *mauvais* may be regularly compared.

## EXERCISE XI (a, b).

MASC.	FEM.
<i>un arbre</i> 'a tree' . . . . .	<i>la fleur</i> 'the flower'
<i>le tronc</i> (c mute) 'the trunk' . . .	<i>la feuille</i> 'the leaf'
<i>le chêne</i> 'the oak' . . . . .	<i>l'yeuse</i> 'the holm oak'
<i>le lis</i> (s heard) 'the lily' . . . .	<i>la rose</i> 'the rose'
<i>le sapin</i> 'the fir' . . . . .	<i>l'épine</i> 'the thorn'
<i>le lierre</i> 'the ivy' . . . . .	<i>la vigne</i> 'the vine'
<i>un orme</i> 'an elm'	<i>la France</i> 'France'
<i>le métal</i> '(the) metal'	<i>l'Angleterre</i> 'England'
<i>l'or</i> '(the) gold'	<i>l'Amérique</i> 'America'
<i>l'argent</i> 'the silver, money'	<i>l'Allemagne</i> 'Germany'
<i>le fer</i> '(the) iron'	<i>la Suède</i> 'Sweden'
<i>le Rhin</i> 'the Rhine' . . . . .	<i>la Seine</i> 'the Seine'
<i>aussi</i> (or <i>si</i> , us'ly in negation) . . . <i>que</i> 'as (so) . . . as'	
<i>plus</i> . . . <i>que</i> 'more ('-er') . . . than'	
<i>ce</i> (or, before vowel or <i>h</i> 'mute,' <i>cet</i> ) 'this': f. <i>cette</i>	
<i>ces</i> (pron'ce <i>cè</i> ) 'these' (m. or f.); <i>précieux</i> 'precious'	
<i>ils sont</i> 'they are'; <i>ils ne sont pas</i> 'they are not'	
<i>il demeure</i> 'he dwells or lives'; <i>en</i> 'in' (a country)	

NOTE 1. — Most names of trees or shrubs (some in *-e* excepted) and metals are masc. Most names of countries and rivers in *-e* are fem.

NOTE 2. — Before names of countries and rivers the definite article is used, except always after *en* 'in,' and often after *de* 'of, from.'

a. — 1. *Mon frère est plus grand que ma sœur.* 2. *Le chêne est le plus bel arbre, et la rose est la plus belle fleur.* 3. *Cette fille est ma plus jeune sœur; elle est plus jeune que mon frère.* 4. *Cet homme est mon meilleur ami.* 5. *La France est aussi belle que l'Angleterre.* 6. *L'Allemagne n'est pas si grande que l'Amérique.* 7. *L'or et l'argent sont les métaux les plus précieux.* 8. *La Seine est moins longue que le Rhin.* 9. *Mon cheval est très bon; votre cheval est meilleur; le cheval de mon voisin est le meilleur.* 10. *Je n'ai pas le moindre souvenir*

(remembrance) *de cet homme*. 11. *Il demeure en France. Du vin de France; le roi de Suède.*

b. — 1. The rose is more beautiful than the lily. 2. Charles (*Charles*) is the youngest of my brothers. 3. Iron (*Le fer*, as generic) is more useful than gold. 4. This young man is my dearest friend. 5. This man is my best friend. 6. The ivy is as beautiful as the vine. 7. France is more beautiful than Germany. 8. England is older than America. 9. This man's voice is good, but this woman's voice is better. 10. My cousin is the best man in (*de*) the world. 11. My best friend (*f*) lives in America. 12. I have not the least remembrance of my brother. 13. He is smaller than his little sister.

### NUMERALS.

**37.** Below are given the **cardinal** and **ordinal** numbers to 20 (higher numbers to be learned as they occur).

#### CARDINALS.

1 *un*

2 *deux*

3 *trois*

4 *quatre*

5 *cinq* ( $q = k$ )

6 *six* ( $x = ss$ )

7 *sept* (*sēt*)

8 *huit* (*ouit*)

9 *neuf* ( $f = ff$ )

10 *dix* ( $x = ss$ )

11 *onze*

12 *douze*

13 *treize* ( $ei = \grave{e}$  long)

14 *quatorze*

Finals usually silent  
before consonant-  
sounds. Before  
vowels,  $f = v$ , and  
 $x = z$ .

#### ORDINALS.

1st *premier*

2d *second* ( $c = g$ ) or  
*deuxième* ( $x = z$ )

3d *troisième*

4th *quatrième*

5th *cinquième*

6th *sixième* ( $x = z$ )

7th *septième*

8th *huitième*

9th *neuvième*

10th *dixième* ( $x = z$ )

11th *onzième*

12th *douzième*

13th *treizième*

14th *quatorzième*

## CARDINALS.

15	<i>quinze</i>
16	<i>seize</i> ( <i>ei</i> = <i>è</i> long)
17	<i>dix-sept</i> ( <i>diss-sèt</i> , Fr. <i>i</i> )
18	<i>dix-huit</i> ( <i>diz-<sup>ou</sup>it</i> )
19	<i>dix-neuf</i> ( <i>diz-neuff</i> )
20	<i>vingt</i> ( <i>gt</i> silent)
	etc.

## ORDINALS.

15th	<i>quinzième</i>
16th	<i>seizième</i>
17th	<i>dix-septième</i>
18th	<i>dix-huitième</i>
19th	<i>dix-neuvième</i>
20th	<i>vingtième</i>
	etc.

## INFLECTION.

**38. CARDINALS** up to a million are invariable, except that *un* is in the feminine *une*, and that *quatre-vingts* '80' (literally 'four twenty's, fourscore'), and multiples of *cent* '100' have the plural sign *s* when not followed by an added numeral. — Ex. *deux cents* '200,' but *deux cent trois* '203,' *quatre-vingt-neuf* '89.'

NOTE 1. — In dates, however, they are invariable.

NOTE 2. — *Cent* and *mille* do not require the indefinite article: *cent* (*mille*) *personnes* 'a hundred (a thousand) persons.'

**39. ORDINALS** are treated precisely like adjectives.

**40. ANOMALOUS USAGE.** — In **dates** and before **names of sovereigns**, cardinals are used instead of ordinals, except for "the first" (and, optionally, also "the second" before names of sovereigns). — Ex. *Le cinq octobre* 'the 5th of October'; *Henri quatre* 'Henry Fourth.'

EXERCISE XII (*a*, *b*).

## MASC.

*habitant* 'inhabitant' . . .

*le thème* 'the theme' . . .

*le mot* 'the (common) word' .

*un an* 'a year' . . . . .

*un quart* 'a quarter' . . . .

## FEM.

*habitante* 'inhabitant'

*la leçon* 'lesson'

*la parole* 'the (notable) word'

*une année* 'a year'

*une heure* 'an hour'

## MASC.

## FEM.

*le soldat* 'the soldier' . . . . . *une armée* 'an army'  
*octobre* 'October' . . . . . *la date* 'the date'

*cent* '100'

*mille* (or *mil* in dates after 1000 A.D.) '1000'

*quatre-vingts* '80': in '81,' etc., without final *s*

*en* 'in, in the year' (also *l'an* 'the year')

*pendant* 'during'; *par* 'per, a'; *avec* 'with'

*une heure* 'an hour' or 'one o'clock'; (*deux heures*, etc.)

*a. — 1. J'ai un frère, une sœur et trois cousins. 2. Vous avez cinq chevaux. 3. Il a quatre-vingts ans (= 'He is 80 years old'); elle a quatre-vingt-deux ans. 4. Cette ville a trois mille habitants; ce village a trois cents habitants. 5. J'ai la seconde leçon et le troisième thème. 6. En mil huit (or dix-huit) cent vingt; en mil huit cent quatre-vingt; en mil huit cent quatre-vingt-huit. 7. Le premier octobre ('of' usually left out in French); le deux (trois, etc.) octobre; Henri premier ('the' omitted); Charles deux (or second), Henri trois (quatre, etc.). 8. Il y a cent mille soldats dans cette armée (obs. French 'hundred,' not 'a hundred'). 9. Pendant les premières années. 10. Il est trois heures, cinq heures et un quart.*

*b. — 1. He has one cow and two oxen. 2. My mother has four white horses. 3. This man is 85 years old (transl. 'has 85 years'), and this woman is 80 years old. 4. There are 200 words in the first lesson. 5. Charles I; Charles II; Henry V. 6. The first of May (mai) and the second of October. 7. In the year 1888 (cf. sentence 6, under a). 8. It is one o'clock; it is eight o'clock. 9. He is rich (riche) with fifty a year.*

## PRONOUNS AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

## PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

41. The personal pronouns are either **conjunctive** or **disjunctive**.

a. CONJUNCTIVE	b. DISJUNCTIVE
(construed immediately with a verb as subject or object without preposition):	(not so construed):
<i>je</i> 'I' . . . <i>me</i> 'me, to me'	<i>moi</i> 'I, me'
<i>tu</i> 'thou' . . . <i>te</i> 'thee, to thee'	<i>toi</i> 'thou, thee'
<i>il</i> 'he, it' . . . <i>le</i> 'him, it' } <i>lui</i> 'to him'	<i>lui</i> 'he, him'
<i>elle</i> 'she, it' . . . <i>la</i> 'her, it' } (it, her)'	<i>elle</i> 'she, her'
<i>nous</i> 'we' . . . <i>nous</i> 'us, to us'	<i>nous</i> 'we, us'
<i>vous</i> 'you' . . . <i>vous</i> 'you, to you'	<i>vous</i> 'you, you'
<i>ils</i> , m. 'they' } <i>les</i> 'them,' <i>leur</i> 'to them'	<i>eux</i> m. } 'they,' <i>elles</i> , f. 'they' } them'

NOTE 1. — *Je*, *me*, *te*, *le*, *la* are before vowel-sounds *j'*, *m'*, *t'*, *p'*, *f'*. — Ex. *j'ai* 'I have,' *il m'aime* 'he loves me.'

NOTE 2. — To the disjunctive pronoun is often appended the emphatic *même* 'self': e.g. *moi-même* 'I myself,' etc.

42. POSITION OF THE CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS. — The conjunctive personal pronouns, whether construed as subject or object (direct or indirect), **precede the personal verb**: e.g. *je le vois* 'I see him,' *je vous le donne* 'I give it to you.'

*Exception.* — In two common cases they follow, as in English, the verb (being then attached to it by a hyphen), viz.: —

[43.] The subject-pronoun (*je*, *tu*, etc.) in interrogative clauses: e.g. *ai-je* 'have I,' *l'avez-vous?* 'have you it?'

[44.] The object-pronoun (*me*, *te*, etc.) in affirmative imperative clauses, — *me*, *te* being then, however, replaced by *moi*,



*toi*, except before *en* (46). — Ex. *donnez-le* 'give it,' *donnez-le-lui* 'give it to him,' *aimez-moi* 'love me,' *donnez-moi* 'give me,' *donnez-m'en* 'give me some.'

**45.** Of two object-pronouns, that of the **3d person** comes **nearest** the verb, *le* (*la, les*) preceding *lui* (*leur*). — Ex. *Je vous le donne* 'I give it to you.' *Donnez-le-moi* 'Give it to me.' *Je le lui donne* 'I give it to him.'

NOTE. — Two conjunctives of which the first is a direct object 1st or 2d person, cannot occur. Hence (not *Il me vous donne*, but) *Il me donne à vous* 'He gives me to you.' *Il vous envoie à lui* 'He sends you to him': but *Il vous l'envoie* 'He sends him to you.'

**46. PRONOMINAL PARTICLES.** — *En* 'therefrom, thereof' and *y* 'thereto' are ordinarily used with reference to things, *en* instead of *de lui* (*elle, eux, elles*), and *y* instead of *à lui* (*elle, eux, elles*). They are then placed after other pronouns. — Ex. *Il lui en parle* 'He speaks to him of it.'

### EXERCISE XIII (*a, b*).

Indicative present of *aimer* 'love':

- |  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| Sing. 1. <i>j'aime</i> 'I love' (etc., cf. n.) | pl. 1. <i>nous aimons</i> 'we love' |
| 2. <i>tu aimes</i> 'thou lovest'               | 2. <i>vous aimez</i> 'you love'     |
| 3. <i>il aime</i> 'he loves'                   | 3. <i>ils aiment</i> 'they love'    |

NOTE. — The French present (*j'aime* etc.) corresponds not only to the indefinite present in English ('I love'), but also to the **progressive** ('I am loving'), and the **emphatic present** ('I do love').

*aimez !* 'love !' (Imperative 2d pl.)

*donner* 'give' (Pres. *je donne* etc., like *j'aime*)

*penser* 'think' (Pres. *je pense* etc.)

*je crois* 'I believe'

*il est à* 'it belongs to'

*j'ai besoin de* 'I need' (lit. 'have need of')

*voici* 'behold, here is, here are'

NOTE 1.— *Vous* ‘you’ may, as in English, refer to one person or several. *Tu* ‘thou’ is used between intimate friends and near relatives.

NOTE 2.— The only way to render a conjunctive personal pronoun emphatic is to place the disjunctive form before it, or after the predicate: e.g. *Moi, je l’aime*, or *Je l’aime, moi* ‘I love him.’ For the 3d person the disjunctive form alone is sometimes used: *Lui le pense* ‘He thinks so.’

a. — 1. *Je l’aime* (give in each instance all possible renderings of the 3d persons: here ‘him,’ ‘her,’ or ‘it’); *je vous aime*; *moi, je les aime*. 2. *Il me le donne*; *il vous le donne*; *je le lui donne*; *nous le lui donnons*; *je le leur donne*. 3. *Vous me l’avez dit* (‘said’). 4. *Il parle de moi* (*toi, lui*, etc.). 5. *Il pense à* (‘of’) *moi* (*toi, lui*, etc.); *moi, je pense à eux*; *nous pensons à elles*. 6. *Aimez-moi*; *aimez-le*. 7. *Donnez-moi une plume*; *donnez-lui une plume*; *donnez-la-moi*. 8. *Vous avez la rose, donnez-la-moi*. 9. *Pensez à moi et à lui*. 10. *Ce livre est à elle*. 11. *Donnez-moi du papier, j’en ai besoin*. 12. *Donnez-nous des plumes, nous en avons besoin*. 13. *Voici du beurre: donnez-m’en*. 14. *J’ai sa parole, et j’y crois*. 15. *Je le donne moi-même*; *je le donne à lui-même*.

b. — 1. He loves me, and I love him. 2. We love him, and he loves us. 3. I give him some pens. 4. Here is a hat: I give it to him; I give it to her; I give it to them; I give it to you. 5. They speak of me and of him. 6. You think of him and of her. 7. Love me, and love her also. 8. Give me a book; give him a book. 9. Here is a book, give it to her; here are the books, give them to him. 10. Think of (à) me, and of her. 11. This horse belongs to him. 12. I have a fine house, and I speak of it. 13. They have fine houses, and they speak of them. 14. Here is the paper, give me some. 15. He has a fine book, and I am thinking (= think) of it.

47. THE REFLEXIVE EXPRESSION.— English reflexive expressions like ‘I praise myself,’ etc., are in French rendered either by *je me loue*, lit. ‘I praise me’ (= ‘myself’ *unemphatic*) or by *je me loue moi-même* ‘I praise me myself’

(‘myself’ *emphatic*), etc. — Expressions like ‘I think of myself,’ etc., if also in French the reflexive is preceded by a preposition, are rendered by *je pense à moi-même* (*même*, however, being often omitted, especially with the 3d person), etc.

It is to be noted only that for the 3d person French has a special reflexive, viz., the conjunctive *se* (sing. or pl.: ‘himself, herself, themselves’: acc. or dat.), and the disjunctive *soi*. For *soi*, however, the regular personal pronoun (*lui, elle, eux, elles*) is preferred in the plural, or with reference to an individual person. — E.g. *Il (elle) se loue* ‘He (she) praises himself (herself)’ or *Il (elle) se loue lui-même (elle-même)*, *Chacun pense à soi* ‘Every one thinks of himself’ (subject indefinite). *Il ne songe qu’à lui (-même)* ‘He thinks only of himself’ (subj. an individual). *On doit rarement parler de soi* ‘One should seldom speak of himself (one’s self).’

NOTE. — *Se* precedes other object-pronouns: *il se l’est promis* ‘he promised it to himself.’

### POSSESSIVES.

#### 48. The possessives are either **adjectives** or **pronouns**.

ADJECTIVES (combined with a noun):		PRONOUNS (the noun understood):	
M.	F.	M.	F.
Sing. <i>mon</i>	<i>ma</i> (or <i>mon</i> , cf. note 1)	<i>le mien</i>	<i>la mienne</i>
Pl. <i>mes</i>		<i>les miens</i>	<i>les miennes</i>
	} ‘my.’		} ‘mine.’
Sing. <i>ton</i>	<i>ta</i> (or <i>ton</i> )	<i>le tien</i>	<i>la tienne</i>
Pl. <i>tes</i>		<i>les tiens</i>	<i>les tiennes</i>
	} ‘thy.’		} ‘thine.’
Sing. <i>son</i>	<i>sa</i> (or <i>son</i> )	<i>le sien</i>	<i>la sienne</i>
Pl. <i>ses</i>		<i>les siens</i>	<i>les siennes</i>
	} ‘his, her, its.’		} ‘his, her, its.’
Sing. <i>notre</i>		<i>le nôtre</i>	<i>la nôtre</i>
Pl. <i>nos</i>		<i>les nôtres</i>	
	} ‘our.’		} ‘ours.’
Sing. <i>votre</i>		<i>le vôtre</i>	<i>la vôtre</i>
Pl. <i>vos</i>		<i>les vôtres</i>	
	} ‘your.’		} ‘yours.’
Sing. <i>leur</i>		<i>le leur</i>	<i>la leur</i>
Pl. <i>leurs</i>		<i>les leurs</i>	
	} ‘their.’		} ‘theirs.’

NOTE 1.—The feminine forms *mon*, *ton*, *son* are used before words beginning with a vowel or *h* ‘mute.’

NOTE 2.—When the pronoun-forms are preceded by *de* or *à*, these prepositions are contracted, as usual, with the definite article (i.e. *de le mien* to *du mien*, *à le mien* to *au mien*, etc.).

49. The possessor determines, as in English, which possessive form to use, but this form is then, farther, made to agree in gender and number with the noun possessed.—Ex. *j’ai mon livre*; *ma plume*; *mes livres* ‘I have my book (pen, books); *son livre* ‘his (her) book’; *sa plume* ‘his (her) pen.

#### EXERCISE XIV (a, b).

##### MASC.

##### FEM.

<i>le caractère</i> ‘(the) character’	<i>la disposition</i> ‘(the) disposition’
<i>le courage</i> ‘(the) courage’	<i>la hardiesse</i> ‘(the) boldness’
<i>le mérite</i> ‘(the) merit’	<i>la vertu</i> ‘(the) virtue’
<i>le souvenir</i> ‘(the) remembrance’	<i>la mémoire</i> ‘(the) memory’
<i>le savoir-vivre</i> ‘(the) good behavior, breeding’	<i>la conduite</i> ‘(the) conduct’
	<i>aimable</i> ‘amiable, kind’
	<i>courageux</i> ‘courageous’
	<i>vertueux</i> ‘virtuous’
	<i>mémorable</i> ‘memorable’

a.—1. *Mon frère et le tien*; *ma sœur et la tienne*; *mes frères et les tiens*; *mes sœurs et les tiennes*. 2. *Votre mérite et le nôtre*; *vos mérites et les nôtres*. 3. *Son* (give all possible renderings of *son*) *caractère*; *le caractère de mon frère et le mien*; *leur disposition et la vôtre* (et *la leur*). 4. *Ses vertus et les leurs*. 5. *Ces hommes parlent de ton ami et du mien*, *de ta sœur et de la mienne*, *de tes frères* (or *sœurs*) *et des miens* (or *miennes*). 6. *Je donne du pain à ton petit frère et au mien*. 7. *Je pense à mon ami et au leur*; *à mes amis et aux leurs*. 8. *Je pense à l’aimable enfant de cette vertueuse mère et au vôtre*.

b. — 1. My book and his; my pen and his; my books and his; my pens and his. 2. Our memory and yours; our memories and yours. 3. His character and theirs; her character and theirs; his (her) merits and theirs. 4. We speak of his kind brother and of yours; of his kind sister and of yours. 5. I am thinking of my virtuous friend's great courage and of yours. 6. The remembrance of his good disposition and of hers is very dear *to me (me)*.

## DEMONSTRATIVES.

50. The demonstratives are either **adjectives** or **pronouns**.

ADJECTIVES (combined with the noun):		PRONOUNS (noun or phrase understood):	
M.	F.	M.	F.
Sing. <b>ce</b> ( <i>cet</i> , cf. note)	<i>cette</i>	<b>celui</b> . . .	<i>celle</i>
'this, that.'		'this (one) or that (one).'	
Pl.	<i>ces</i>	<i>ceux</i> . . .	<i>celles</i>
'these, those.'		'these (ones) or those (ones).'	
		<b>ce</b> 'that' (or <i>c'</i> , in <i>c'est</i> [ence. 'it is, that is'], indef. refer-	

NOTE. — **Cet** is used before words beginning with a vowel or *h* 'mute.'

51. To emphasize the difference between 'this' and 'that,' **-ci** 'here' and **-là** 'there' are frequently suffixed to the noun determined by *ce*, or to *celui*. With the pure pronoun *ce* they form **ceci** 'this' and **cela** (which may be contracted to *ça*) 'that.' — Ex. *Ce cheval-ci et celui-là* 'this horse and that one.' *Cette femme-ci et celle-là* 'this woman and that one.' **Cela** (or, in familiar phrase, *ça*) *est bon* 'that is good.'

EXERCISE XV (*a*, *b*).

MASC.	FEM.
<i>le jour</i> 'the day' . . . . .	<i>la nuit</i> 'the night'
<i>le mois</i> 'the month' . . . . .	<i>la semaine</i> 'the week'

## MASC.

## FEM.

<i>le langage</i> 'the language, talk' . . .	<i>la langue</i> '(the)language'
<i>le garçon</i> 'the boy' . . . . .	<i>la fille</i> 'the girl'
<i>un enfant</i> 'child' (generally) . . .	<i>une enfant</i> 'a little girl'
<i>monsieur</i> (pron. <i>me-s'eu</i> ) pl. <i>messieurs</i>	<i>madame</i> (pl. <i>mesdames</i> )
'gentleman, sir, Mr.'	'madam, Mrs.'; <i>dame</i>
<i>même</i> (pl. -s) 'same, -self'	['lady'
<i>sage</i> 'wise, prudent, good'; <i>vrai</i> 'true'	
<i>dit</i> 'says;' 'said' (pret.); 'said' (past pple)	
<i>je dis</i> 'I say,' <i>tu dis</i> 'thou sayest,' <i>il dit</i> 'he says'	

a. — 1. *Je pense à ce garçon et à cette fille; à cet enfant et à ces hommes.* 2. *J'aime cet enfant et celui de votre frère; ces enfants et ceux de votre frère.* 3. *Ce monsieur-ci et celui-là; ces dames-ci et celles-là.* 4. *Ce langage n'est pas si sage que celui de son ami.* 5. *Ce qu'il* (ce que 'that which, what') *dit est vrai.* 6. *C'est vrai, ce jour-ci est très beau.* 7. *Ceci est bon, cela n'est pas bon.* 8. *C'est le même mois.*

b. — 1. This day and this night; these days and these nights. 2. This girl and my cousin's (= that of my cousin). 3. These books and my brother's. 4. This gentleman and that lady. 5. This language is very beautiful, more beautiful than that one. 6. These boys are very prudent, more prudent than those. 7. Here are some pens: do you prefer (*préférez-vous*) these or those? 8. He loves this little girl, it is true. 9. This is true, but that is not true. 10. It is the same month, the same week, and the same day.

## INTERROGATIVES.

52. The interrogatives are either **adjectives** or **pronouns**.

ADJECTIVES (combined with a noun):	PRONOUNS (noun understood):
—	<i>qui</i> 'who? whom?' (only of persons)
—	<i>que</i> (or, after preposition, <i>quoi</i> ) 'what?'
<i>quel</i> 'which, what?'	<i>lequel</i> 'which (one)?'

**53.** *Quel* is inflected like an ordinary adjective, doubling *l* in the fem. — In *lequel*, compounded of the def. article *le* and *quel*, each element has its independent inflection; and a preceding *à* or *de* combines with *le* as usual. — Thus: m. *lequel*, f. *laquelle*; pl. m. *lesquels*, f. *lesquelles*; — (*de lequel* =) *duquel*, (*à lequel* =) *auquel*, etc.

**54.** *Qui*, *que*, *quoi* are invariable.

#### RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

**55.** The interrogative pronouns are used as relatives. The following distinctions are to be observed:—

[56.] *Qui* ‘who, which, that’ has the direct object-form *que*. But after a preposition *qui* (not *que*) is used, and can then refer only to persons (‘whom’). ‘Whose’ is expressed by *dont* (59).

[57.] *Lequel* ‘which,’ less often ‘who,’ is rarely used except after prepositions.

[58.] *Quoi* ‘which, what’ is used chiefly after prepositions in a general or indefinite sense: e.g. *Il n’y a rien de quoi parler* ‘There is nothing to speak of’ (lit. ‘of which to speak’).

#### EXERCISE XVI (a, b).

##### MASC.

##### FEM.

<i>le grand-père</i> ‘the grandfather’	<i>la grand-mère</i> ‘the grandmother’
<i>l’époux</i> ‘the husband’ . . .	<i>l’épouse</i> ‘the wife, spouse’
<i>le maître</i> ‘the master, teacher’	<i>la maîtresse</i> ‘mistress, teacher’
<i>le roi</i> ‘the king’ . . . . .	<i>la reine</i> ‘the queen’
<i>l’empereur</i> ‘the emperor’ . . .	<i>l’impératrice</i> ‘the empress’
<i>malade</i> ‘sick’; <i>mortel</i> ‘mortal’	
<i>rouge</i> ‘red’	
<i>arrivé</i> ‘arrived,’ with aux. ‘be,’ not ‘have’	
<i>reçu</i> ‘received’	
<i>tombé</i> ‘fallen’; <i>acheté</i> ‘bought’	
<i>ce qui</i> (nom.), <i>ce que</i> (acc.) ‘that which, what’	

a. — 1. *Quel roi? Quelle reine? Quels livres? Quelles personnes?* 2. *Qui aimez-vous?* 3. *Laquelle de ces filles aimez-vous?* 4. *Que nous dit notre grand-père?* 5. *A quoi pensez-vous?* *Lequel de ces maitres est le meilleur?* 6. *Lesquelles de ces filles sont bonnes?* 7. *J'ai deux frères (deux sœurs); duquel (de laquelle) parlez-vous?* 8. *Auquel de vos fils pensez-vous?* *Auxquelles de vos filles pensez-vous?* 9. *C'est ma grand'mère qui est arrivée.* 10. *C'est la reine que j'aime.* 11. *L'époux à qui (or auquel) elle pense est malade.* 12. *Les maitres à qui (or auxquels) vous pensez sont arrivés.* 13. *L'empereur de qui (or duquel, or dont: cf. 59) je parle.* 14. *Le cheval qui est arrivé et que j'ai acheté.* 15. *Le cheval auquel (not à qui) je donne de l'eau.* 16. *Ce qui ('that which' = 'what') est vrai est bon; ce que je dis est vrai; ce qu'il dit est vrai.*

b. — 1. Which king? which queen? which teachers (m.)? which teachers (f.)? 2. Which (one) of these horses? which (one) of these grandmothers? which (one) of these books? which (ones) of these houses? 3. Who is sick? whom do you love (*transl.* 'love-you')? who are they? 4. Of whom do you speak? to whom do you speak? 5. Of which one (*give both m. and f.*)? of which ones (m., f.)? 6. To which one (m. and f.)? to which ones (m., f.)? 7. What does he say? 8. What are you thinking of (*à*, which must precede 'what': *À quoi* etc.)? 9. The teacher who has ('is') arrived; the teacher whom I love; the boys whom we love. 10. The red rose which you have; the white rose of which (not *de qui*) you speak. 11. My grandfather of whom (*transl.* 'of whom' *in two ways*) you are thinking. 12. What he says is true.

**59. RELATIVE PARTICLES.** — *Dont* 'of (from) whom or which, whose, whence' is often used for *de* with a relative; and *où* 'to which, where' is generally used for *à* (or *dans*) and a relative, with reference to place or time. — Ex. *Le cheval dont (or duquel) je parle* 'the horse of which I speak.'



*La maison où* (or *à laquelle*) *je vais* 'the house to which I go.'

NOTE. — *Dont* must be used when in English 'whose' is or could be used, unless preceded by a preposition. After a preposition *duquel* (*de laquelle*, etc.) is required, instead of *dont*. The arrangement of the words is in either case the same as if 'of whom' (etc.) were used in English. — Ex. *L'homme dont le fils est arrivé* 'the man whose son (lit. 'of whom the son') has arrived.' *L'homme au fils duquel vous parlez* 'the man to whose son you speak.'

### EXERCISE XVII (a, b).

a. — 1. *L'empereur dont* (or *de qui*, or *duquel*) *ils parlent*. 2. *L'homme dont* (or *de qui*, or *duquel*) *vous avez reçu ce cheval*. 3. *La maison dont* (or *de laquelle*, but not *de qui*) *il parle*. 4. *Le palais où* (or *dans lequel*) *il demeure*. 5. *Le père dont l'enfant est malade*. 6. *Ce monsieur à l'enfant duquel vous donnez la rose rouge*. 7. *L'arbre dont les feuilles sont tombées*. 8. *L'homme avec le fils duquel il est arrivé*.

b. — 1. The master of whom you speak; the horses of which you speak. 2. The man whose wife is sick; the men whose sons have arrived (*sont arrivés*). 3. This house the roof of which is red. 4. The man of whose son he speaks. 5. The (lady-) teacher of whose beautiful books we speak. 6. The king in whose palace I have been (*été*). 7. The city to which (where) he has arrived.

### INDEFINITES.

60. The indefinite pronouns and adjectives are quite numerous. When inflected at all, they are treated like ordinary adjectives, observing only that *tout* (f. *toute*) 'every, all' is in the plural *tous* (f. *toutes*), and that *quelqu'un* (f. *quelqu'une*) 'some one, somebody' is in the plural m. *quelques-uns* (f. *quelques-unes*), being a compound of *quelque* and *un*.

Observe also the following:—

[61.] *On* 'one' (= 'people generally, they') is always singular and used as subject alone. — Unless followed by a word beginning with *l*, it is frequently, for euphony, changed to *l'on* after *et*, *si*, *ou*, *où*, *que*: e.g. *si l'on* 'if one'; *et (t* always silent) *l'on* 'and one'; *qu'on* or *que l'on* (the latter usually before a *k*-sound).

[62.] *Aucun* (adj., or pron. referring to a definite noun) 'any one, anybody,' *personne* (pron. used indefinitely) 'anybody,' and *rien* (pron.) 'anything,' are usually construed with *ne* 'not' (placed before the verb), and mean then 'nobody (not anybody)' and 'nothing.' This negative meaning they have without *ne*, if there is no verb. — Ex. *Il n'aime personne (rien)* 'He loves nobody (nothing).' *Il n'aime aucune de ces filles* 'He loves no one of these girls.' *N'aimez-vous personne (rien)?* 'Do you not love anybody (anything)?' *Personne ne l'aime* 'No one loves him.' *Qui aimez-vous? Personne.* 'Whom do you like? Nobody.'

[63.] *Nul* (adj.) 'no,' (pron., only as subject) 'none' requires *ne* before the verb. — Ex. *Nul ne l'aime* 'None loves him.' *Je n'en ai nulle connaissance* 'I have no knowledge of it.'

[64.] *Tout* before a noun means 'every, any, all,' if the noun is undefined; but 'whole, all,' if it is defined by an article or pronoun. As a pure pronoun, *tout* means 'everything, all.' — Ex. *tout homme* 'every (any) man,' *toute ville* 'every city'; *toute la ville* 'the whole city,' *tous les hommes* 'all men,' *tout son courage* 'all his courage'; *tout est perdu* 'everything (all) is lost.'

#### EXERCISE XVIII (a, b).

<i>chaque</i> (invar.) 'every, each' . . .	<i>chacun</i> (f. -e) 'every one'
<i>quelque</i> (pl. -s) 'some' . . . . .	<i>quelqu'un</i> (cf. 60) 'somebody, anybody'
<i>plusieurs</i> (invar.) 'several' . . .	<i>autrui</i> (invar.) 'others'

*tout le monde* 'all the world, everybody'  
*il chante* 'he sings'  
*il danse* 'he dances'  
*il reste* 'he (it) remains'  
*oui* 'yes,' *non* 'no,' *bien* 'well,' *si* 'if'

NOTE. — The negative particle *ne* 'not' is placed before the verb, and can be separated from it only by personal object-pronouns. E.g. *Il n'aime personne* 'He loves nobody.' *Aucun ne l'aime* 'No one loves him.'

a. — 1. *On chante et l'on danse.* 2. *Tout homme est mortel.*  
 3. *Tous les hommes sont mortels.* 4. *Quelqu'un me l'a dit.*  
 5. *Avez-vous quelques livres?* 6. *Oui, j'en ai quelques-uns.*  
 7. *Donnez-moi quelques-unes de vos belles pommes.* 8. *N'aimez-vous personne?* 9. *Je n'aime personne.* 10. *Personne ne chante.*  
 11. *Personne ne me l'a dit.* 12. *Qui aimez-vous? Personne;*  
*Laquelle de ces filles aimez-vous? Aucune.* 13. *Aucun ami ne me*  
*reste.* 14. *N'avez-vous rien? Je n'ai rien. Rien.* 15. *Toutes*  
*ces filles sont belles.* 16. *Chaque fille a une rose.* 17. *Plusieurs*  
*(or plusieurs personnes) l'ont dit.* 18. *Cet homme ne parle pas*  
*beaucoup d'autrui.* 19. *Tout le monde en parle.*

b. — 1. One sings, and one is happy (= they sing and are happy). 2. Every good mother loves her children. 3. All men are mortal. 4. All her children are beautiful. 5. Here are pens (*des plumes*); here are some (= a few: *quelques*) pens; here are some (*en voici*, or *en voici quelques-unes* = 'a few'). 6. He loves nobody, and nobody loves him. 7. He thinks of nobody, and nobody thinks of him. 8. Do you love anybody? No, I love nobody. Nobody. 9. Have you not said anything? I have said nothing. I have said nothing to him. Nothing. 10. Every child loves this teacher. 11. Every one of these boys speaks of him. 12. Everybody dances. 13. I am thinking of several persons.

## VERBS.

A. *Regular Verbs.*

**65.** French verbs are divided into four classes, according to the ending of their infinitive, which is as below : —

- I. **-er**: Ex. *aimer* 'love.'
- II. **-ir**: " *finir* 'finish.'
- III. **-re**: " *rompre* 'break.'
- IV. **-oir**: " *recevoir* 'receive.'

Classes I–III comprise nearly all the verbs of the language. These, with some few exceptions (so-called irregular verbs), are conjugated **without change** of their radical form, and according to **one** model. Class IV comprises only sixteen (primary) verbs. These all **vary** the root-form, and each one has, besides, some peculiarity of its own.

The **REGULAR CONJUGATION** is, then, properly made up of the first three classes. As it is of some practical advantage, however, to place the paradigms of the four classes side by side, that verb of the fourth class (*recevoir*) which, on the whole, represents best the general character of that class is here conjugated alongside the model-verbs of the first three classes.

**NOTE.** — It may be well to caution the student that many grammars (especially French) adopt four regular conjugations: I *er*-verbs, II *ir*-verbs, III *oir*-verbs, IV *re*-verbs.

**66.** THE CONJUGATION of the simple tenses of a verb consists in adding to its different stems certain endings. These endings (in the paradigms below marked by heavy type) are with few exceptions identical for all verbs.

The **stem** of a verb, as seen in the paradigms below, consists either of the root alone (in I–III unchanged, in IV often changed), or of the root extended by some added ending.

**67.** Below are given the simple tenses of *aimer*, *finir*, and *rompre*, which may serve as models for all regular verbs, and of *recevoir*.

## INDICATIVE

## Present

<i>j'aim-e</i> 'I love (am loving, do love)'	<i>je fin-is</i> 'I finish,' etc.	<i>je romp-s</i> 'I break,' etc.	<i>je reçois</i> 'I receive,' etc.
<i>tu aim-es</i>	<i>tu fin-is</i>	<i>tu romp-s</i>	<i>tu reçois</i>
<i>il aim-e</i>	<i>il fin-it</i>	<i>il romp-t</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>il reçoit</i>
<i>nous aim-ons</i>	<i>nous fin-iss-ons</i>	<i>nous romp-ons</i>	<i>nous recev-ons</i>
<i>vous aim-ez</i>	<i>vous fin-iss-ez</i>	<i>vous romp-ez</i>	<i>vous recev-ez</i>
<i>ils aim-ent</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>ils fin-iss-ent</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>ils romp-ent</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>ils reçoivent</i>

## Imperfect

<i>j'aim-ais</i> <sup>3</sup> 'I loved (was lov'g, did love)'	<i>je fin-iss-ais</i> 'I finished,' etc.	<i>je romp-ais</i> 'I broke,' etc.	<i>je recevais</i> 'I received,' etc.
<i>tu aim-ais</i>	<i>tu fin-iss-ais</i>	<i>tu romp-ais</i>	<i>tu recevais</i>
<i>il aim-ait</i>	<i>il fin-iss-ait</i>	<i>il romp-ait</i>	<i>il recevait</i>
<i>nous aim-ions</i>	<i>nous fin-iss-ions</i>	<i>nous romp-ions</i>	<i>nous recev-ions</i>
<i>vous aim-iez</i>	<i>vous fin-iss-iez</i>	<i>vous romp-iez</i>	<i>vous recev-iez</i>
<i>ils aim-aient</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>ils fin-iss-aient</i>	<i>ils romp-aient</i>	<i>ils recevaient</i>

## Preterit

<i>j'aim-ai</i> <sup>3</sup> 'I loved'	<i>je fin-is</i> 'I finished'	<i>je romp-is</i> 'I broke'	<i>je reç-us</i> 'I received'
<i>tu aim-as</i>	<i>tu fin-is</i>	<i>tu romp-is</i>	<i>tu reç-us</i>
<i>il aim-a</i>	<i>il fin-it</i>	<i>il romp-it</i>	<i>il reç-ut</i>
<i>nous aim-âmes</i>	<i>nous fin-îmes</i>	<i>nous romp-îmes</i>	<i>nous reç-ûmes</i>
<i>vous aim-âtes</i>	<i>vous fin-îtes</i>	<i>vous romp-îtes</i>	<i>vous reç-ûtes</i>
<i>ils aim-èrent</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>ils fin-irent</i>	<i>ils romp-irent</i>	<i>ils reç-urent</i>

Future<sup>4</sup>

<i>j'aim-er-ai</i> <sup>3</sup> 'I shall (will) love'	<i>je fin-ir-ai</i> <sup>3</sup> 'I shall finish'	<i>je romp-r-ai</i> <sup>3</sup> 'I shall break'	<i>je recev-r-ai</i> <sup>3</sup> 'I shall receive'
<i>tu aim-er-as</i>	<i>tu fin-ir-as</i>	<i>tu romp-r-as</i>	<i>tu recev-r-as</i>
<i>il aim-er-a</i>	<i>il fin-ir-a</i>	<i>il romp-r-a</i>	<i>il recev-r-a</i>

<sup>1</sup> -ent silent everywhere in 3d pl.      <sup>2</sup> Final *t* dropped after *c*, *d*, *t*.

<sup>3</sup> *ai* sounds = *è* in impf. and cond.; but = *é* in pret. and fut. (6).

<sup>4</sup> The student must observe in fut. the use of 'shall' or 'will.' Note that the stem of the fut. is the infinit. (*recevoir*, however, losing its *oi*); and the endings, the present of *avoir* (73).

*Future (continued).*

<i>nous aim-er-ons</i>	<i>nous fin-ir-ons</i>	<i>nous romp-r-ons</i>	<i>nous recev-r-ons</i>
<i>vous aim-er-ez</i>	<i>vous fin-ir-ez</i>	<i>vous romp-r-ez</i>	<i>vous recev-r-ez</i>
<i>ils aim-er-ont</i>	<i>ils fin-ir-ont</i>	<i>ils romp-r-ont</i>	<i>ils recev-r-ont</i>

*Conditional <sup>1</sup>*

<i>j'aim-er-ais</i> <sup>2</sup> 'I should (would) love'	<i>je fin-ir-ais</i> 'I should finish'	<i>je romp-r-ais</i> 'I should break'	<i>je recev-r-ais</i> 'I should receive'
<i>tu aim-er-ais</i>	<i>tu fin-ir-ais</i>	<i>tu romp-r-ais</i>	<i>tu recev-r-ais</i>
<i>il aim-er-ait</i>	<i>il fin-ir-ait</i>	<i>il romp-r-ait</i>	<i>il recev-r-ait</i>
<i>nous aim-er-ions</i>	<i>nous fin-ir-ions</i>	<i>nous romp-r-ions</i>	<i>nous recev-r-ions</i>
<i>vous aim-er-iez</i>	<i>vous fin-ir-iez</i>	<i>vous romp-r-iez</i>	<i>vous recev-r-iez</i>
<i>ils aim-er-aient</i>	<i>ils fin-ir-aient</i>	<i>ils romp-r-aient</i>	<i>ils recev-r-aient</i>

*SUBJUNCTIVE <sup>3</sup>**Present*

<i>j'aim-e</i> 'I (may, shall) love'	<i>je fin-iss-e</i> 'I (etc.) finish'	<i>je romp-e</i> 'I (etc.) break'	<i>je reçoiv-e</i> 'I (etc.) receive'
<i>tu aim-es</i>	<i>tu fin-iss-es</i>	<i>tu romp-es</i>	<i>tu reçoiv-es</i>
<i>il aim-e</i>	<i>il fin-iss-e</i>	<i>il romp-e</i>	<i>il reçoiv-e</i>
<i>nous aim-ions</i>	<i>nous fin-iss-ions</i>	<i>nous romp-ions</i>	<i>nous recev-ions</i>
<i>vous aim-iez</i>	<i>vous fin-iss-iez</i>	<i>vous romp-iez</i>	<i>vous recev-iez</i>
<i>ils aim-ent</i>	<i>ils fin-iss-ent</i>	<i>ils romp-ent</i>	<i>ils reçoiv-ent</i>

*Imperfect*

<i>j'aim-asse</i> 'I might (could, should) love'	<i>je fin-isse</i> 'I might (etc.) finish'	<i>je romp-isse</i> 'I might (etc.) break'	<i>je reç-usse</i> 'I might (etc.) receive'
<i>tu aim-asses</i>	<i>tu fin-isses</i>	<i>tu romp-isses</i>	<i>tu reç-usses</i>
<i>il aim-ât</i>	<i>il fin-ît</i>	<i>il romp-ît</i>	<i>il reç-ût</i>
<i>nous aim-ussions</i>	<i>nous fin-issions</i>	<i>nous romp-issions</i>	<i>nous reç-ussions</i>
<i>vous aim-ussiez</i>	<i>vous fin-issiez</i>	<i>vous romp-issiez</i>	<i>vous reç-ussiez</i>
<i>ils aim-assent</i>	<i>ils fin-issent</i>	<i>ils romp-issent</i>	<i>ils reç-ussent</i>

<sup>1</sup> The student must observe in cond. the use of 'should' or 'would.' Note that the stem of the cond. is the infinit. (*recevoir*, however, losing its *oi*); and the endings the shortened imperfect of *avoir* (73).

<sup>2</sup> Cf. foot-note 3, preceding page.

<sup>3</sup> The subjunctive is variously rendered in English. The meanings given above are only the most typical.

## IMPERATIVE

<i>aim-e</i> 'love!'	<i>fin-is</i> 'finish!'	<i>romp-s</i> 'break'	<i>reçois-s</i> 'receive!'
<i>aim-ons</i> 'let us love'	<i>fin-iss-ons</i>	<i>romp-ons</i>	<i>recev-ons</i>
<i>aim-ez</i> 'love'	<i>fin-iss-ez</i>	<i>romp-ez</i>	<i>recev-ez</i>

## INFINITIVE

<i>aim-er</i> '(to) love'	<i>fin-ir</i> 'finish'	<i>romp-re</i> 'break'	<i>recev-oir</i> 'receive'
---------------------------	------------------------	------------------------	----------------------------

## PARTICIPLES

## Present

<i>aim-ant</i> 'loving'	<i>fin-iss-ant</i> 'finishing'	<i>romp-ant</i> 'breaking'	<i>recev-ant</i> 'receiving'
----------------------------	-----------------------------------	-------------------------------	---------------------------------

## Past

<i>aim-é</i> 'loved'	<i>fin-i</i> 'finished'	<i>romp-u</i> 'broken'	<i>reç-u</i> 'received'
----------------------	-------------------------	------------------------	-------------------------

NOTE. — Precisely like *re-cevoir* are conjugated all compounds of *-cevoir* (*aper-, con-, de-, and per-cevoir*). Other verbs in *-oir* are described in 87-9.

## I.

## II.

## III.

<i>accepter</i> 'accept.'	<i>agir</i> 'act.'	<i>défendre</i> 'defend, forbid.'
<i>brûler</i> 'burn.'	<i>bâtir</i> 'build.'	<i>entendre</i> 'hear.'
<i>couper</i> 'cut.'	<i>choisir</i> 'choose.'	<i>perdre</i> 'lose.'
<i>donner</i> 'give.'	<i>guérir</i> 'cure.'	<i>pendre</i> 'hang.'
<i>garder</i> 'protect, keep.'	<i>nourrir</i> 'nourish.'	<i>répondre</i> 'answer.'
<i>parler</i> 'speak.'	<i>punir</i> 'punish.'	<i>rendre</i> 'give, return.'
<i>penser</i> 'think.'	<i>remplir</i> 'fill, fulfil.'	<i>vendre</i> 'sell.'
	IV. <i>concevoir</i> 'conceive'	

*le doigt* 'the finger'; *la main* 'the hand.'

*le devoir* 'the duty'; *le fruit* 'the fruit'; *pauvre* 'poor.'

Obs. *Il se* (dat.) *coupa la main* 'he cut his hand' (lit. 'the hand for himself').

NOTE. — THE SUBJUNCTIVE is used chiefly in dependent clauses when the statement contained in them is **not certain** of being or becoming a reality, or when it causes a feeling akin to **surprise**. The subjunctive is, then, required by certain preceding words (as of desire, command, fear, doubt, joy, or sorrow, etc.) imparting to the subordinate clause such a character. Some of these words will be given in the exercises that follow.

Verbs (regular) requiring the subjunctive: —

*demander* 'ask, require,' *souhaiter* 'wish,' *désirer* 'desire,'  
*ordonner* 'command,' *prier* 'pray, ask,' *défendre* 'forbid.'

### EXERCISE XIX (a, b).

a. — 1. *Je coupe l'arbre; je désire\* qu'il le coupe; je bâtis* (2 tenses) *la maison; j'entends quelqu'un.* 2. *Il me donne son livre; il punit* (2 tenses) *le garçon; elle vend* (not *vend*: cf. footnote 2, p. xxxvi) *des fruits.* 3. *Je gardai mon livre; je garderai mon livre; je lui parlais; je lui parlerais si j'y pensais.* 4. *Il se brûla le doigt; il se brûlera la main; il pensait à son frère; si vous aimiez cet homme, il penserait à vous.* 5. *Il remplit* (2 tenses) *son devoir; j'ordonnais qu'il remplit son devoir.* 6. *Nous perdions nos amis; je souhaite que nous ne perdions pas nos amis; il désira que nous perdissions nos amis; nous nourrissions les pauvres; il ordonna que nous nourrissions les pauvres.* 7. *Ils entendaient sa parole; ils répondraient, s'ils vous avaient* (had) *entendu.* 8. *Ils donnent de l'argent à cet homme, et je défends qu'ils lui en donnent* (transl. 'I forbid them to give him any'); *ils choisissent l'utile; je désire qu'ils choisissent l'utile; je désirais qu'ils choisissent l'utile; ils nous rendent notre argent; je souhaite qu'ils me rendent mon argent.* 9. *Il reçoit de l'argent; il recevra des fleurs; je défends qu'il reçoive mes coraux.*

b. — 1. Conjugate in full *parler, punir, vendre, concevoir.* 2. Give the forms of *couper, choisir, and perdre* that have different endings, and their meanings. 3. Give the forms of *penser, agir, and entendre* that have the circumflex, and their meaning. 4. Give the forms of *nourrir* whose stem is *nourriss-*, and their meaning. 5. Give the forms of *brûler, bâtir, and répondre* that terminate in *-ons*, and their meaning, and then those that terminate in *-ions*, and their meaning.

---

\* Words requiring the subjunctive are spaced.



## 68. MINOR CHANGES.

[69.] *E* mute, and also *é* (save in fut. and cond.), become **open** before a syllable containing an *e* mute. This is denoted by their change into *è*, or by the doubling of a following *l* or *t* (cf. 29). — Thus, *mener* 'lead': pr. ind. *je mène, tu mènes, il mène; nous menons, vous menez, ils mènent* (subj. *je mène*, etc. : *e* in 1st and 2d pl.; imp'v *mène*); fut. *mè-ne-rai*, etc. (throughout); cond. *mènerais*. — *Céder* 'yield': pr. *je cède*; fut. *je céderai*. — *Appeler* 'call': pr. *j'appelle*, etc., etc. (*-ell-* wherever *mener* has *èn-*).

NOTE. — *Celer* 'hide,' *geler* 'freeze,' *acheter* 'buy,' and some others take *è*, instead of doubling *l* and *t*.

[70.] Verbs in *-cer* and *-ger* change *c* and *g* to *ç* and *ge* respectively before *a*, *ai*, *o*. — Thus, *menacer* 'menace': pr. pl. *menaçons* (since *menacons* would be = *menakons*); impf. *menaçais*, etc. — *manger* 'eat': *mangeons, mangeais*, etc.

[71.] Verbs in *-yer* usually change *y* to *i* before *e* mute. — Thus, *noyer* 'drown': pr. *je noie*.

## EXERCISE XX (b).

<i>mener</i> 'lead'	<i>celer</i> 'hide, conceal'	<i>tracer</i> 'trace'
<i>jeter</i> 'throw'	<i>acheter</i> 'buy'	<i>manger</i> 'eat'
<i>appeler</i> 'call'	<i>employer</i> 'use'	<i>protéger</i> 'protect'

b. — Conjugate the simple tenses of above nine verbs, noting every change of letters according to 68-71.

## COMPOUND VERB-FORMS.

72. The COMPOUND TENSES of the active are made by the aid of *avoir* 'have' (or, in the case of certain intransitive verbs, especially of motion, by the aid of *être* 'be'); and all the forms of the passive by the aid of *être* 'be.'

**73.** The conjugation of these auxiliaries, which is quite irregular, is given below.

## INDICATIVE

*Avoir* 'have'*Être* 'be'*Present*

Sing.	1. <i>j'ai</i> (pronounce <i>jé</i> ) 'I have'	<i>je suis</i> 'I am'
	2. <i>tu as</i>	<i>tu es</i> (pr. = è)
	3. <i>il a</i>	<i>il est</i> (= è)
Pl.	1. <i>nous avons</i>	<i>nous sommes</i>
	2. <i>vous avez</i>	<i>vous êtes</i>
	3. <i>ils ont</i>	<i>ils sont</i>

*Imperfect*

Sing.	1. <i>j'avais</i> 'I had'	<i>j'étais</i> 'I was'
	2. <i>tu avais</i>	<i>tu étais</i>
	3. <i>il avait</i>	<i>il était</i>
Pl.	1. <i>nous avions</i>	<i>nous étions</i>
	2. <i>vous aviez</i>	<i>vous étiez</i>
	3. <i>ils avaient</i>	<i>ils étaient</i>

*Preterit*

Sing.	1. <i>j'eus</i> ( <i>eu</i> = Fr. <i>u</i> throughout) 'I had'	<i>je fus</i> 'I was, I became'
	2. <i>tu eus</i>	<i>tu fus</i>
	3. <i>il eut</i>	<i>il fut</i>
Pl.	1. <i>nous eûmes</i>	<i>nous fûmes</i>
	2. <i>vous eûtes</i>	<i>vous fûtes</i>
	3. <i>ils eurent</i>	<i>ils furent</i>

*Future*

Sing.	1. <i>j'aurai</i> 'I shall (will) have'	<i>je serai</i> 'I shall (will) be'
	2. <i>tu auras</i>	<i>tu seras</i>
	3. <i>il aura</i>	<i>il sera</i>

Pl.	1. <i>nous aurons</i>	<i>nous serons</i>
	2. <i>vous aurez</i>	<i>vous serez</i>
	3. <i>ils auront</i>	<i>ils seront</i>

*Conditional*

Sing.	1. <i>j'aurais</i>	<i>je serais</i>
	‘I should (would) have’	‘I should (would) be’
	2. <i>tu aurais</i>	<i>tu serais</i>
	3. <i>il aurait</i>	<i>il serait</i>
Pl.	1. <i>nous aurions</i>	<i>nous serions</i>
	2. <i>vous auriez</i>	<i>vous seriez</i>
	3. <i>ils auraient</i>	<i>ils seraient</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE

*Present*

Sing.	1. <i>j'aie</i>	<i>je sois</i>
	‘I have (may or shall have)’	‘I be (may or shall be)’
	2. <i>tu aies</i>	<i>tu sois</i>
	3. <i>il ait</i>	<i>il soit</i>
Pl.	1. <i>nous ayons</i>	<i>nous soyons</i>
	2. <i>vous ayez</i>	<i>vous soyez</i>
	3. <i>ils aient</i>	<i>ils soient</i>

*Imperfect*

Sing.	1. <i>j'eusse (eu = u)</i>	<i>je fusse</i>
	‘I had (might, could, or should have)’	‘I were (might, could, or should be)’
	2. <i>tu eusses</i>	<i>tu fusses</i>
	3. <i>il eût</i>	<i>il fût</i>
Pl.	1. <i>nous eussions</i>	<i>nous fussions</i>
	2. <i>vous eussiez</i>	<i>vous fussiez</i>
	3. <i>ils eussent</i>	<i>ils fussent</i>

## IMPERATIVE

Sing.	2. <i>aie</i> 'have!'	<i>sois</i> 'be!'
Pl.	1. <i>ayons</i> 'let us have!'	<i>soyons</i> 'let us be!'
	2. <i>ayez</i> 'have!'	<i>soyez</i> 'be!'

## INFINITIVE

<i>avoir</i> '(to) have'	<i>être</i> '(to) be'
--------------------------	-----------------------

## PARTICIPLES

<i>ayant</i> 'having'	<i>étant</i> 'being'
<i>eu</i> (= Fr. <i>u</i> ) 'had'	<i>été</i> 'been'

**74.** To form the COMPOUND TENSES of any verb, active or passive, combine the auxiliaries with the past participle of the main verb on the same principles as in English (observing 75-6, below). Thus: act.: *j'ai aimé* 'I have loved,' *j'avais aimé* 'I had loved,' etc.; pass.: *je suis aimé* 'I am loved,' *j'étais aimé* 'I was loved.'

[75.] It is to be observed only that the **past participle** (*aimé*), being in French subject to inflection like an adjective (sing. m. *aimé*, f. *aimée*; pl. m. *aimés*, f. *aimées*), **agrees** with a preceding **direct object** if conjugated with **avoir**, but with the **subject** if conjugated with **être** (reflexive verbs, hereafter, excepted). — Thus: *La fille que j'ai aimée* 'the girl (that) I have loved.' *Elle est aimée* 'she is loved.' *Ces garçons sont aimés* 'these boys are loved.'

**NOTE.** — The participle with *avoir* is unchanged if there is no preceding direct object. Thus: *J'ai aimé cette fille*.

**76.** As already indicated in 72, certain intransitives are conjugated with *être* instead of *avoir*. Among verbs always thus conjugated should be noticed especially the three verbs of motion, *aller* 'go,' *arriver* 'arrive,' *venir* (with most of its

compounds) 'come,' and also *naitre* 'be born, arise,' and *mourir* 'die.' — Ex. *Il est arrivé* 'He has arrived.' *Il est mort* 'He has died.'

## EXERCISE XXI (a, b).

## MASC.

## FEM.

<i>le verre</i> 'the glass' . . . .	<i>la bouteille</i> 'the bottle'
<i>le livre</i> 'the book' . . . .	<i>la livre</i> 'the pound'
<i>le morceau</i> 'the piece' . . .	<i>la tranche</i> 'the slice, piece'
<i>le coffre</i> 'the trunk, chest' .	<i>la malle</i> 'the wallet, trunk'
<i>l'argent</i> '(the) silver, money'	<i>la monnaie</i> '(the) coin, change'
<i>Dieu</i> 'God' . . . . .	<i>déesse</i> 'goddess'
<i>arriver</i> 'arrive' (always with <i>être</i> )	
<i>si</i> 'if,' <i>chez</i> 'at, with, at the home of'	

Verbs governing the subjunctive :

*exiger* 'exact, demand,'      *appréhender* 'apprehend,'  
*regretter* 'regret.'

a. — 1. *J'ai un cheval; je désire que vous ayez un cheval; je suis heureux; elle prie Dieu que je sois heureux.* 2. *Nous avons des amis; nous sommes amis; nous avons des amis; nous étions amis.* 3. *Nous aurons de l'argent; nous serons bons; je pensais que nous aurions de l'argent; nous serions contents, si nous avions assez de livres.* 4. *Il désire que nous ayons courage, et que nous soyons heureux.* 5. *Vous avez une malle, l'avez-vous achetée?* 6. *Oui, j'ai acheté cette malle; je l'ai achetée chez M. (for Monsieur) A.* 7. *Ont-ils donné les livres au garçon? Oui, ils les lui ont donnés.* 8. *Nous aurions vendu deux livres, si vous les aviez achetés (or achetées: obs. the difference).* 9. *Il exige que vous acceptiez cet argent.* 10. *Il regrettait qu'ils eussent parlé.* 11. *La maison fut bâtie.* 12. *Les maisons ont été bâties.* 13. *On a exigé que cet argent (cette perle) fût rendu (rendue).* 14. *On ordonna qu'il fût puni.* 15. *Nous serions aimés (or aimées), si nous étions bons (or bonnes).*

16. *J'apprends que ma malle ne* (verbs of fear require an expletive *ne* when affirmative) *soit perdue*. — 17. *Mon cousin est arrivé*.

b. — Conjugate in full *aimer* with *avoir* [compound present: *j'ai aimé*, etc.] and *être* [passive present: *je suis aimé* (or *aimée*), etc.]. — Translate: 1. He has loved her sister; he has loved her. 2. She is punished by (*par*) her father. 3. Her eyes will be cured. 4. Have they lost their brothers? Yes, they have lost them. 5. Their beautiful horses are lost. 6. Would you have protected his sister? Yes, I would have protected her. 7. I was desiring that he might answer. 8. I should have bought glasses and bottles if I had had money. 9. They have eaten a piece of meat and a slice of bread. 10. This trunk would be sold if it were (indic.) good. 11. They apprehend that their books are lost (cf. sentence 16, under a). 12. I regret that you have thought so (*ainsi*).

#### INTERROGATIVE CONSTRUCTION.

77. A subject pronoun is connected by a hyphen to the verb (e.g. *ai-je?* 'have I?'), but a subject noun is placed before the verb and a corresponding personal pronoun is appended after it (e.g. *L'arbre rompt-il?* 'does the tree break?' *Votre mère est-elle malade?* 'is your mother sick?'). The auxiliary 'do (does, etc.)' is not rendered in French.

NOTE 1. — Before the appended *je* a final *-e* becomes *è* (e.g. *Aimè-je?* 'do I love?'), and before *il* or *elle*, a *-t-* is inserted after a vowel (e.g. *Aime-t-il?* 'does he love?' *A-t-il?* 'has he?').

NOTE 2. — Instead of the regular interrogative construction, it is quite common to introduce the question by placing the phrase *est-ce que* (pr. *è's'k'*) 'is it that' before the pronoun (or noun) and the verb. Especially common is this construction in questions implying surprise or denial. — *Est-ce que j'aime?* 'do I love?' *Est-ce qu'il est aimé?* 'is he loved?'

## NEGATIVE CONSTRUCTION.

**78.** The negation 'not' is with a verb usually expressed by two particles, viz. *ne* and *pas* (or, more emphatically, *point*). *Ne* (*n'* bef. vowel or *h* 'mute'), very rarely lacking, is placed before the personal verb-form or a preceding object-pronoun. *Pas* or *point*, in certain cases omitted, are placed immediately after the personal verb-form. — Ex. :

<i>Je ne suis pas malade.</i>	I am not sick.
<i>Je n'aime point cet enfant.</i>	I do not love this child.
<i>Je n'ai pas fini mon thème.</i>	I have not finished my theme.
<i>Je ne le lui donnerai pas (point).</i>	I shall not give it to him.

NOTE 1. — As seen above, the negative auxiliary 'do' is not expressed in French (i.e. 'I do not love' is rendered simply by 'I love not': *Je n'aime pas*).

NOTE 2. — Usually both negatives precede a simple infinitive (*ne pas aimer*, etc.).

**79.** Among other negatives, the following may be noticed here: —

<i>ne . . . jamais</i> 'never'	<i>ne . . . que</i> 'only'
<i>ne . . . plus</i> 'no more'	<i>ne . . . rien</i> 'nothing'
<i>ne . . . guère</i> 'not much, scarcely'	<i>ne . . . personne</i> 'nobody'

These are arranged like *ne . . . pas*, except that *que*, *personne* follow a participle, and that only *ne plus*, *ne rien* are allowed to precede a simple infinitive (cf. 78, note 2). — Ex. :

<i>Il ne perd jamais.</i>	He never loses.
<i>Je n'y penserai plus.</i>	I shall think of it no more.
<i>Je n'ai guère d'argent.</i>	I have scarcely any money.
<i>Il ne m'a donné qu'une fleur.</i>	He has given me only a flower.
<i>Je désire ne plus parler (or ne parler plus).</i>	I wish to speak no more.

'Neither . . . nor' is usually expressed by  
*ne* 'neither' . . . *ni ne* 'nor' — with simple tenses;  
*ne* . . . *ni* (arranged = *ne* . . . *pas*) 'neither' . . . *ni* 'nor'  
 — with compound tenses.

Ex. : —

*Il ne pense ni ne parle.*

He neither thinks nor speaks.

*Il n'a ni pensé ni parlé.*

He neither thought nor spoke.

### EXERCISE XXII (a, b).

MASC.

FEM.

*le temps* 'the time'

*une position* 'a position'

*un temple* 'a temple' . . . .

*une église* 'a church'

*le chemin* 'the road' . . . .

*la route* 'the route, road'

*le mont* 'the mount, hill' . . .

*la montagne* 'the mountain'

*montrer* 'show'; *préférer* 'prefer'

*ouvert* 'open'; *ici* 'here'

Verbs requiring the subjunctive, but only when a doubt or uncertainty is implied (i.e. generally when they are used negatively, interrogatively, or with *si* 'if') : —

*penser* 'think,' *espérer* 'hope,' *déclarer* 'declare.'

a. — 1. *Est-ce que je vous donne de belles fleurs?* 2. *Suis-je aimé?* 3. *Sera-t-elle préférée?* 4. *Sa sœur est-elle punie?* 5. *Les fleurs ne sont-elles pas ici?* 6. *Il ne parle pas* (or *point*). 7. *Vous ne m'en avez pas parlé.* 8. *Il ne punit jamais ses enfants.* 9. *Vous ne m'avez jamais montré cette église.* 10. *Il ne parle plus de cette montagne.* 11. *Votre ami n'a-t-il que ce cheval-là?* 12. *Je ne pense pas qu'il punisse son enfant.* 13. *Espérez-vous que votre fille guérisse?* 14. *Je n'espérais point qu'il me défendît.* 15. *Si vous déclarez que ce garçon est bon, je l'accepte.* 16. *Il n'entend ni ne répond.* 17. *Je ne pense ni n'espère qu'il vende sa maison.* 18. *Il ne m'a ni entendu ni appelé.* 19. *N'aviez-vous ni pensé, ni espéré qu'elle guérît?* 20. *J'espère que j'aurai le temps.*



b. — 1. Do you love her? I do not love her, and I shall not love her. 2. Has he accepted this book? He has *not* accepted it. 3. Does my sister speak (cf. Ex. 4, a)? 4. Will the road be long? 5. He does not show me his books. 6. She has not shown me her books, and she has not shown them to you. 7. This church is never open. 8. This route is no longer open. 9. He speaks only of this beautiful mountain. 10. He neither thinks nor acts; he has neither thought nor acted. 11. My father has ordered me *not to* (*de ne point*: 78, note 2) speak of this man; my father has ordered me to speak of this man *no more* (cf. 79, Ex. 5).

## REFLEXIVE VERBS.

80. Verbs are construed **reflexively** with the reflexive object-pronouns *me* 'myself' or 'to (for) myself,' *te* 'thyself,' etc., *se* 'himself, herself, itself,' *nous* 'ourselves,' *vous* 'yourselves (yourself),' etc., *se* 'themselves, etc. (cf. 47). — In compound tenses, reflexive verbs always take the auxiliary *être*, to be rendered by 'have.' — Thus:

## PRESENT IND.

*je me flatte* 'I flatter myself'  
*tu te flattes* 'thou flatterest thyself'  
*il se flatte* 'he flatters himself'  
*nous nous flattons* 'we flatter ourselves'  
*vous vous flattez* 'you flatter yourselves (or -self)'  
*ils se flattent* 'they flatter themselves,'  
 etc.

## COMP. PRESENT IND.

*je me suis flatté (or flattée)* 'I have flattered myself'  
*tu t'es flatté (-e)* 'thou hast flattered thyself'  
*il s'est flatté* 'he has flattered himself,' etc.

NOTE 1. — Before vowel or *h* mute *me*, *te*, *se* become *m'*, *t'*, *s'*.

NOTE 2. — The place of the reflexive pronoun is before the verb, except with an affirmative imperative, when it is appended to it by a hyphen (*me*, *te* being changed to *moi*, *toi*). Cf. 44.

NOTE 3. — In compound tenses the **past participle** is treated precisely as if the auxiliary were *avoir*, not *être* (cf. 75). — Ex. *elle s'est flattée* 'she has flattered herself,' *ils se sont flattés* 'they have flattered themselves'; but *elle s'est donné un coup*, 'she gave herself (ind. obj.) a stroke.'

81. Many verbs are used reflexively in French when not so used in English. Such verbs are generally to be translated intransitively or passively. Thus: *il s'arrête* 'he stops,' *il s'approche* 'he approaches or is approaching,' *il se trompe* 'he is mistaken,' etc.

#### EXERCISE XXIII (a, b).

<i>s'arrêter</i> 'stop'	<i>s'écrier</i> 'cry out'	<i>s'approcher (de)</i> 'approach'
<i>se coucher</i>	<i>se tromper</i>	<i>se douter (de)</i> 'suspect'
'go to bed'	'be mistaken'	
<i>se lever</i> 'rise'	<i>s'amuser</i> 'amuse	<i>se défier (de)</i> 'distrust'
	(enjoy) o. s.'	

*se porter* 'be (in respect to health)'

*Je me porte bien* 'I am well'

*Comment vous portez-vous?* 'How are you?'

*hier* 'yesterday,' *aujourd'hui* 'to-day'; *encore* 'yet'

a. — 1. *L'homme s'arrêta.* 2. *Elle s'est couchée.* 3. *Je me suis levé à cinq heures.* 4. *Ma sœur s'est beaucoup amusée dans la ville.* 5. *L'armée s'approcha de la ville.* 6. *Ils se sont défiés de vous.* 7. *Je me doutais de sa conduite.* 8. *Comment vous portez-vous?* 9. *Je ne me porte pas très-bien.* 10. *À quelle heure vous êtes-vous couchée hier, ma sœur?* 11. *Je me suis couchée à neuf heures, et je me suis levée aujourd'hui à cinq heures et quart.* 12. *Arrête-toi; arrêtez-vous.* 13. *Approche-toi, mon enfant, ne te défie pas de moi.*

b. — 1. Conjugate throughout *se flatter* and *se réjouir*. 2. I am well, but my brother is not well. 3. My brother had stopped when you called him, but my sister had not stopped. 4. Do you not enjoy yourself? 5. This child suspects everything. 6. These women have been mistaken.

### B. Irregular Verbs.

☞ A full treatment of the irregular verbs would simply defeat the purpose of this brief introduction, which is to enable the student to begin reading at the earliest practicable moment with a fair knowledge of the prominent features of the French grammar. It has seemed best, therefore, to describe here only a few of the most common and representative of the irregular verbs, or enough to help the student in determining irregular forms, and to consult or study, at any moment, the detailed exposition in Part Second, § 161; and then to add, for reference, an alphabetical list of such forms of other irregular verbs as may cause the learner some difficulty.

**82. THE IRREGULAR VERBS**, as already noted (65), consist of some verbs in **-er**, **-ir**, **-re** — altogether about 70 primary verbs; and of all verbs in **-oir** (16 primary).

**83. PRINCIPAL PARTS.** — Five forms, the **infinitive**, **present participle**, **past participle**, **present indicative**, and **preterit indicative**, are called the principal parts of a French verb, because all other verb-forms can be derived from them according to certain rules, which for the regular verbs are without exception. For the irregular verbs they are much less so. But usually it is sufficient to know the principal parts of an irregular verb in order to make, or at least recognize, any other form.

[84.] The principal and derivable forms of *aimer* (which may serve as a model for all other verbs) are those described below:

1. Inf. *aimer* { fut. *j'aimer-ai* (i.e. add *-ai* after *r*).  
                              cond. *j'aimer-ais* (i.e. add *-ais* after *r*).
2. Pr. part. *aim-ant* { pr. subj. *j'aim-e* (i.e. substitute *e* for *-ant*).  
                              impf. ind. *j'aim-ais* (i.e. sub. *-ais* for *-ant*).
3. Past part. *aimé*: compound tenses, *j'ai aimé*, etc.
4. Pr. ind. *j'aime*: imp've *aime*.
5. Pret. ind. *j'aimai*: impf. subj. *j'aima-ssé* (i.e. add *-ssé* to the stem: cf. note below).

NOTE.—The plural of the pres. ind. is always from the pres. part. (*aim-ons, fin-iss-ons, romp-ons*). The *-sse* of the impf. subj. is added to the pret. stems *aima-, fini-, rompi-* (always found in 2d sing.).

Compare with the above the principal parts of the irregular verb *partir* 'depart':—

1. Inf. *partir* { fut. *partir-ai*.  
cond. *partir-ais*.
2. Pr. part. *part-ant* \* { pr. subj. *je part-e*.  
impf. ind. *je part-ais*.
3. Past part. *parti*: compound tenses, *j'ai* (or *je suis*) *parti*.
4. Pr. ind. *je pars* †: pr. ind. *je pars, tu pars, il part*; (pl. from pr. part.) *nous part-ons, vous partez, ils partent*.—Imp've *pars, partons, partez*.
5. Pret. ind. *je partis*: impf. subj. *je parti-ss-e*.

**85.** Learn the principal parts of the following ten verbs (irregular parts in heavy type):—

INF.	PR. PART.	PAST PART.	PRES. IND.	PRET. IND.
<i>Partir</i> depart	<i>partant</i>	<i>parti</i>	<i>je pars</i>	<i>je partis</i>
<i>Sentir</i> feel	<i>sentant</i>	<i>senti</i>	<i>je sens</i>	<i>je sentis</i>
<i>Souffrir</i> suffer	<i>souffrant</i>	<i>souffert</i>	<i>je souffre</i>	<i>je souffris</i>
<i>Offrir</i> offer	<i>offrant</i>	<i>offert</i>	<i>j'offre</i>	<i>j'offris</i>
<i>Vêtir</i> clothe	<i>vêtant</i>	<i>vêtu</i>	<i>je vêts</i>	<i>je vêtis</i>
<i>Mettre</i> put	<i>mettant</i>	<i>mis</i>	<i>je mets</i>	<i>je mis</i>
<i>Écrire</i> write	<i>écrivait</i>	<i>écrit</i>	<i>j'écris</i>	<i>j'écrivis</i>
<i>Lire</i> read	<i>lisant</i>	<i>lu</i>	<i>je lis</i>	<i>je lus</i>
<i>Vivre</i> live	<i>vivant</i>	<i>vécu</i>	<i>je vis</i>	<i>je vécus</i>
<i>Craindre</i> fear	<i>craignant</i>	<i>craint</i>	<i>je crains</i>	<i>je craignis</i>

\* Instead of *partissant* (cf. *finissant*). † Instead of *partis* (cf. *finis*).

Each tense of these verbs is conjugated regularly, observing that the plural of the present indicative is formed from the present participle (by substituting, as usual, the personal endings *-ons*, *-ez*, *-ent* for *-ant*). Hence: Pr. *je pars, tu pars, il part, nous partons, vous partez, ils partent*; *je souffre, tu souffres, il souffre, nous souffrons*, etc. — *je crains, tu crains, il craint, nous craignons, vous craignez, ils craignent*; — and so on.

#### EXERCISE XXIV (a, b).

*demain* 'to-morrow'; *lorsque (lorsqu')* 'when'; *sur* 'upon'

NOTE. — *Craindre* 'fear' requires the subjunctive after *que*. When used affirmatively, it also requires an expletive *ne* before the subjunctive. — Ex. *Je crains qu'il ne parle* 'I fear he may speak.'

a. — Conjugate throughout all the verbs given under 85.

b. — Translate: 1. *Il part; il partit hier; je ne pensais pas qu'il partît.* 2. *Nous partons aujourd'hui; il désire que nous partions demain; nous partions lorsqu'il arriva; partons!* 3. *Il sent que vous l'aimez, et je désire qu'il le sente; vous le (it) sentez; vous le sentîtes; je n'espérais point que vous le sentissiez.* 4. *S'il part, je souffrirai beaucoup; je lui offrirais de l'argent si j'en avais.* 5. *Il met son livre sur la table; il le mit sur la table; je défends qu'il l'y mette; je défendis qu'il l'y mît.* 6. *Ils écrivent; je souhaite qu'ils écrivent; ils écriront demain; ils écrivaient lorsque j'arrivai; ils écriraient s'ils avaient des plumes; il ordonna qu'ils écrivissent.* 7. *Il vit encore; il vécut; je priais Dieu qu'il vécût; nous vivons encore; nous vivions à ce temps; j'appréhende que nous ne vivions pas.* 8. *Je crains qu'il ne parte; je ne crains pas qu'il parte; craignez-vous qu'il parte? craignez-vous qu'il ne parte? vous craigniez qu'il n'écrivît; je désire que vous ne le craigniez point; vous ne craignez pas; s'il souffrait, vous craindriez.* 9. *Mon frère a beaucoup souffert, et il est encore souffrant.* 10. *Une bonne position lui (m.) est offerte.* 11. *La lettre est écrite, je l'ai écrite moi-même.* 12. *Il craint que vous ne lisiez sa lettre.* 13. *Craignant que vous n'arriviez point, nous sommes partis.*

**86. *Aller*** ‘go,’ ***venir*** ‘come,’ ***tenir*** ‘hold,’ ***dire*** ‘say,’ ***faire*** ‘make, do.’ — The conjugation of these five very common verbs is as follows (irregular parts in heavy type):—

INF.	PR. PART.	PAST PART.	PR. IND.	PRET. IND.
<i>Aller</i>	<i>allant</i>	<i>allé</i>	<i>je vais</i>	<i>j’allai</i>
F.	Pr. S.		<i>tu vas</i>	Ipf. S.
<i>j’irai</i>	<i>j’aïlle</i>	<i>je suis allé</i>	<i>il va</i>	<i>j’allasse</i>
C.	<i>tu ailles</i>	etc.	<i>nous allons</i>	
<i>j’irais</i>	<i>il aille</i>		<i>vous allez</i>	
	<i>nous allions</i>		<i>ils vont</i>	
	<i>vous alliez</i>		Ip’ve	
	<i>ils aillent</i>		<i>va</i>	
	Ipf. I.		<i>allons</i>	
	<i>j’allais</i>		<i>allez</i>	
<i>Venir</i>	<i>venant</i>	<i>venu</i>	<i>je viens *</i>	<i>je vins</i>
F.	Pr. S.		<i>tu viens</i>	<i>tu vins</i>
<i>je viendrai</i>	<i>je vienne</i>	<i>je suis venu</i>	<i>il vient</i>	<i>il vint</i>
C.	<i>tu viennes</i>	etc.	<i>nous venons</i>	<i>nous vîmes</i>
<i>je viendrais</i>	<i>il vienne</i>		<i>vous venez</i>	<i>vous vîtes</i>
	<i>nous venions</i>		<i>ils viennent</i>	<i>ils vinrent</i>
	<i>vous veniez</i>		Ip’ve	Ipf. S.
	<i>ils viennent</i>		<i>viens</i>	<i>je vinsse</i>
	Ipf. I.		<i>venons</i>	
	<i>je venais</i>		<i>venez</i>	

*Tenir* precisely like *venir*; so also *devenir*.

<i>Dire</i>	<i>disant</i>	<i>dit</i>	<i>je dis</i>	<i>je dis</i>
F.	Pr. S.		<i>tu dis</i>	Ipf. S.
<i>je dirai</i>	<i>je dise</i>		<i>il dit</i>	<i>je disse</i>
C.	Ipf. I.		<i>nous disons</i>	
<i>je dirais</i>	<i>je disais</i>		<i>vous dites</i>	
			<i>ils disent</i>	
			Ip’ve	
			<i>dis</i>	
			<i>disons</i>	
			<i>dites</i>	

\* Pronounce *vièn* (like *bien*).

INF.	PR. PART.	PAST PART.	PR. IND.	PRET. IND.
<i>Faire</i>	<i>faisant</i> *	<i>fait</i>	<i>je fais</i>	<i>je fis</i>
F.	Pr. S.		<i>tu fais</i>	1pf. S.
<i>ferai</i>	<i>fasse</i>		<i>il fait</i>	<i>je fisse</i>
C.	1pf. I.		<i>nous faisons</i>	
<i>ferais</i>	<i>faisais</i> *		<i>vous faites</i>	
			<i>ils font</i>	
			Ip've	
			<i>fais</i>	
			<i>faisons</i>	
			<i>faites</i>	

## EXERCISE XXV (a, b).

*s'en aller* 'go away' (obs. the use of *se* and *en* 'away'); *de* 'to.'

a. — Conjugate throughout all the tenses of *aller*, *venir*, *tenir*, *dire*, and *faire*.

b. — Translate: 1. *Je vais chez M. Adam.* 2. *Mes frères n'iront pas chez leur cousin ; ils iraient s'ils avaient le temps.* 3. *J'espère qu'il ira chez son cousin ; je n'espère point qu'il y aille.* 4. *Ils allèrent à Paris.* 5. *Il exige que vous veniez ; si vous veniez il viendrait aussi ; il vient ; il viendra ; elle est venue ; ordonnez qu'elle vienne.* 6. *Elle tient la rose à la main ; ma nièce tiendra la rose.* 7. *Vous dites qu'il viendra ; dites-lui de venir ; elle désire que je le dise ; mon père me dit (2 tenses) qu'il viendra ; disant cela il s'en alla.* 8. *Il s'en va ; il s'en ira ; je souhaite qu'il s'en aille.* 9. *Il demande que nous nous en allions ; pensez-vous que ma sœur s'en aille ?* 10. *Va-t'en* ('get thee hence, go away'); *allez-vous-en.* 11. *Elle s'en est allée.* 12. *Que fait le garçon ? je le ferai venir ; j'ordonne qu'il le fasse ; faites-le venir.*

**87. VERBS IN -oir.** — Verbs in *-oir*, though not conjugated precisely alike, have some principles in common. As model

---

\* Pronounce *fai*- like *fe*- here and in derivations.

for them all may serve *recevoir* 'receive,' which has been described already under 67. Its principal and derived parts are here repeated :

INF.	PR. PART.	PAST PART.	PR. IND.	PRET. IND.
<i>Recevoir</i>	<i>recevant</i>	<i>reçu</i>	<i>je reçois</i>	<i>je reçus</i>
F.	Pr. S.		<i>tu reçois</i>	Ipf. S.
<i>je recevrai</i>	<i>je reçoive</i>	<i>j'ai reçu</i>	<i>il reçoit</i>	<i>je reçusse</i>
C.	<i>tu reçoives</i>	etc.	<i>nous recevons</i>	
<i>je recevrais</i>	<i>il reçoive</i>		<i>vous recevez</i>	
	<i>nous recevions</i>		<i>ils reçoivent</i>	
	<i>vous receviez</i>		Ip've	
	<i>ils reçoivent</i>		<i>reçois</i>	
	Ipf.		<i>recevons</i>	
	<i>je recevais</i>		<i>recevez</i>	

NOTE. — Like *recevoir* are conjugated, as already noticed, other verbs in *-cevoir* (*concevoir* 'conceive,' *decevoir* 'deceive,' etc.). — Also *devoir* 'owe, ought,' except that its past participle (masc. sing.) is *dû* (i.e. it has the circumflex, to distinguish it from *du* = *de le*). Hence : *devoir*, *devant*, *dû* (f. *due*), *je dois*, *je dus*.

[88.] All verbs in *-oir* (*savoir* 'know' excepted) form, like *recevoir*, their 1st and 2d pl. present indicative from the present participle; and they all (save *pouvoir* 'provide') drop, like *recevoir*, their *oi* in the future and conditional, some slight change of the root attending this loss (e.g. *voir* 'see': fut. *verrai*; *pouvoir* 'be able': *pourrai*; *savoir* 'know': *saurai*; *valoir* 'be worth': *vaudrai*; *vouloir* 'wish': *voudrai*).

Other irregularities cannot be conveniently classified.

89. Below are given six of the most common verbs in *-oir*, viz. : *devoir* 'owe, ought,' *voir* 'see,' *pouvoir* 'be able, can, may,' *savoir* 'know,' *vouloir* 'wish, will,' *falloir* 'be necessary' (impersonal). — Tenses left unconjugated are regular.



INF.	PR. PART.	PAST PART.	PR. IND.	PRET. IND.
<b>Devoir</b>	<b>devant</b>	<b>dû</b>	<b>je dois</b>	<b>je dus</b>
F. <i>je devrai</i>	Pr. S. <i>je doive</i>		etc. (like <i>reçois</i> )	Ipf. S. <i>je dusse</i>
C. <i>je devrais</i>	Ipf. I. <i>je devais</i>			
<b>Voir</b>	<b>voyant</b>	<b>vu</b>	<b>je vois</b>	<b>je vis</b>
F. <i>verrai</i>	Pr. S. <i>je voie</i>		<i>tu vois</i>	Ipf. S. <i>je visse</i>
C. <i>verrais</i>	<i>tu voies</i>		<i>il voit</i>	
	<i>il voie</i>		<i>nous voyons</i>	
	<i>nous voyions</i>		<i>vous voyez</i>	
	<i>vous voyiez</i>		<i>ils voient</i>	
	<i>ils voient</i>		Ipf. S. <i>vois</i>	
	Ipf. I. <i>je voyais</i>		<i>voyons</i>	
			<i>voyez</i>	
<b>Pouvoir</b>	<b>pouvant</b>	<b>pu</b>	<b>je peux (puis)</b>	<b>je pus</b>
F. <i>je pourrai</i>	Pr. S. <i>je puisse</i>		<i>tu peux</i>	Ipf. S. <i>je pusse</i>
C. <i>je pourrais</i>	<i>tu puisses</i>		<i>il peut</i>	
	etc.		<i>nous pouvons</i>	
	Ipf. I. <i>je pouvais</i>		<i>vous pouvez</i>	
			<i>ils peuvent</i>	
<b>Savoir</b>	<b>sachant</b>	<b>su</b>	<b>je sais</b>	<b>je sus</b>
F. <i>je saurai</i>	Pr. S. <i>sache</i>		<i>tu sais</i>	Ipf. S. <i>susse</i>
C. <i>je saurais</i>	etc.		<i>il sait</i>	
	Ipf. I. <i>je savais</i>		<i>nous savons</i>	
			<i>vous savez</i>	
			<i>ils savent</i>	
			Ipf. S. <i>sache</i>	

INF.	PR. PART.	PAST PART.	PR. IND.	PRET. IND.
<i>Vouloir</i>	<i>voulant</i>	<i>voulu</i>	<i>je veux</i>	<i>je voulais</i>
F.	Pr. S.		<i>tu veux</i>	Ip. S.
<i>je voudrai</i>	<i>je veuille</i>		<i>il veut</i>	<i>je voulusse</i>
C.	<i>tu veuilles</i>		<i>nous voulons</i>	
<i>je voudrais</i>	<i>il veuille</i>		<i>vous voulez</i>	
	<i>nous voulions</i>		<i>ils veulent</i>	
	<i>vous vouliez</i>		Ip've	
	<i>ils veulent</i>		<i>veuillez</i> 'please'	
	Ip. I.			
	<i>je voulais</i>			
<i>Falloir</i> *	wanting	<i>fallu</i>	<i>il faut</i>	<i>il fallut</i>
F.	Pr. S.			Ip. S.
<i>il faudra</i>	<i>il faille</i>			<i>il fallût</i>
C.	Ip. I.			
<i>il faudrait</i>	<i>il fallait</i>			

## EXERCISE XXVI (a, b).

NOTE 1.—*Vouloir* 'wish' and *falloir* 'be necessary' require the subjunctive after *que*. Also *savoir* requires the subjunctive after *que*, but only when doubt or uncertainty is implied (i.e. frequently when it is used negatively, interrogatively, or with *si*).

NOTE 2.—We say *Il faut qu'il vienne* ('It is necessary that he come') or *Il lui faut venir* ('It is necessary for him to come'), both expressions = 'He must come.' But only *Il faut que mon frère vienne* 'My brother must come.' That is, two constructions are allowed when the subject is a pronoun, but only one when it is a noun.

a. — Conjugate throughout *recevoir*, *devoir*, *pouvoir*, *savoir*, and *vouloir*.

b. — Translate: 1. *Mon oncle reçoit une lettre; j'espère qu'il recevra une lettre; espérez-vous qu'il reçoive une lettre?* 2. *Nous recevons trois dollars; nous recevions dix dollars par semaine; il veut que nous recevions deux dollars par jour; nous reçûmes cet argent hier.* 3. *Je sais que vous devez venir; je ne pense pas que vous deviez venir; ils devraient ('they ought') venir;*

\* Impersonal verb (used only in 3d person sing.).

*je ne pensais pas qu'ils dussent venir.* 4. *Il voit la maison ; il voyait brûler la maison ; il vit s'arrêter quelqu'un ; je voulais qu'il vît ma nièce ; il me verra demain ; il me verrait s'il venait.* 5. *Je peux voir cet arbre-là ; je ne puis (or je ne peux pas) le voir ; je ne savais pas que vous pussiez le voir ; je pourrai vous voir demain ; ils peuvent venir s'ils veulent.* 6. *Je désire qu'il le (it) sache ; je sais qu'il le saura ; je savais qu'il le sait ; savez-vous votre leçon ? sache (sachez) qu'il faut venir.* 7. *Il veut que vous parliez ; il voulait que vous parlassiez ; je ne veux pas qu'il me voie, ils voulurent vous voir ; ils voudront vous parler ; ils voudraient qu'il le vît ; on ne sait pas qu'il le veuille (or veut, if que = 'the fact that') ; veuillez venir demain.* 8. *Il faut que vous parliez, or il vous faut parler ; il faut que mon frère vous parle ; il fallait venir ; il faudrait venir, s'il le désirait ; il a fallu qu'il vînt, or il lui a fallu venir ; il leur fallait venir, or il fallait qu'ils vinssent ; il faut nous en aller, or il faut que nous nous en allions.*

**90. ALPHABETICAL LIST OF OTHER IRREGULAR FORMS.** — Below is given, for reference only, an alphabetical list of such common forms of other (simple) irregular verbs as may cause the learner some difficulty in reading, until he has become familiar with the irregular verbs, as described under § 161, Part II. Forms easily inferred from those given are omitted (thus, especially, it must be remembered that the 1st and 2d pl. of the pres. ind. are usually made from the pres. part., and that irregular verbs in *-ir* never have a stem in *-iss*, like *finir*).

<i>acquerrai</i> Fut.	} of <i>acquérir</i> 'acquire.'	<i>bois</i> Pr. I.	} of <i>boire</i> 'drink.'
<i>acquiers</i> Pr. I.		<i>boive</i> Pr. S.	
<i>acquis</i> Past P. or Pret.		<i>boivent</i> 3 pl. Pr. I or S.	
<i>asseyant</i> Pr. P.	} of <i>asseoir</i> 'seat.'	<i>bous</i> Pr. I. of <i>bouillir</i> 'boil.'	} of <i>boire</i> 'drink.'
<i>asseyerai</i> } Fut.		<i>bu</i> Past P.	
<i>assiérai</i> }		<i>bus</i> Pret.	
<i>asseyant</i> Pr. P.		<i>buvant</i> Pr. P.	
<i>assieds</i> Pr. I.		<i>ceignant</i> Pr. P.	
<i>assis</i> Past P. or Pret.	} of <i>atteindre</i> 'attain.'	<i>ceignis</i> Pret.	} of <i>ceindre</i> 'gird.'
<i>atteignant</i> Pr. P.		<i>ceint</i> Past P.	
<i>atteignis</i> Pret.			
<i>atteint</i> Past P.			

<i>connais</i> Pr. I.	} of <i>connaître</i> 'know.'	<i>écrivait</i> Pr. P.	} of <i>écrire</i> 'write.'
<i>connaissant</i> Pr. P.		<i>écrivis</i> Pret.	
<i>connu</i> Past P.		<i>enverrai</i> Fut. of <i>envoyer</i> 'send.'	} of <i>éteindre</i> 'extinguish.'
<i>connus</i> Pret.		<i>éteignant</i> Pr. P.	
<i>construisant</i> Pr. P.	} of <i>construire</i> 'construe.'	<i>éteignis</i> Pret.	
<i>construisis</i> Pret.		<i>éteint</i> Past P.	
<i>contraignant</i> Pr. P.	} of <i>contraindre</i> 'constrain.'	(or 3 s. Pr. I.)	} of <i>feindre</i> 'feign.'
<i>contraignis</i> Pret.		<i>feignant</i> Pr. P.	
<i>contraint</i> Past P.		<i>feignis</i> Pret.	
(or 3 s. Pr. I.)		<i>feint</i> Past P.	
<i>courais</i> (reg.) Ip. I.	} of <i>courir</i> 'run.'	(or 3 s. Pr. I.)	} of <i>joindre</i> 'join.'
<i>courrai</i> Fut.		<i>hais</i> Pr. I. of <i>haïr</i> 'hate.'	
<i>couru</i> Past P.		<i>joignant</i> Pr. P.	
<i>courus</i> Pret.		<i>joignis</i> Pret.	
<i>cousant</i> Pr. S.	} of <i>coudre</i> 'sew.'	<i>joint</i> Past P.	(or 3 s. Pr. S.)
<i>cousis</i> Pret.		<i>lis</i> Pr. I.	
<i>cousu</i> Past P.	} of <i>craindre</i> 'fear.'	<i>lisant</i> Pr. P.	} of <i>lire</i> 'read.'
<i>craignant</i> Pr. P.		<i>lu</i> Past P.	
<i>craignis</i> Pret.		<i>lui</i> Past P.	} of <i>luire</i> 'shine.'
<i>craint</i> Past P.		<i>luis</i> Pr. I.	
(or 3 s. Pr. I.)	} of <i>croître</i> 'grow.'	<i>luisant</i> Pr. P.	
<i>crois</i> Pr. I. of <i>croire</i> 'believe.'		<i>luisis</i> Pret.	} of <i>mourir</i> 'die.'
<i>crois</i> Pr. I.		<i>mens</i> Pr. I. of <i>mentir</i> 'lie.'	
<i>croissant</i> Pr. P.		<i>meurs</i> Pr. I.	} of <i>mourir</i> 'die.'
<i>croissant</i> Pr. P.	} of <i>croître</i> 'grow.'	<i>meure</i> P. S.	
<i>croissant</i> Pr. P.		<i>meus</i> Pr. I.	} of <i>mouvoir</i> 'move.'
<i>croissant</i> Pr. P.	} of <i>croître</i> 'grow.'	<i>meuve</i> Pr. S.	
<i>croissant</i> Pr. P.		<i>mort</i> Past P. of <i>mourir</i> 'die.'	} of <i>moudre</i> 'grind.'
<i>cueille</i> Pr. I. or S.	} of <i>cueillir</i> 'cull.'	<i>moulant</i> Pr. P.	
<i>cueillerai</i> Fut.		<i>moulu</i> Past P.	} of <i>mourir</i> 'die.'
<i>cuis</i> Pr. I.	} of <i>cuire</i> 'boil.'	<i>moulus</i> Pret.	
<i>cuisant</i> Pr. P.		<i>mourrai</i> Fut.	} of <i>mouvoir</i> 'move.'
<i>cuisis</i> Pret.		<i>mourus</i> Pret.	
<i>cuit</i> Past P. or 3 s. Pr. I.		<i>mu</i> Past P.	} of <i>naître</i> 'be born.'
<i>dors</i> Pr. I. or <i>dormir</i> 'sleep.'	} of verbs in <i>-duire</i> 'lead.'	<i>mus</i> Pret.	
<i>-duis</i> Pr. I.		<i>nais</i> Pr. I.	} of <i>naître</i> 'be born.'
<i>-duisant</i> Pr. P.		<i>naissant</i> Pr. P.	
<i>-duisis</i> Pret.		<i>naquis</i> Pret.	
<i>-duit</i> Past P.		<i>né</i> Past P.	

<i>nui</i> Past P.	} of <i>nuire</i> 'hurt.'	
<i>nuis</i> Pr. I.		
<i>nuisant</i> Pr. P.		
<i>nuisis</i> Pret.	} of <i>paraître</i> 'appear.'	
<i>paraïs</i> Pr. I.		
<i>paraissant</i> Pr. P.		
<i>paru</i> Past P.		
<i>parus</i> Pret.	} of <i>peindre</i> 'paint.'	
<i>peignant</i> Pr. P.		
<i>peignis</i> Pret.		
<i>peint</i> Past P. (or 3 s. Pr. S.)		
<i>plaignant</i> Pr. P.	} of <i>plaindre</i> 'pity,' ( <i>se</i> ) 'complain.'	
<i>plaignis</i> Pret.		
<i>plaint</i> Past P. (or 3 s. Pr. I.)		
<i>plaisant</i> Pr. P.		
<i>plaît</i> 3 s. Pr. I.	} of <i>plaire</i> 'please.'	
<i>pleut</i> 3 s. P. I.		
1. <i>plu</i> Past P.	} of <i>pleuvoir</i> 'rain.'	
2. <i>plu</i> Past P.		
<i>plus</i> Pret.		
<i>plut</i> 3 s. Pret. of <i>pleuvoir</i> 'rain'	} of <i>plaire</i> 'please.'	
or <i>plaire</i> 'please.'		
<i>prenant</i> Pr. P.	} of <i>prendre</i> 'take.'	
<i>prenne</i> Pr. S.		
<i>pris</i> Past P. or Pret.		
<i>repens</i> Pr. I. of <i>repentir</i> 'repent.'	} of <i>rire</i> 'laugh.'	
<i>ri</i> Past P.		
<i>ris</i> Pr. I. or Pret.		

<i>sens</i> Pr. I. of <i>sentir</i> 'feel.'	} of verbs in <i>-soudre</i> 'solve.'	
<i>sers</i> Pr. I. of <i>servir</i> 'serve.'		
<i>sors</i> Pr. I. of <i>sortir</i> 'go out.'		
<i>-solvant</i> Pr. P.	} of <i>suffire</i> 'suffice.'	
<i>-solu</i> Past P.		
<i>-solus</i> Pret.	} of <i>suffire</i> 'suffice.'	
<i>suffi</i> Past P.		
<i>suffis</i> Pret.		
<i>suffisant</i> Pr. P.	} of <i>être</i> 'be.'	
1. <i>suis</i> Pr. I.		
2. <i>suis</i> Pr. I.	} of <i>suivre</i> 'follow.'	
<i>suivant</i> Pr. P.		
<i>suivi</i> Past P.		
<i>suivis</i> Pret.	} of ( <i>se</i> ) <i>taire</i> 'be silent.'	
<i>taisant</i> Pr. P.		
<i>tu</i> (or <i>tú</i> ) Past P.		
<i>tus</i> Pret.	} of <i>valoir</i> 'be worth.'	
<i>vaille</i> Pr. S.		
<i>valant</i> Pr. P.		
<i>valu</i> Past P.		
<i>valus</i> Pret.		
<i>vaudrai</i> Fut.	} of <i>vivre</i> 'live.'	
<i>vaut</i> (3. <i>vaut</i> ) Pr. I.		
<i>vécu</i> Past P.		
<i>vécus</i> Pret.	} of <i>vivre</i> 'live.'	
<i>vêts</i> Pr. I. of <i>vêtir</i> 'clothe.'		
1. <i>vis</i> Pr. I. of <i>voir</i> 'see.'		
2. <i>vis</i> Pret. of <i>voir</i> 'see.'		

NOTE. — Verbs in *-aitre* retain the circumflex only where *i* is followed by *t* (*paraît*, but *paraïs*).

## INDECLINABLES.

As all indeclinables (i.e. adverbs, etc.) are found directly in the dictionaries, little need here be said about them.

## ADVERBS.

**91.** Adverbs are either: *a.* **single**, as *ici* 'here,' *où* 'where,' *en* 'in,' *quand* 'when,' *déjà* 'already,' *bien* 'well,' etc.; or, *b.* **adverb-phrases** like *à présent* 'at present,' *à peu près* 'nearly,' *à peine* 'hardly,' *tout à fait* 'entirely,' *tout à coup* 'suddenly,' etc.

**NOTE.**—Most adjectives can be converted into adverbs by adding the suffix *-ment* to the feminine form, or to the masculine if terminating in a vowel. — **Ex. :**

<i>fort</i> 'strong'	<i>fortement</i> 'strongly'
<i>grand</i> 'great'	<i>grandement</i> 'greatly'
<i>franc</i> 'frank'	<i>franchement</i> 'frankly'
<i>long</i> 'long'	<i>longuement</i> 'lengthily'
<i>facile</i> 'easy'	<i>facilement</i> 'easily'
<i>vrai</i> 'true'	<i>vraiment</i> 'truly'
<i>joli</i> 'pretty'	<i>joliment</i> 'prettily'

**92. COMPARISON.**—Adverbs capable of comparison (especially those derived from adjectives) are compared, like adjectives, by the aid of *plus* or *moins*. Only the following four are in this respect irregular, viz. :—

<i>bien</i> 'well'	<i>mieux</i> 'better'	<i>le mieux</i> 'best'
<i>mal</i> 'bad(ly)'	<i>pis</i> 'worse'	<i>le pis</i> 'worst'
<i>beaucoup</i> 'much'	<i>plus</i> 'more'	<i>le plus</i> 'most'
<i>peu</i> 'little'	<i>moins</i> 'less'	<i>le moins</i> 'least'

## PREPOSITIONS.

**93.** Prepositions, like adverbs, are either: *a.* **single**, as *à* 'to,' *de* 'from,' *par* 'through,' *contre* 'against,' etc.; or,

**b. prepositional phrases** like *à travers* 'across,' *afin de* 'in order to,' *jusqu'à* 'as far as,' etc.

NOTE 1. — The use of prepositions is often different in French and English: cf. *penser à* 'think of'; *acheter à* 'buy from'; *de toutes parts* 'on all sides'; *de bonne heure* 'in good time, early'; *agir en honnête homme* 'act like an honest man'; and so on. Often, also, French requires a preposition where English does not, and *vice versa*: cf. *plaire à* 'please,' *obéir à* 'obey'; *écouter* 'listen to,' *sonner quelqu'un* 'ring for some-one,' etc.

NOTE 2. — As in English, an infinitive is used with or without a preposition. To the English infinitive-sign 'to' correspond in French *à* or *de*. *De* is used especially before a subject-infinitive placed after its verb, and before an object-infinitive when an idea of separation or source is implied. Ex. *Il est imprudent de parler* (but *Parler est imprudent*: subject-infinitive without preposition when heading a clause). *Il s'abstient de parler* 'He abstains from talking.' *Il lui défend de parler* 'He forbids him to speak.'

### CONJUNCTIONS.

**94.** The conjunctions are likewise either: *a. single*, as *et* 'and,' *mais* 'but,' *que* 'that,' *si* 'if,' etc.; or, *b. conjunctive phrases* like *avant que* 'before,' *pendant que* 'while,' *parce que* 'because,' etc.

### INTERJECTIONS.

**95.** Simple interjections are *ah* 'ah,' *ô* or *oh* 'oh,' *hélas* 'alas,' *bon* 'good,' etc. A few interjectional phrases, like *en avant* 'forward,' *à la bonne heure* 'very well,' etc., also occur.

### EXERCISE XXVII.

#### ADVERBS:

*bien* 'well'  
*ailleurs* 'elsewhere'  
*partout* 'everywhere'  
*bas* 'in a low tone'  
*haut* 'aloud'  
*tôt, bientôt* 'soon'  
*quelquefois* 'sometimes'

*toujours* 'always'  
*surtout* 'especially'  
*franchement* 'frankly'  
*doucement* 'gently'  
*longuement* 'lengthily'  
*à présent* 'at present'  
*à peine* 'hardly'

<i>à peu près</i> 'nearly'	<i>sur-le-champ</i> 'on the spot,
<i>à bon marché</i> 'cheaply'	<i>immédiatement</i> 'immediately'
<i>en bas</i> 'below'	<i>tout à coup</i> 'suddenly'
<i>en haut</i> 'above'	<i>tout à fait</i> 'entirely'
<i>du tout</i> 'at all'	<i>tout de suite</i> 'immediately'
<i>peut-être</i> 'perhaps'	<i>aussi, si</i> 'as, so'

## PREPOSITIONS :

<i>après</i> 'after'	<i>à travers</i> 'across, through'
<i>avant</i> 'before' (in time)	<i>d'après</i> 'according to'
<i>devant</i> 'before' (in position)	<i>jusqu'à</i> 'even to'
<i>derrière</i> 'behind'	<i>autour de</i> 'around'
<i>sous</i> 'under'	<i>hors de</i> 'out of'
<i>sur</i> 'upon'	<i>près de</i> 'near'
<i>chez</i> 'at or to the house of, with, among'	

## CONJUNCTIONS

(those spaced requiring the subjunctive):

<i>car</i> 'for'	<i>afin que</i> 'in order that'
<i>comme</i> 'as'	<i>avant que</i> 'before'
<i>lorsque</i> 'when'	<i>bien que</i> 'although'
<i>quoique</i> 'although'	<i>sans que</i> 'without that'
<i>puisque</i> 'since'	<i>pour que</i> 'in order that'

NOTE. — Adverbs usually follow the personal verb-form; but adverbs of specialized time (as *aujourd'hui, hier, demain*) follow a participle. Ex. *Il parle toujours de vous. Il m'a toujours aimé. Il est venu hier.*

1. *Mon frère écrit bien, mais ma sœur écrit beaucoup mieux.*
2. *Il lui a parlé très franchement.*
3. *Nous sommes tout à fait contents à présent.*
4. *Ne voulez-vous pas venir tout de suite chez mon père?*
5. *De quoi cet homme vous a-t-il parlé si longuement?*
6. *Nous parlerons plus doucement si vous le voulez.*
7. *Il me répondit tout à coup.*
8. *À peine y a-t-il cent personnes dans l'église.*
9. *J'ai peu de livres, mais il en a moins.*
10. *Je sais*



*que mon ami lui a donné à peu près deux cents dollars. 11. Le livre était derrière la table. 12. Il viendra avant quatre heures. 13. Il allait devant moi, et elle venait après. 14. Il est hors de la ville. 15. J'irai jusqu'à l'église. 16. J'y étais lorsqu'il arriva. 17. Quoiqu'elle soit bonne elle n'est pas aimée. 18. Je viendrai puisque vous le voulez. 19. Je lui ai écrit afin qu'il (pour qu'il) vienne. 20. Bien que je le (it) sache je ne le dirai point. 21. Il vint avant qu'elle fût venue.*

# INDEX TO PART I.

<i>a</i> , with <i>le</i> .....	15	conjunctions.....	94	indef. article.....	14
inf. sign.....	93.2	consonants: pron... 16		indefinites.....	60
accent-signs.....	1	contraction.....	15	interrogatives.....	52
accent-stress.....	3	<i>de</i> with <i>le</i> .....	15	interrog. constr'n. 77-9	
acute accent.....	1	partitive.....	18-20	interjections.....	95
adjectives.....	26 etc.	inf. sign.....	93.2	irregular verbs. 82 etc.	
agreement (X. 1).		def. article, see <i>le</i> .		<i>le</i> .....	12
place: Ex. X. 2.		demonstratives... 50-1		with <i>de</i> , à.....	15
adverbs.....	91	<i>devoir</i> .....	89	gener. art.....	16
place (Ex. XXVI).		diæresis.....	1	in part. constr....	18
<i>aïeul</i> .....	25	diphthongs.....	7	spec'l use Ex. XI. 2.	
-al = <i>au</i> .....	23-4	<i>dont</i> .....	59	<i>lequel</i> , inter.....	52
<i>aller</i> .....	86	<i>e, é</i> , change in verbs, 69		relat.....	57
alphabet.....	1	elision.....	12. n.	linking.....	11
<i>avoir</i> .....	73	<i>en</i> , pron. part.....	46	<i>mauvais</i> , comp.....	36
<i>aucun</i> .....	82	<i>être</i> , conj.....	73	<i>mille</i> , no art.....	38.1
<i>bon</i> , comp.....	36	with neut. v.....	76	monophthongs.....	6
cardinals.....	37	<i>faire</i> , conj.....	86	nasal vowels.....	9
inflect'n.....	39	feminine:		<i>ne</i> .....	78
for ordinals.....	40	nouns, Ex. V.		(Ex. XVIII. 1.)	
cedilla.....	1	adject's.....	26-33	neg. constr'n.....	78
<i>cent</i> , no art.....	38.1	gender:		nouns.....	21 etc.
circumflex.....	1	nouns: Ex. V, XI.		<i>nul</i> .....	63
<i>ciel</i> , pl.....	25	adject's.....	26-33	numerals.....	37
comparison:		generic article.....	13	<i>œil</i> , pl.....	25
adject.....	35	grave acc't.....	1	<i>oir</i> -verbs.....	87
adv.....	92			<i>on</i> .....	61
compound tenses... 74					
conjugation.....	65-8				

	§		§		§
ordinals .....	37	<i>pouvoir</i> .....	89	<i>savoir</i> .....	89
inff'n .....	39	prepositions .....	97	subjunctive:	
part. article .....	18-9	present, Ex. XIII. 1.		Ex. XIX, XXI-XXV.	
preposition .....	20	principal parts .....	83	syllabication .....	2
past participle, 75, 80.3		pron. particles .....	46	tout .....	60, 64
pers. pronouns....	41-5	quantity .....	4	<i>venir</i> .....	86
<i>personne</i> .....	62	<i>qui</i> : interr.....	52	verbs .....	65
<i>petit</i> , comp.....	36	relat. ....	56	<i>vouloir</i> .....	89
plural:		<i>quoi</i> : interr.....	52-4	vowels: pronunc'n,	
nouns.....	21-5	relat. ....	56	4 etc.	
adject's .....	34	reflexives.....	47		
possessives .....	48-9	reflexive verbs... 80-1		<i>y</i> , pron. part. ....	46

**PART II.**

**METHODICAL PRESENTATION OF FRENCH**  
**GRAMMAR**

**WITH**

**HISTORICAL INTRODUCTIONS, VERSIFICATION, AND**  
**SKETCH OF THE RELATION OF FRENCH AND**  
**ANGLO-FRENCH WORDS**

**(CALCULATED FOR TWO TERMS, OR LESS)**



## THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.

---

FRENCH, Italian, Spanish, Portuguese, Rhæto - Romanic (spoken in southern Switzerland), and Rumanian (or Wallachian, spoken in northern Turkey) constitute a group of languages that have sprung from popular Latin, and which are therefore called **Romance** or **Romanic** (i.e. 'Roman'), or *Neo-Latin* ('New-Latin').

The development of the French language from Latin under the accessory influence of various other tongues may be briefly sketched as follows.

From the time that Gaul began to be conquered by the Romans during the last two centuries before our era, Roman soldiers and colonists brought vulgar Latin (*lingua romana rustica*), and government officials literary Latin (*sermo urbanus*), into the subdued country. Aided in its spread by the superior culture of its speakers and the iron system of Roman colonization, perhaps also by the resemblance between the old Celtic and the Latin, the latter tongue in a few centuries almost wholly obliterated the native idioms of the conquered barbarians, the *Celtic* in middle or northern Gaul, and the *Basque*, which seems to have been the language of southern Gaul (Aquitania); and these idioms have left but slight traces in French.

The inroads and conquests of Germanic tribes — Franks, Goths, Burgundians, — in the 5th century, brought the **Teutonic** form of speech into Gaul and in contact with the

Romanic. The Teutonic dialects (called by a common name *lingua theodisca*) succeeded in holding their own for a long time alongside of the Romanic (*lingua romana*), until, finally, they were merged into it, bequeathing it, however, a considerable number of Germanic words romanized, many of which have survived in modern French.

The struggle between literary and vulgar Latin was also gradually, with the decline of Rome and her influence in Gaul, decided in favor of the latter, which meanwhile was suffering more or less important dialectical changes.

This Gallo-Romanic idiom early branched into two leading, though nowise homogeneous, families of dialects: the southern, called the **langue d'oc** (as expressing 'yes' by *oc*<sup>1</sup>) or **Provençal** (as spoken in the Roman 'provincia,' i.e. Provence), and the northern, called the **langue d'oïl** (as expressing 'yes' by *oïl*<sup>2</sup> = French *oui*), or now usually **Old French**.

The southern idiom gave rise to an early literature, which shone with extraordinary splendor during the 11th and 12th centuries — the age of the troubadours, — and then perished with the political independence of southern France.

The northern idiom consisted of several sub-dialects, of which that one spoken in the province of Ile-de-France, favored by political circumstances and the fostering influence of the University of Paris or the Sorbonne, gradually took precedence of all the others, until, in the 14th century, it became the national language of united France, or **Modern French**. And by a series of later modifications, especially lexical and syntactical, the language of the 14th century has developed into the French of the present day.

<sup>1</sup> *Oc* from Lat. *hoc*.

<sup>2</sup> *Oïl* of disputed origin, probably for *o* (Lat. *hoc*) + *il*, the personal pronoun being repeated in answers (*o je, o il*, etc.), and *il* gradually supplanting the others. [Cf. Kuhns Zeitschr. III. 423, 1877.]

To the above sketch should be added that French, like English, has borrowed a considerable part of its present vocabulary from outside languages, especially from Latin, Greek, Italian, Spanish, and English. Indeed, the influx of **Classical Latin** words, ever since the 11th century, but especially after the time of the Renaissance, has been so large that they actually vie in number with the words derived from popular Latin. From these, however, they are, for the most part, clearly distinguished by not adhering to the laws of phonetic change, as briefly sketched under 1 (next page).

There will follow hereafter, under appropriate heads, a general survey of those sweeping changes of form, inflection, and syntax which the French language has suffered during its long course of development from Latin — changes consisting chiefly in the mutation of words and the variation of sounds, in an almost absolute suppression of case-forms, synthetical forms of comparison, and passive-forms, in the evolution of new words and verb-forms, and in the adoption of a rigid system of syntactical arrangement.



## I.

## ELEMENTARY SOUNDS AND ACCENTS.

[1. HISTORY.—In their gradual transition to modern French, Latin words have suffered many modifications, as briefly outlined below.

I. VOWELS.—A. **The accent-vowel** of Latin words has (with few exceptions) **survived as such** in French, though often modified in form: e.g. L. *partem* (usually the Lat. accusative has given the French noun-form, cf. 47): F. *part*; *vincere*: *vaincre*; *bonitatem*: *bonité*. It received a different form according as it was a. **free** (*libre*, ending a syllable) or b. **tied** (*entravée*, followed by two consonants, one belonging to it). Thus:

a. **When free**, *i*, *ū*, and also *ō* + nasal, were, as a rule, unaltered in writing: e.g. *amī-cus*: *ami*; *lū-na*: *lu-ne*; *bō-na*: *bonne*. Other vowels changed (often into diphthongs, now prevailing uttered as a monophthong). This change was either (1) direct, or (2) caused by neighboring sounds.—

(1) Direct change:

LAT. FR.

*ā* = *é*, *è*, *e*; (exceptionally *a*, before *l*); e.g. L. *sanitā-tem*: F. *santé*; *pā-tem*: *père*; *amā-re*: *aimer*; *mā-lum*: *mal*.

*ē, ī* = *oi* (or, by later change, *ai*): e.g. *crē-dit*: *croit*; *vī-det*: *voit*; *habē-bat*: old *avait*, now *avait* (so all imperfects, by analogy).

*ē* = *ie*: e.g. *pē-dem*: *piéd*.

*ō, ū* = *ou* (also written, to denote origin or otherwise, *œu*, *ueu*, *œ*, *uo*); e.g. *flōrem*: *fleur*; *nō-vem*: *neuf*; *gū-lum*: *gueule*; *bō-vem*: *bœuf*.

*au*; *eu* = *o*; *ieu*; e.g. *aurum*: *or*; *deum*: *dieu*.

(2) Palatal, labial, or nasal influence:—**Palatals** (*c*, *g*, *j*; or *i*, *e* + vowel) changed a preceding or following vowel, or both, into a diphthong containing the parasitic palatal *i* [viz. *ā* + pal. = *ai*; *ē*, *ī* + pal. with *l* or *n* = *ei*; *ō*, *ū* + pal. = *oi*; *ō* + pal. = *ui*; pal. + *a* = *ié*]; or directly to *i* [viz. *ē* + pal. = *i*; pal. + *ē*, *ī* = *i*]: e.g. *pācem*: *paix*; *hābeo*: *ai*; *solic(u)lum* (of *sol*): *soleil*; *vōcem*: *voix*; *nōceat*: *nuise*; *pācare*: *payer* (= *pai-ier*); *dēcem*: *dix*; *cēra*: *cire*.—**The labial u** sometimes gave a labial shading to a preceding vowel: e.g. *clavum*: *clou*; *habunt* (popular form): *ont*.—**Nasals**: before nasals *ā* = *ai*; *ē*, *ī* = *ei* (*oi*); *ū* = *o*: e.g. *amas*: *aimes*; *lāna*: *laine*; *sīnum*: *sein*; *sūmus*: *sommes*. They also produced nasal vowels.

b. **When tied**, the accent-vowel was usually **unchanged**. Exceptions:

$\bar{i} = e$  (*müt-tit : met*);  $\bar{o}, \bar{u} = ou$  (*cor-tem : cour*; *dü-b'tare : douter*);  $\bar{e}, \bar{i} + \text{palatal} = oi$  (*tec-tum : toit*), or *ei*, as when free (*fingam : feigne*);  $\bar{u} + \text{pal.} = ui$  (*noc-tem : nuit*). Here belongs also the frequent change of *i* after a vowel to *u*: e.g. *al-ter : au-tre*; *cabal-los : chevaux*; *fol-lem : fou*.

**B. Accentless vowels** usually survived in the initial syllable or when tied, being then treated, on the whole, like accent-vowels, except for a tendency, in the former case, of retaining *a* (*ha-bere : avoir*), and of changing especially  $\bar{e}, \bar{i}, \bar{o}, \bar{u}$  into *e* 'mute,' cf. 14 (*lā-vare : lever*; *mī-nare : mener*). Otherwise they were usually — after the tone-syllable always — lost or, in case of *a*, and of other vowels to avoid harsh combinations, dimmed to *e* 'mute': e.g. *partem : part*; *lana : laine*; *vincere : vaincre*.

II. CONSONANTS were often lost or changed. Thus:

**A. Loss:** — a. *Initial sc(h)-, st-, sp-,* early changed to *esc-, est-, esp-,* were farther often reduced to *éc-, ét-, ép-* (e.g. *schola*, older *escole*, now *école*; *stabat : était*). So also Latin *ex-* (*es-*) was often reduced to *é* (*exclusam : éclose*). — b. *Medials* were often lost after vowel (*patrem : père*). The loss of *s* was then usually indicated by a circumflex (*costam : côte*). — *Finals* were less often lost in writing than utterance (22); *m* disappeared in both.

**B. Change.** Here may be noted the frequent change of *t* to *d* (or *s*); of *p, b* to *b* or *v*; of *c* (+ Lat. *a*) to *ch*; of *i, e, g,* or *c* to *j* (*g*); of *s* to *z*; and of *n* + palatal to *gn* — the last four sounds peculiar to French (26). — After *s, n, m, r, l* a mute was usually inserted before *r, l* (*mol're : moudre*).

III. CLASSICAL LATIN WORDS borrowed into French received, somewhat arbitrarily, French endings, and also, irrelative of the Latin accentuation, final accent; but they yielded only slowly or in part to the transforming tendencies of French. Hence, contrary to popular words, they are more faithful to the form than to the accent of the Latin word: cf. L. *fragilem, mobilem*: F. (bort.) *fragile, mobile*; (pop.) *frêle* (older *fraile*), *meuble*.]

**2. NOTATION OF SOUNDS.** — The elementary sounds of the French language are denoted by the **letters** constituting its alphabet, and by the use of various **subsidiary signs or devices**. These letters and signs are described below, before the subject of pronunciation proper.

**3. ALPHABET.** — The French alphabet contains exactly the same written letters as the English.

NOTE 1. — The older and more common names of the French letters are in French denoted as follows: *a, be, ce, de, e, effe, gé, ache* (*h*), *i, ji, ka, elle, emme, enne, o, pé, ku, erre, esse, té, u, vé, double vé, ics, i grec, zède*.

A more modern practice, especially in spelling out words, is to pronounce *e* as *e* 'mute' (cf. 14), the other vowels as above, and each consonant with an *e* 'mute' added to its proper sound in any given case [*be*, *ke* or *ce*, *de*, *fe*, *ghe* or *je* (23), *he*, etc.].

NOTE 2. — *k* and *w* occur only in foreign words; and *y* is rarely a real vowel, except in words borrowed from the Greek.

#### 4. SUBSIDIARY SIGNS OR DEVICES. — These are :

[5.] **Accent-marks.** — French has three accent-marks, none of them, however, serving to denote the accent-stress of the word (about which cf. 10). Their rather mixed functions are as follows :

a. The **acute** (´) and the **grave** (`) are almost entirely phonetic signs, used, the former to denote a close sound, as in *épée* \* (cf. 14: *é*), and the latter an open, as in *mère* (14).

NOTE. — In a few cases the grave accent serves to distinguish homonyms: e.g. *à* 'to': *a* 'has'; *où* 'where': *ou* 'or'; *là* 'there,' *la* 'the'; *dès* 'since': *des* 'of the, some.'

b. The **circumflex** (^) most often denotes some etymological contraction, or loss of a letter (especially *s*), and is liable to occur over any vowel. The vowel on which it rests is usually long. — Ex. *âge* (formerly *aage*), *île* 'isle'; *côte* 'coast'; *brûler* (older *brusler*) 'burn.'

NOTE. — Even the circumflex sometimes serves to distinguish homonyms: e.g. *dû* 'due': *du* 'of the, some'; *croîs* 'grow(est)': *crois* 'believe(st)'; *crû* 'grown': *cru* 'believed.'

[6.] **Diæresis.** — Two dots (¨), called diæresis, 'separation-mark,' is used over *e*, *i*, *u* to denote that these vowels are in pronunciation held apart from a preceding vowel. — Ex. *Noël* (= *no-ël*), *haïr* (= *ha-îr*), *aiguë* (= *aigu-e*).

[7.] **Cedilla** ("small *z*," formerly *z*, now *ç*) is a sign placed under *c*, when that letter has before *a*, *o*, *u* the sound of *s*. — Ex. *ça* (formerly written *cza*).

---

\* Silent letters will in this chapter be printed with roman type.

[8.] By a **combination of letters**, various simple sounds (monophthongs, nasal vowels, etc.) are also denoted. These sounds and their signs are all described hereafter.

**9. SYLLABICATION.** — A **single** medial consonant (*x* excepted) or consonant digraph (*ch*, *ph*, *th*, nasal *gn*) belongs to the following vowel: e.g. *fe-ra*, *é-pe-lé*, *a-che-té*, *al-pha-bet*; but *ex-il*. — Of two or more medial consonants only the **last** or, if that be a liquid (*r*, *l*) preceded by one that is not a liquid, the **last two**, belong to the following vowel: e.g. *trom-per*, *af-fec-té*, *symp-tôme*, *par-ler*, *al-lez*; *a-près*, *sa-bre*, *trem-ble-ment*.

NOTE 1. — In pronunciation, silent *h* is left out of account: e.g. *bo-nheur* (written *bon-heur*).

NOTE 2. — Compound words are for the most part divided according to their elements: e.g. *in-spirer*.

#### ACCENT AND QUANTITY.

**10. ACCENT-STRESS.** — In French a slight prominence (accent) is given to the **last sonorous vowel** of a single word: e.g. *parlé*, *salade*, *opinion*, *probabilité*.

This prominence, consisting in a raised pitch or increased emphasis, or in both, is too weak to dim, like the strong English accent, surrounding syllables. Hence all syllables of a French word, save those in *e* 'mute,' are uttered with equal distinctness.

NOTE 1. — Authorities are not all agreed as to the nature of the French accent; and occasional deviations from the rule, as stated above, may be heard.

NOTE 2. — *Sentence-accent*. Usually the last word of each statement receives alone the accent, when the speaker does not intentionally emphasize, instead, some other word. — Ex. *J'ai acheté la salade* 'I have bought the salad'; *L'honneur le demande* 'Honor demands it.'

**11. QUANTITY.** — The distinction between **long** and **short** vowels is in French not very marked, and, in part, uncertain

or arbitrary, the usage of every-day speech often deviating from theoretical laws. As a general rule, the distinction of quantity is more marked in accented than in unaccented syllables, and the vowel **long** chiefly when it has the circumflex (e.g. *âme*), and when it is followed by *e* 'mute' (*vue*), or separated from it by some protractable sonant consonant (*page*, *base*, *père*, *table*).

While the learner must here rely mainly on oral instruction, a few details are given below.

[12.] The vowel is usually long :

a. When it has the circumflex : e.g. *âme*, *fête*, *évêque*, *mât*. (Rarely it is short, as in *aumône*, *hôtel*.)

b. Directly before *e* 'mute' : e.g. *lue*, *jolie*, *joue*.


c. When separated from a following vowel, especially *e* 'mute,' by a sonant *g*, *s*, or *z* (e.g. *page*, *tige*, *base*, *église*, *gaze*), or by *r* or *rr* (e.g. *père*, *guerre*), or by two dissimilar consonants of which the first is a nasal or the second *r*, *l* (e.g. *jambe*, *crainte*; *sabre*, *table*, *cadavre*).

d. In final syllables before (silent) *s*, *x*, *z*, or before an audible *r* : e.g. *exprès*, *as*, *assez*, *prix*, *augur*, *fier* 'proud' (but *fi-ër* 'rely'), *air*, *perd*.

[13.] In connected discourse the quantity suffers various changes, according to the emphasis employed by the speaker.

## PRONUNCIATION.

**14. SIMPLE VOWELS** (not combined with other vowels). — Their pronunciation is as described below.

 In the pronunciation of vowels both *quantity* (about which cf. 11) and *quality* are to be considered. In describing the quality below, the quantity is not left out of sight. The relation between the two is not always fixed, and nothing but a long practice can teach the student to observe that relation. — In comparing English and French vowel-sounds, it must be borne in mind that the French never have the 'vanish,' which often accompanies the English when long.

**a** (*â*, *à*) has two slightly different sounds : 1. nearly that of *a* in English 'father' (not quite so deep); 2. more open, approaching that of *a* in 'at,' *â* in Webster's *ask* representing

the sound quite well. The former occurs when *a* is long, except before two consonants. — Ex. (1) *âme, base, bât, âge*; — (2) *carnaval, patte, table, tâcher, là*.

*e* has a different value according as it ends a syllable (as in *le, fe-ra*) or not (*les, fer-ma*). Thus (cf. 9):

1. *-e* CLOSING A SYLLABLE (or constituting one) is somewhat inconsistently called “*e* mute” (French “*e muet*”). As a general rule (cf. note 1, 2) it is silent, or practically so, only at the end of words of two or more syllables: e.g. *cape, âme, salade, tasse*; and when it constitutes a syllable by itself: *aboi-e-ment*. Otherwise it approaches in sound *e* in ‘err,’ being uttered rapidly and with a closer, rounded aperture of the lips (= Germ. *ö*): e.g. *le, me, se, fe-ra, pe-sant, â-pre-té*.

NOTE 1. — At the end of polysyllabics *-e* is not entirely silent when preceded by two consonant-sounds belonging to the same syllable (i.e. by *br, bl*, etc.: cf. 9). It has then a slight tinge of the *e*-sound in *le*: e.g. *sa-bre, sa-ble, ora-cle, ca-dre*. By emphasis this sound is heard also in other cases.

NOTE 2. — Within a word, except in the initial syllables, *-e* is often slipped over or dimmed, unless a harsh sound should be the result: e.g. *re-te-nir, de-ve-nir, re-ve-nu*; but *â-pre-té*.

NOTE 3. — In connected discourse, euphony and emphasis may cause some deviation from above rules. Thus, especially, *e* is suppressed or slighted in one or more of successive monosyllables in *e* (e.g. *je ne le puis. c'est ce que je dis*). Final *e* of polysyllabics in *-ble*, etc., is entirely silent before a vowel (e.g. *oracle ancien*). On the treatment of *e* mute in verse, cf. 423.

2. *e*-NOT CLOSING A SYLLABLE sounds like *e* in ‘*ère*’ (French *è*) before an audible consonant, and also before silent *s* or *t*; but nearly like *e* in ‘they’ (Fr. *é*) before silent consonants, except *s* and *t*. — Ex. (= *è*) *bref, fer-ma, des-pote, ver-re*; *es, les, est, promets*; — (= *é*) *pied, parler, nez, clef*.

NOTE 1. — *Et* ‘and’ is pronounced *é*.

NOTE 2. — Final *-es* of polysyllabics, and *-ent* of 3d plural of verbs are treated as if simply *-e* ‘mute.’ E.g. *âmes, tables, donnent, parlent*. (Cf., however, 28.)

NOTE 3. — Before a double consonant (usually pronounced as simple) *e* often sounds like *é*. Cf. *essayer* = *é-sayer*; but *dresser* = *drè-ser*; *ennemi* = *è-ne-mi*.

NOTE 4. — Followed by a double nasal, *e* sounds like French short *a* in *femme* (pron. *fām*) 'woman,' *nenni* 'no indeed,' *hennir* 'neigh,' *solennel* 'solemn,' and in ail adverbs terminating in *-emment* (e.g. *violemment*, etc.).

NOTE 5. — Followed by *ss*, *e* sounds like *e* 'mute' in *dessous* (= *de-sou*) 'under,' *dessus* 'above,' and in most words beginning with *ress-* (*ressembler*, etc.). In these words the first *s* is only an inorganic insertion serving to denote that the following *s* has a hissing sound (*dessous* for *de sous* and so on).

NOTE 6. — Concerning the orthographic use of *e* to make *g* a spirant, cf. 23 *g*.

*é* sounds almost like *e* in 'they' (= *e* in Germ. *mehr*), but it is usually short and sharp, except before *e* mute. — Ex. (long) *donnée*, *créés*; — (short and sharp) *donné*, *créer*, *dé*, *vérité*, *celebrité*.

*è*, *ê* when long have almost the sound of *e* in 'ere' or of *ei* in 'heir' (= *ä* in Germ. *mähre*), and when short of *e* in 'let.' — Ex. (long) *mère*, *thèse*, *trapèze*, *fête*, *être*; — (short) *achète*, *brève*, *procède*.

*i* (*î*) *y* have the sound of *i* in 'police,' though long or short according to quality. — Ex. (long) *mise*, *île*, *abîme*, *hydre*, *amie*; — (short) *cri*, *fil*, *limite*; *style*, *type*, *ami*.

*o*, (*ô*) has a rather *closer* sound than *o* 'no,' chiefly when long; or a more *open*, approaching that of *o* in 'not' (= *o* in Germ. *soll*), chiefly when short. — Ex. (close) *rose*, *trône*, *notre*, *gros*; — (open) *sol*, *sotte*, *porter*.

*u* (*û*): The sound of this vowel (= Germ. *ü*) has no equivalent in English. It is a changed Latin *u*-sound in the direction of *i*, and is produced by trying to utter *u* as in 'true' with the tongue in the *ee*-position, as in 'tree.' — Ex. (long) *rue*, *ruse*, *flûte*, *pur*; — (short) *butte*, *minute*, *bu*.

About the use of *u* as an orthographical sign, cf. 23, under *g*.

**15. MONOPHTHONGS.**—A simple vowel-sound is in French often written with two, or even three, vowel-signs (relics of once independent vowels). Such monophthongs — never beginning with *i*, *u* or *y* — are those described below.

**ai** (*ai*), **ei** (*ei*), are pronounced like *è*, long or short; but final *-ai* in verbs like *é*. — Ex. (long) *baise*, *maître*, *ferais*, *aie*, *vraie*; *seigle*, *reître*, *reine*; — (short) *aimer*, *faites*, *fait*, *vrai*, *peiner*; — (= *é*) *ferai*, *ai*, *allai* (all verb-forms).

NOTE 1. — In derivative forms of *faire* ‘do,’ the radical vowel (*ai*) of this verb, if followed by a fully pronounced syllable, is pronounced (as it was once written) like *e* ‘mute.’ Ex. *faisait* (= *fe-sait*), *bienfaisance*, etc.

**ay**, **ey** are monophthongs only when not followed by a vowel, a case which rarely occurs except in a few proper names and foreign words. They then sound like *ai*, *ei*. — Ex. *Corday*, *Ney*.

NOTE. — In *pays* ‘country,’ and its derivatives *paysan* (f. *paysanne*) ‘peasant,’ *paysage* ‘landscape,’ *ay* is pronounced as if *ai-i*.

**au**, **eau** have the sound of the closer French *o*; exceptionally of open *o* (chiefly before *l*, *r*, or *re*). — Ex. (long) *pause*, *pauvre*, *maux*, *faut*; *eau*, *beau*, *beaucoup*; — (open) *Paul*, *restaure*, *centaure*.

**ou** (*eu*), **œu** usually have when long a closer sound than *e* in ‘err’ (= Germ. *ö*); but when short the open sound of *e* in ‘err.’ — Ex. (close and usually long) *creuse*, *jeudi*, *deux*, *veux*, *monsieur*; *vœux*, *bœufs*; — (open and usually short) *seul*, *jeune* (but *jeûne* with close *eu*, on account of the lengthening circumflex), *peuple*, *veulent*, *leur*, *fleur*, *bœuf*.

NOTE. — In forms of *avoir* ‘have,’ *eu* sounds like French *u*. — Ex. *eu* ‘had,’ *j’eus* ‘I had,’ etc.

**ou** (*ou*, *ou*) has the sound of *oo* in ‘fool,’ though long or short. — Ex. (long) *épouse*, *voûte*, *roue*, *loue*; — (slightly shorter) *rouler*, *doute*, *ou*, *louer*.

**œ**, **ue** sound before *il*(*l*) like *eu*. — Ex. *œil* (= *eu’y*), *cueille* (= *keu’y*).



**16. DIPHTHONGS AND DISSYLLABICS.**—Combined vowels not coalescing into one sound form either a **diphthong**, when the first vowel-sound (*i, o, u, ou*) glides over into the second before it is fully formed: e.g. *fier* = *f<sup>h</sup>er* ‘proud,’ *nuit* = *n<sup>u</sup>i* ‘night’; or a **dissyllabic**, when it is barely distinct enough to be counted as forming a syllable by itself: e.g. *fier* = *f<sup>h</sup>-é* ‘rely’; *nuit* = *n<sup>u</sup>-i* ‘hurts’; *construit*.

NOTE.—Neither theory nor usage has definitely settled the limits between diphthongs and dissyllabics. The tendency is for the former to encroach upon the latter. It will be useful to remember, as covering a majority of cases, that *i* and *u* terminating a French verb-root or root-derivative, or being preceded by a compound consonant, rarely form a diphthong with a following vowel (cf. examples above).

[17.] The pronunciation of diphthongs and dissyllabics offers no difficulty, each constituent simple vowel or monophthong having its own sound (more or less fully enounced), except in the following cases:—

*ao* = *a* in *faon* ‘fawn,’ *paon* ‘peacock’; and = *o* in *aoriste*, *Saône*, *taon* (also *taon*) ‘gadfly.’

*aoû* = *ou* in *août* ‘August (the month).’

*oé* = French *oi* (below) in *poêle* ‘stove’ and *poêle* ‘frying-pan.’

*oi* (*oi*). This diphthong has a sound that may be represented in French by *œ̃*, *œ̃* (nearly like *wa-* in English ‘waft’).  
— Ex. (= *œ̃*) *poivre*, *joie*, *voir*; — (*œ̃*) *voiture*, *tournoi*, *roi*.

NOTE 1.—Concerning *oi* when nasalized by a following *gn*, cf. 23, under *gn*.

NOTE 2.—In many forms, an older *oi* was in the last century altered to *ai* (e.g. *foible*: *faible*; *lisoit*: *lisait*; *connoître*: *connaître*). Where in such cases classical texts retain *oi*, it is now customary to pronounce it as *ai*.—For *roide* (or *raide*) ‘stiff, rigid’ and its derivatives the older spelling with the modern pronunciation is the prevailing, though not exclusive, practice.

*u* + vowel or vowel combination (i.e. *ua*, *ue*, *ui*, etc.):

a. *Not preceded by g or q, u* forms with a following vowel (or vowel-combination) a diphthong or a dissyllabic (16), being pronounced in the former case almost like French *ou*, but in the latter more like French *u*. — Ex. (diphthong) *suave* = *s<sup>u</sup>ave*, *Suède*, *suite*, *huile*, *lui*. — (dissyllabic) *lu-a*, *tu-ez*, *lu-eur*.

b. *Preceded by g or q, u* in common French words of old stock (cf. note), serves as a mere graphic sign to denote that *g* and *q* sound like hard *g* (in 'go') and *k* respectively. — Ex. *fatigua* (= *fatiga*), *guerre* (= *gêr*: *g* hard as in 'go'), *fatiguer*, *anguille* (= *âgîy*: *g* hard), *vigueur*; *quatre* (= *katr<sup>e</sup>*), *que*, *quel*, *qui*, *liquide*, *vainqueur*.

NOTE. — In several, mostly modern, words borrowed from the Latin, *u* forms a diphthong with the following vowel, as it does also in English. This occurs for *gu-* chiefly in *lingual* (= *lin-g<sup>u</sup>al*), *linguiste*, *aiguille*, *aiguiser*; *arguer* (*argu-ê*: *ue* dissyllabic); and for *qu-* in about 160 words: e.g. most words containing *quad-* (*quadrature*, *quadrupède*, *quadruple*, etc.); *quintuple*; *équateur*, *équestre*; *requiem*, etc.

18. *y* between vowels (*aye*, *oya*, etc.) is equivalent to French *i-y*, of which *i* combines with its preceding vowel. — Ex. *payer* (= *pai-yer*), *royal* (= *roi-yal*), *fuyard* (= *fui-yard*).

NOTE. — After *a*, *y* is a mere consonant in proper names (*Bayard*, *La Fayette*, etc.), and in a few other words (*bayer*, etc.). — According to Littré, there is a tendency to treat *y* as a mere consonant after any vowel, except *a* (e.g. *royal* = *ro-yal*, *fuyard* = *fu-yard*, etc.).

19. **NASAL VOWELS.** — A single vowel or monophthong followed in the same syllable by one nasal (*n*, *m*) is **nasalized** (i.e. uttered with the mouth-organs in their vowel-position, but with the air expelled at once through the mouth and nose), while *n*, *m*, lose their independent utterance. — Besides this nasalization, *e*, *i* (*y*), *u* — unless finals of a monophthong (15) — sound as if Fr. *a*, *ai*, *eu* respectively.

The French nasal vowels have no English equivalents. Representing their nasality (nearest like *n* in Engl. 'thank') by the sign ~, we get the following French equivalents:

<i>an, am</i> }	= $\tilde{a}$ (1. a).	Ex. { <i>an, ruban, ambre</i>
<i>en, em</i> }		<i>en, enfant, tempête</i>
<i>in, im</i> }		{ <i>fin, mince, simple</i>
<i>yn, ym</i> }	= $\tilde{a}i$ .	" { <i>syntaxe, nymphe</i>
<i>ain, uim</i> }		<i>main, poulain, faim</i>
<i>ein, oim</i> }		<i>frein, peindre, Reims</i>
<i>on, om</i>	= $\tilde{o}$ (close o).	" <i>on, mouton, ombre</i>
<i>un, um</i> }	= $\tilde{eu}$ (close eu).	" <i>un, parfum, humble</i>
<i>oun,</i>		<i>jeun</i>
<i>i-en (y-an)</i> }	= $i-\tilde{a}$ .	" <i>étudiant, effrayant</i>
<i>i-en (cf. note)</i> }		" <i>client, orient, audience</i>
<i>a-in</i>	= $o-\tilde{a}i$ .	" <i>coin, soins, poindre</i>

etc.

NOTE 1. — In *-ien (-yen)* final or belonging to a verb-form, and in *é-en* final, *-en* sounds like *-in* (i.e. =  $\tilde{a}i$ ). — Ex. *bien* (=  $bi-\tilde{a}i$ ), *mien*, *vient* (verb-form); *moyen* (=  $moi-y\tilde{a}i$ ); — *européen* (=  $europé-\tilde{a}i$ ).

NOTE 2. — Minor irregularities are as follows: —

*am-n, om-n* are pronounced as  $\tilde{a}-n$ ,  $\tilde{o}-n$  (without nasalization) in *damner* 'damn,' *automne* 'autumn,' and their derivatives.

*em-m, en-n* are pronounced as  $\tilde{a}-m$ ,  $\tilde{a}-n$  when *em-, en-* represent the prefix *en* (Lat. *in*), i.e. nearly always in the beginning of a word (e.g. *em-mener*, *en-ruyer*, etc.); but like  $\tilde{a}-m$ ,  $\tilde{a}-n$  (no nasalization of the vowel) in *femme* (=  $f\tilde{a}m$ ), etc., see under 14:  $\tilde{o}$  2, note 4.

*ent* of the 3d person plural of verbs, cf. 14:  $\tilde{o}$  2, note 2.

*in-* beginning a word is not nasalized before a vowel-sound, though treated as a syllable by itself (9, note 2). — Ex. *inactif, inhumain*.

*on* is reduced to *o*, or more commonly *e*, in *monsieur* (usually =  $me-cieu$ ) 'sir,' and it is not nasalized in *bonheur* 'happiness' (cf. 9, note 1).

About nasals in proper names, etc., see 24-5.


## CONSONANTS.

20. GENERAL REMARK. — The French consonants are usually pronounced like the English. But there are various exceptions, however, as described below under 23. — The following preparatory remarks may be made here: —

[21.] *Initial or medial consonants.* — *ç* is the only consonant-sign peculiar to French; *g, j, h, ch*, and medial *gn, ill, ti* represent, often or always, other sounds than in English.

[22.] *Final consonants* are for the most part silent, except when in connected discourse they are sounded before a following initial vowel (for particulars cf. 23). Only *c, f, l, q, and r* (except in *-er, -ier* of polysyllabics) are regularly pronounced even in disconnected words.

**23. SPECIAL RULES** for the pronunciation of consonants are given below.

 Compound final consonants are below given under the head of their *last* consonant. — Double consonants are sounded as one, unless a special exception is made (cf. *cc, gg*, below).

*b* = English *b*. As final it is heard in *radoub, rumb*.

*c* has the sound of *k*, except before *e, i, y*, where it is pronounced as *s*. Changed to *ç* (cf. 6), it has the sound of *s* even before *a, o, u*. — Ex. *oas, acte, lac, accabler*; — *ce, céder, ciel*; — *ça, garçon*.

*c* has the sound of *g* in *second* (= *se-gô*) and its derivatives.

*-c* final is usually heard. It is silent after a nasal (*blanc*, etc.); after *r* in some words (*clerc, marc, porc*); and in *estomac* 'stomach,' *tubac* 'tobacco,' *croc* 'hook,' *coutchouc* 'india-rubber,' and a few other less common words. — In *donc* 'then,' it may be heard, especially when that word heads a sentence.

*cc* before *e, i, y* = *c-c*. — Ex. *accès* (= *ak-sè*).

*ch* sounds 1. like *ch* (= *sh*) in 'machine'; or 2. like *ch* (= *k*) in 'chaos.' — The latter sound, by far the less common, is heard, on the whole (except, usually, before *i*), in words whose English cognates have that sound (cf. *chaos* 'chaos,' *Christ* 'Christ,' etc.). — Ex. (= *sh*) *charme, chasse, chose, chaise, chuchoter, choux, chez, chien*; *chimie* ('chemistry'), *monarchie, architecte*; — (= *k*) *chaos, écho, orchestre*; *Christ, chrétien* ('Christian'), *technologie*.

Before a consonant, *ch* is always = *k*. Before a vowel, it has the *sh*-sound in words of Latin or Germanic origin, and also, by late change, in several words of Greek origin; while in most words of Greek origin it has the *k*-sound.

NOTE. — In *archange* 'arch-angel,' *ch* is = *k*; in *almanach* it is mute; and in *drachme* it is like *g*.

*d* = Engl. *d*. As final it is heard in *sud* 'south.'

*f* = Engl. *f*. As final it is heard, except only in *clef* 'key,' and in *neuf* 'nine,' as adjective before a word beginning with a consonant (e.g. *neuf jours* 'nine days').

NOTE. — Irregularly, *f* of *bœuf* 'ox,' *œuf* 'egg,' *nerf* (or *nerf*) 'nerve,' becomes silent when the plural-sign is added (*bœufs*, *œufs*, *nerfs*). *F* is also silent in *chef-d'œuvre*, and in *nerf de bœuf*.

*g* has the hard sound of *g* in English 'go,' except before *e* (*eu*), *i*, *y*, where it sounds as Fr. *j* (= *z* in 'azure,' forcibly enunciated). As final it is usually silent. — Ex. (= *g*) *gant*, *gorge*, *gôûter*, *gloire*, *chagrin*; — (= Fr. *j*) *germe*, *gilet*, *gymnaste*, *léger*, *nageur*; — (silent) *bourg*, *long*.

*ge gu* + vowel. — To give to *g* the fricative (= *j*) sound even before *a*, *o*, *u* a silent *e* is inserted after it (e.g. *nagea* = *na-zha*); and *vice versa*, to give it a hard sound before *e* (*eu*), *i*, a silent *u* is inserted after it (e.g. *guerre*, as if *gèr*, *g* as in 'go'). — Ex. (= *j*) *nagea*, *pigeon*, *gageure*, *mangea*; — (= hard *g*) *guerre*, *guère*, *gueule*, *guitarre*, *figue*.

With regard to the combinations *ge* and *gu* before a vowel, it should be noticed: — a) in *-geur eu* is a monophthong (cf. *nageur* under *g*), while in *-geure* it consists of the silent (orthographical) *e* + *u* of a suffix *-ure* (cf. *gageure*, above); — b) *u* of *gu* may in some words form a diphthong with the following vowel (cf. p. 15, b. note); — c) *u* is silent even before *a*, *o*, *u*, if it belongs to a verb in *-guer* (e.g. *fatiguons* from *fatiguer*).

*gg* before *e*, *i*, *u* = *g-g*. — Ex. *suggérer* (= *sug-géré*).

*-g* final is heard in *joug* 'yoke,' *zigzag*, *grog*, *pouding*.

*gn* between vowels (or *r* and a vowel) is softened to a peculiar sound resembling that of Engl. *gn* in 'cognac' (= *con-yac*). But the *n*-sound is palatal (made with the back of the

tongue), and it blends with the following *y*-sound almost into one, the two coming near being a nasal *y* (*ÿ*). — Ex. *gagner* (= *gă-ÿé*), *agneau*; *craignit*, *saigne*; *indigne*; *cigogne*; *soigneux* (= *soi-ÿeu*); *répugner*, *épargner*.

NOTE 1. — The exact French sound of *gn* can be learned only by hearing it. In Switzerland, *gn* sounds just like Engl. *ny*.

NOTE 2. — In *oignon* 'onion,' and more optionally in words beginning with *poign-* (*poignard* 'dagger,' etc.) *i* is silent.

NOTE 3. — In certain modern words borrowed from Greek or Latin, *gn* is pronounced like *g-n*: *agnat* (= *ag-na*), *cognition*, *stagnant*, *stagnation*, etc.; and *g* is silent in *signet* 'signet.'

*h* is now silent in French. Yet in many words of foreign, especially Germanic, origin, an initial *h* is still treated as when once pronounced (*aspirated*), in so far as it prevents the elision or linking (26) of a preceding word. Hence the necessity of distinguishing between *h* 'mute' and *h* 'aspirate.' — Ex. ('mute') *habit* (*l'habit*, *les habits*), *huile*, *exhorter*; — ('aspirate') *héros* (*le héros*, *les héros*), *harpe*.

NOTE. — Generally *h* is 'mute' in words of Latin or Greek origin (e.g. *homme*, *habit*, *héroïne*), but 'aspirate' in words of a different, chiefly Teutonic, origin (e.g. *halle*, *harpe*, *haie*, etc.). — Among exceptions should be noted especially: *h*, is 'aspirate' in *héros* (but not in its derivatives), and in some words with inorganic *h*, as *haut* (L. *altus*) and derivatives, *hurler* (L. *ululare*), *haleter* (L. *halitare*), as well as in *hors* (L. *foras*); in *huit* and derivatives it prevents elision but not linking (cf. 27, note 1).

In dictionaries, words beginning with an *h* 'aspirate' (about 340 against 500 beginning with *h* 'mute') are usually marked with some conventional sign, such as ', or \*, or the like.

*j* always sounds like *z* in English 'azure,' if enunciated with strong sonancy. — Ex. *je*, *jeter*, *jour*, *jouir*, *juste*.

*k* = English *k*. It occurs only in foreign words.

*l* regularly sounds like English *l* (e.g. *il*, *fler*, *docile*, *aile* = *el*, *illustre*). — The combinations *il* and *ill*, however, are subject to the following rules: —

*-il* final is usually (cf. note 2) regular, as in 'until' (Fr. *î*), except after a vowel, where it simply denotes an *y*-sound (= *y* in 'boy'). — Ex. (regular) *civil*, *avril* (cf. note 1), *exil*; — (= *y*) *bétail* (= *bétâ'y*), *vieil* (= *vi-è'y*), *deuil* (= *deu'y*).

NOTE 1. — Usage is not consistent with regard to the pronunciation of final *-il*, unpreceded by a vowel. Though for the most part uttered as written, it may also be pronounced as *-i'y* or simply *-i* (thus Littré gives *avril* = *avril*, or *avri'y* or *avri*, *péril* = *péri'y*, etc.). — It is regularly = *i* in *baril* (= *bari*) 'barrel,' *chenil* 'kennel,' *fusil* 'gun,' *gentil* (but before a vowel-sound = *genti'y*) 'fine,' *outil* 'tool,' *sourcil* 'eyebrow,' and a few other words, less common.

NOTE 2. — *æ*, *ue* before *-il* sound like Fr. *eu* (cf. 15). — Ex. *ail* (= *eu'y*), *orgueil* (= *orgœ'y*).

*-ill-* medial is regular, as 'ill' (Fr. *î*), in some words enumerated below in note 1 (*mille*, *ville*, etc.). Usually, however, it denotes the sound *i'y*, when preceded by a consonant (e.g. *fille* = *fî'y*), or simply a *y*-sound, when preceded by a vowel (e.g. *paille* = *pâ'y*). — Ex. (= *ill*) *ville*, *mille*; — (= *iy* or *y*) *fille*, *famille*, *billet*, *brillant*; *paille*, *travailler*, *conseilla*, *vieille*, *feuille*, *fouiller*.

NOTE 1. — Medial *-ill-* has its regular sound: a. in *mille* 'thousand,' *mille* 'mile,' *ville* 'city,' *pupille* 'ward,' *tranquille* 'tranquil,' and in their derivatives; b. in trisyllabic words in *-iller* (e.g. *distiller*, *scintiller*, etc.), and their derivatives; c. in a few less common forms not enumerated above.

NOTE 2. — *-il*, *-ill*, are in parts of France (especially in the south) pronounced (*i*)'y instead of (*i*)'y, as described above: e.g. *betail* = *betal'y*; *fille* = *fî'y*; *paille* = *pal'y*. This older pronunciation is adhered to by certain good authorities and in certain styles; but it is much the less common.

NOTE 3. — *æ*, *ue* before *-ill* sound like Fr. *eu* (cf. 15). — Ex. *euillet* (= *eu'yê*), *cueillir* (= *keu'yir*).

[History. — The varied pronunciation of *il(l)* is owing to a varied origin of this combination of letters. When *il(l)* has its regular sound, it generally comes directly from Latin *il(l)*. E.g. *mille* (L. *mille*), *tranquille* (L. *tranquillus*). In other cases it represents a Latin *-illi-* (which naturally enough changed — like *-illi-* in Engl. *million* — to *i'y*, a pronunciation yet heard: cf. note 2), or *-icul-* (= *icl*, *ill*, *il'y* or *eil'y*), or some other sound,

Latin or not. E.g. *file* (L. *filia*) *lentille* (L. *lenticula*), *abeille* (L. *apicula*), *veiller* (Lat. *vigilare*).]

*-i-* is silent in *fil*s (= *fiss*) 'son,' and in the plural *gentilshommes* (in *gentilhomme* it sounds as *y*: cf. note 2 under *-il*). Some authorities prefer *fil*s = *fi*.

*-f* final is mute in *cul* 'backside,' and *soûl* 'full.'

*m*, *n* not denoting a nasalized vowel (19), are pronounced as in English.

*p* = English *p*. It is silent, however, in the initials *lapt-*, *sculp-*, and usually in the combination *rupt* (e.g. *baptême*, *sculpter*, *compter*, etc.; but *exemption*, *redemption*, etc.). — For *-p*, *-ps*, *-pt* final, cf. below.

*-p* final is silent, except in *cap*. — About final *-ps*, *-pt*, etc., see under *s* and *t*.

*q* forms with *u* a *k*-sound (cf. 17 under *u* + vowel). Alone it occurs only in *coq* 'cock,' and *cinq* 'five,' where it sounds like *k*. (About *cinq* in combination, cf. 76.)

*r* is more dental and more trilled than in English. It is always pronounced, except as stated below (*-r*). — Ex. *ruse*, *grand*, *fier*; *perd*, *concert*, *revers*.

*-r* final is heard in monosyllabics. Also in polysyllabics, except, usually (cf. note), those ending in *-er*, *-ier*, whose *r* (or *rs*, if plurals) is silent. — Ex. (heard) *fer*, *mer*, *fier* 'proud' (but *fi-er* 'rely': cf. 16), *fur*, *hier*, *honneur*, *pasteur*, *revoir*; — (silent) *donner*, *arriver*, *boulangier* (pl. *boulangers*), *dernier* (pl. *derniers*), *tapissier* (pl. *tapissiers*).

NOTE. — *-r* final of polysyllabics is heard in *amer* 'bitter,' *cancer* 'cancer,' *cuiller* 'spoon,' *enfer* 'hell,' *ether* 'ether,' *hiver* 'winter' (and cf. 20, 21).

*s* has in French, as in English, two sounds: one sharp as in 'so,' one *sonant* as in 'rose,' but both more forcibly enounced than in English. Sonant *s* occurs between two vowels, and also between *l* or *n* and a vowel. — Ex. (sharp *s*), *son*, *pasteur*, *respirer*, *observer* (*op-server*), *passer*; — (sonant *s*) *rose*, *base*, *poser*, *misère*; *balsamique*, *transition*.

Usually *s* is not sonantized when it begins the second member of a compound: e.g. *entre-sol*, *parasol* (*para* + *sol*), *vraisemblable*.



*sc* before *e, i, y* sounds like *s*. — Ex. *scène, science, scélérat, sceptique*.

*-s* final is mute, except in *as* 'ace,' *bis* 'twice,' *hélas* 'alas,' *jadis* 'formerly,' *lis* 'lily' (but silent in *fleur-de-lis*), *mais* 'maize,' *vis* 'screw'; and generally in *tous* 'all' when pronoun. Cf. also below (*-cs*, etc.).

*-cs, -ds, -fs*, etc. (i.e. final consonant + *s*) are silent, except in the following cases: — a. When *s* is the plural sign, a preceding consonant is heard, if heard in the singular (e.g. *lac*: pl. *lacs*, *chef*: pl. *chefs*; but cf. *f* note). — b. *r* of *-rs* is also heard, where *s* is not the regular plural-sign, except in *volontiers* 'willingly' (e.g. *vers, envers*). — c.  *fils* 'son' is pronounced *fiss*. — d. both consonants are heard in *cens* 'census,' *sens* 'sense'; *laps* 'laps,' *forceps* 'forceps'; *mars* 'March,' *mœurs* (also *mœurs*) 'manners,' *ours* (also *ours*) 'bear.'

*t* has usually the sound of English *t*. But medial *-ti-* before vowel is pronounced like *s'* (*s* sharp), — except after *s* (or *x*) and in some other cases, as explained below. — Ex. (= *t*) *tu, jeter, tiède; bestial, garantie, chrétien, moitié, entier*; — (*ti* = *s'*) *nation* (= *nă-s'ô*), *portion, patience, partial, initier* ('initiate'), *prophétie, démocratie*.

Usually it will be found that *-ti-* has the *si-* sound, when in corresponding English words it sounds like *sh*, or is represented by *c* (cf. ex. above).

[Historically *ti* sounds as *si* when it represents a popular Latin *ti* pronounced like *tsi*, hence not: — a. When it is preceded by *s* or *x* (e.g. *question, mixtion*), or was once preceded by *s* (*chrétien* 'Christian,' *châtier* 'chastize'). — b. When *i* is the final of an inflected stem (e.g. *parti-e, parti-ons*). — c. When *i* belongs to one of the endings *ier* (participles excepted), *tier* (infinitives excepted), *tière, tiers, tième*, in all of which *ie* is a diphthong of French origin (e.g. *moitié, entier, entière, volontiers*).]

*-t* final is silent, except in *brut* 'rough,' *chut* 'hush!' *dot* 'portion,' *fat* 'fop(pish),' *huit* (cf. 88) 'eight,' *net* 'neat'; and cf. below (*-ct, -gt*, etc.).

*-ct, -gt, -ft, -pt, -st* final are treated as follows: — *ct*, differently described by different authors, is mostly silent after a nasal (e.g. *instinct*), after *i* (except in *strict*) and in the termination *-spect* (e.g. *aspect*), but sounded like *kt* elsewhere, i.e. generally after *a* and *e* (e.g. *tact, exact, correct, direct*). — *gt* is silent in *doigt* 'finger' and in *vingt* 'twenty,' in some of its uses (cf. 88). — *ft* is silent. — *pt* is silent after a nasal and sounded after a vowel, except in *sept* 'seven,' pronounced *set* (cf. 76: also *septième*).

—*st* is silent in *est* 'is,' but sounded in *Christ* (not in *Jésus Christ*), *est* 'east,' and *ouest* 'west.'

*th* has the sound of simple *t*. — Ex. *athée*.

*y* sounds like English *v*; *w*, which is used only in foreign words, sounds like *v*, except after a vowel, where it generally has the value of *u* (New-york = Neu-york).

*x* is pronounced like *gz* when initial, and in the prefix *ex* followed by a vowel-sound; but like *ks* in other cases. — Ex. *Xenophon*, *exil*, *exhumer*; — *excuse*, *fixe*, *Alexandre*.

*-x final* is silent. Only in *six* 'six' and *dix* 'ten,' when not used as adjectives, it has the sound of *ss*. *X* also has the same sound in *soixante* 'sixty' (and in some proper names, as *Bruzelles*, etc.). — Final *-lx* is silent.

*y*. Concerning this letter, see 18.

*z* sounds as in English 'gaze' (e.g. *azur*). When final it is silent (e.g. *nez*), except in *gaz*, *fez*.

**24. PRONUNCIATION OF PROPER NOUNS.** — The pronunciation of proper nouns is very irregular, and usage is not in all cases fixed. Only a few rules for the more common irregularities are here given.

Proper names are pronounced according to the preceding rules, observing:

A. As regards **foreign names**: — a. that any final consonant is likely to be sounded: e.g. *Job*, *David*, *Esther*, *Jupiter*, *Gil Blas*, *Brutus*, *Suez* (*z = s*), etc.; — b. that final *m* and *n*, retaining their own sounds, do not nasalize a preceding vowel, and that a medial *em* and *en* sometimes sound like French *in* (i.e. = *âi*): e.g. *Abraham* (= *A-bra-â-me*), *Jérusalem*, *Elohim*, *Eden*, (but *am = â* in *Adam*); *Benjamin*, *Memphis*, etc.; — c. that *ch* usually sounds like *k*: e.g. *Jéricho*, *Michel-Ange*, etc. (but like Engl. *sh* in *Michel*, *Achille*, *Archimède*, *Eschyle* = *éshil*, and some others).

B. As regards **French names**: — a. that final *s* and *st* are heard in some words: e.g. *Arras*, *Reims*; *Vaugelas*, *Agnès*, *Clovis*, *Médicis*; *Brest*, *Ernest*, etc.; — b. that medial *s* before a consonant (especially *l*, *m*, *n*, *t*), and also final *-lt*, *-lx* are silent: e.g. *Basle* (now usually *Bâle*), *Maistre* (also *Maistre*), *Duguesclin*; *Larochefoucault* (but heard in *Soult*).

**25. FOREIGN WORDS WITH UNCHANGED ORTHOGRAPHY** are usually pronounced as in the language from which they are borrowed. — Ex. *album*, *triumvir*, *amen*; *Cromwell*, *whig* (*ou-ig*), etc.

## JOINING OF WORDS.

**26.** In the sentence, closely connected words are apt to be pronounced as one,

a. by **elision** ("cutting off": both in utterance and writing) of a vowel that would occasion hiatus: e.g. *le a* = *l'a*; and

b. by **linking** (in utterance, not in writing) the end-consonant of one word, whether otherwise pronounced or not, with the initial vowel of another: e.g. *les amis* = *lè-z'ami*.

**27. ELISION.**—Final *e* of monosyllables in *-e* and a few compounds in *-que*, and final *a* of *la*, are usually (cf. notes) elided before a vowel or *h* 'mute', their loss being indicated in writing by the use of an apostrophe.—Ex. *l'arbre* (for *le arbre*), *j'ai* (for *je ai*), *qu'il* (for *que il*), *l'dame* (for *la dame*); *jusqu'à* (for *jusque à*).

**NOTE 1.**—The articles *le* and *la* are not elided before numerals, except *un* and its derivatives.—Ex. *le onze*, *le huit*; *l'un*.

**NOTE 2.**—The personal object-pronouns (*me*, *te*, *le*, *la*) when appended to their verb by a hyphen are elided only before the particles *en*, *y*, if pertaining to the same verb.—Ex. *donne-m'en*, *menez-l'y*; but *menez-le avec vous*, *envoyez-le en^chercher*.

**NOTE 3.**—The demonstrative adjective *ce* is *cet* before a vowel or *h* 'mute' (cf. 107, note 1).

**NOTE 4.**—*Jusque* always elides its *e* before a vowel-sound; *quoique* *lorsque*, *puisque*, *parce que*, *tandis que*, only before *un* and personal pronouns (*il*, *elle*, *on*); *quelque*, *presque* only in the compounds *quelqu'un*, *presqu'île*.

**NOTE 5.**—In other combinations than those described above, a hiatus remains (at least in writing), except in the following sporadic cases:

a. *i* of *si* 'if' is elided before *il*, *ils*, (e.g. *s'il*);

b. in analogy with verb-forms ending in *s* in the 2d sing. imperative and in *t* in the 3d sing. present indicative, an *s* is added to a 2d imperative ending in a vowel when followed by the appended object-particle *en* or *y* (e.g. *donnes-en*, *vas-y*: cf. 127), and a *-t-* is inserted between a verb-form ending in a vowel in the 3d sing. and an appended subject-pronoun (e.g. *aime-t-il*, *a-t-il*, *aura-t-il*: cf. 151 b).

**28. LINKING OF WORDS.**—If one word ends with a consonant or consonant-combination, and the next begins with

a vowel or *h* 'mute,' the end-consonant — or exceptionally a consonant preceding it — is apt to be pronounced with the initial vowel-sound, thus 'linking' the two words. — Ex. *vous*^avez, *cet*^habit, *déserts*^arides, *respect*^humain.

[29.] This linking is regularly observed when the syntactical relation between the two words is close, as between a noun or adjective and its determinants, the verb and its subject, etc. In other cases, it is largely a matter of option or euphony, though it is observed much more regularly in solemn utterance or reading than otherwise.

In linking words, the following rules are to be observed, viz. : —

[30.] Final *c*, *d*, *g*, and *s* (or *x*) are pronounced like *k*, *t*, *k*, and *z* respectively. — Ex. *vous*^avez (= *vou-z*^avez); *grand*^homme (*grā-t*^omm), etc. About *f* in *neuf*, cf. 88.

[31.] A final nasal vowel — which is rarely carried forward, except in cases of close syntactical connection — usually develops an *n*-sound before the initial vowel (*un ami* = *ū*^*n*'ami; sometimes, though not as good, *u*^*n*'ami, *u* = *eu*).

[32.] Of two or more end-consonants the linking is usually effected by the final (e.g. *est*^ici, *sept*^heures, *déserts*^arides); but by the penultimate, if the last two consonants be *-ct* with silent *-t* or *-ct* (e.g. *respect*^humain); and by none, unless one always pronounced, if the word be a singular in silent *s* (*un mets*^exquis, *un corps*^exquis; but in pl. *des mets*^exquis, *des corps*^exquis).

[33.] Some end-consonants are rarely or never linked. Thus especially : — *-d* of nouns is rarely linked, except in a few common phrases : e.g. *sourd et muet*; *chaud et froid*; *un marchand étranger*; but *grand*^homme, *vend*^il, *pied*^à terre: (*d* = *t*). — *-t* silent is not linked (except of *gril*, *gentil*, in linking = *genti*'y); e.g. *un fusil à vent*. — *-m* is never linked: e.g. *la faim et la soif*. — *-p* and *-b* of *champ*, *camp*, and *plomb* are not linked. — *-r* silent of nouns is not linked; silent *-r* of adjectives and verbs is not usually linked, except in sustained style, as especially in poetry; e.g. *un épicier avec son fils*; *blâmer à tort* or *blâmer*^à tort. — *-s* of words in the sing. is not linked; e.g. *le bras étendu*, *un avis intéressant*. — *-t* is rarely linked after *r*; and *et* 'and' never links (being thereby distinguished from *est* 'is'): e.g. *désert immense*; *il dort en paix*; *lui et elle* (but *c'est*^elle).

## II.

COMMON PHONETIC AND ORTHOGRAPHIC CHANGES IN  
INFLECTION AND DERIVATION.

**34.** The following changes are of such regular occurrence that they may be stated here at the outset.

[35.] Owing to the accent-stress, no other *e*-sound than an **open** (è; ê; or *e* + two consonants) can precede an end-syllable containing a silent *e*, the only exception being that *é* occurs in immediate connection with a silent *e* (*donnée*).

Whenever in inflection this principle would be contravened, *e* mute or *é* of the tone-syllable are made **open** (= è, or *e* with the following consonant, especially if *l*, *n*, or *t*, doubled). — In verbs, a radical *e* (not *é*) is treated in analogous manner before any syllable containing an *e* 'mute.' — Ex. *chère* (fem. of *cher* 'dear'), *secrète* (fem. of *secret*), *mène* (pres. of *mener* 'lead'), *cède* (pres. of *céder* 'yield'); *cruelle* (fem. of *cruel*), *appelle* (pres. of *appeler* 'call'); *ancienne* (fem. of *ancien* 'old'), *jette* (pres. of *jeter* 'throw'); — *mènerai* (fut. of *mener*); but *céderai* (fut. of *céder*), *appellerai* (fut. of *appeler*).

NOTE 1. — It is common to write *é* instead of è before *g* and *j*, but good authorities now allow a consistent use of è. — Ex. *protège* or *protège*.

NOTE 2. — With regard to the doubling of a consonant before mute *e* the following may be noticed: *l* is always doubled in feminine forms, but not so consistently in tense-forms (cf. 126 note); *n* always in feminine forms, but rarely in tense-forms (cf. *tienne*, etc.); *t* somewhat irregularly in both feminine and tense-forms.

[36.] Between two vowels, *i* is preferable to *y* before *e* mute, while *y* must be used before other vowels. — Ex. *croie*: *croyant*; *effraie* (or *effraie*); *effrayer*; *paierai* (or *payerai*): *payer*.

[37.] When *c* and *g* are to retain their hard sound (as in 'can,' 'go,') before *e*, *i*, *y*, they must be changed to *qu* and *gu*: e.g. *publique* (fem. of *public*); *vague*. In verbs *qu* and *gu* are retained even before other vowels: e.g. *moquons* (of *moquer*).

*Vice versa*, when *c* and *g* are to have their soft sound before *a*, *o*, *u*, they are changed to *ç* and *ge* respectively: e.g. *plaçons* (of *placer*); *mangeons* (of *manger*).

---

### III.

## ARTICLES AND PARTITIVE SIGN.

[38. HISTORY. — Already in Latin, and especially in the popular idiom, *ille* 'that' and *unus* 'one' were sometimes used in a manner approaching that of real articles. In French *le* (relic of the Lat. accusative *illūm*, with irregular, proclitic, accent) and *un* (Lat. *unum*), like English 'the' and 'an,' have a special function as proclitics denoting how far the sense of the word to which they are attached applies.

Moreover, the Latin use of the partitive genitive has in French given rise to an extended general use of *de* 'of,' with or without the definite article, before any noun whose meaning is to be accepted in a partitive sense. By this use of *de* (*le*), which was almost unknown in Old French, modern French possesses a special partitive article, in part corresponding to English 'some' or 'any,' as explained in 45.]

39. French nouns are usually preceded by some unemphatic word denoting how their meaning is to apply. These determinants, the *Definite* or (*Generic*), the *Indefinite*, and the *Partitive Article*, are described below.

40. THE DEFINITE (or *Generic*) ARTICLE. — This article is required either — like the English 'the' — before nouns whose general meaning is specialized and thus made **definite** (e.g. *l'or que j'ai* 'the gold which I have'); or else — where in English more usually no article occurs — before nouns used, definitely, in their absolute or **generic** sense (e.g. *l'or est précieux* 'gold is precious').

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.
Sing.	<i>le</i> (or <i>l'</i> : 27)	<i>la</i> (or <i>l'</i> : 27)
Pl.	<i>les</i>	

Ex. — *le père* 'the father'; *la mère* 'the mother'; *l'amour*, masc., 'the love' (definite, as in *l'amour de ma mère* 'my mother's love') or 'love' (generic, as in *l'amour vient du cœur* 'love comes from the heart'); *les pères et les mères* 'the fathers and the mothers,' or 'fathers and mothers' generally; *l'homme* 'the man' or 'man'; *l'âme*, fem., 'the soul.'

NOTE. — A conception may be definite in its individuality (*l'or de mon père*) as well as in its generality or entirety (*l'or est précieux*). Hence the use of the definite article in both cases in French. It is only for convenience, to emphasize the different usage in French and English in this respect, that the terms *definite* and *generic* have been here adopted. The distinction is always made clear by the context (cf., farther, Syntax, 195).

[41.] **CONTRACTION.** — The prepositions *de* 'of' and *à* 'to' blend with a following *le* or *les* (never with *la* or *l'*) into one form, viz. : —

*de le* into *du*; Ex. *du père* 'of the father';  
*de les* " *des*; " *des pères (mères)* 'of the fathers (mothers)';  
*à le* " *au*; " *au père* 'to the father';  
*à les* " *aux*; " *aux pères (aux mères)* 'to the fathers (mothers).'

But: *de la mère* 'of the mother'; *de l'ami* 'of the friend.'

[History. — In Old French, the contractions were *del*, *dels*, *al*, *als* respectively. These by a common process of mutation — consisting in the change of *l* to *u* — have become *du* (formerly *deu*) *des*, *au*, *aux* (*x* for *s*, as explained under 47, B).]

NOTE. — *En* 'in' and *les* are contracted to *ès* (formerly *els* or *eus*), which is now retained only in a few expressions denoting academic titles, as *bachelier ès lettres* 'bachelor of letters,' *docteur ès sciences* 'doctor of science.'

**42. THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE** is: masc. *un*; fem. *une* 'an, a.' — Ex. *un père* 'a father,' *une mère* 'a mother.'

**43. DEPENDENT and INDEPENDENT PARTITIVE SIGN.**—

When only a portion of the thing or things designated by a noun in its absolute or generic use is really contemplated, it is in French for the most part preceded by the preposition *de* 'of' (= 'portion of'), whether grammatically required by a preceding word (as in *une livre de beurre* 'a pound of butter,' *beaucoup de vin* 'much wine': cf. 44), or not thus required (as in *j'ai du vin* 'I have wine = some wine,' *des soldats sont venus* 'soldiers or some soldiers have come,' *je n'ai pas de vin* 'I have not any wine').

In its latter use, where its prepositional value is no longer felt, *de* (with or without *le, la, les*) is in French usually called the **Partitive Article** (*l'article partitif*).

As will be shown under the head of Syntax, where this subject properly belongs, *de* after the negatives *pas* (*point*, etc.) is really a dependent partitive sign (*pas* etc. being once nouns); but it is no longer as such felt in the actual language, where *pas* etc. have the value of negative particles.

[44.] The dependent partitive sign (i.e. *de* grammatically required by a preceding word) is a true preposition. It is used, on the whole, like 'of' in English, save only that French requires it not only, like English, after nouns of quantity (as in *une livre de beurre* 'a pound of butter'), but also after adverbs of quantity, in English rendered by adjectives or otherwise, as seen by the examples below.—Ex. *beaucoup* (adv.) *de beurre* 'much (adj.) butter'; *peu* (adv.) *de pain* 'little (adj.) bread'; *plus* (adv.) *de livres* 'more (adj.) books'; *trop* (adv.) *de pain* 'too much (adv. + adj.) bread'; *assez* (adv.) *de pain* 'enough (adv. = adj.) bread,' or 'bread enough.'

*Much* etc. are in English similarly construed before *this, that*: e.g. 'much (enough, etc.) of this.'

Cf., farther, Syntax.

[45.] The independent partitive sign (= the 'partitive article') consists either of *de* with the generic article (i.e. of *du, de la,*



*des*: 41), or of *de* alone. The latter is the case when the partitive noun is preceded by an adjective supplanting the generic article (e.g. *j'ai de bon vin* 'I have some good wine'); and usually when it is the unmodified accusative object of a negative verb (*je n'ai pas de vin* 'I have not any wine').

The independent partitive sign occurs in French not only where English has or could have '**some**' (except in sense of 'a few': *quelques*) or '**any**' (except in sense of 'every': *tout*), but also in other cases where the partitive sense is present.

#### EXAMPLES:

<i>J'ai du beurre.</i>	I have (some) butter.
<i>Avez-vous du beurre?</i>	Have you some (any) butter?
<i>J'ai de l'amitié pour vous.</i>	I have friendship for you.
<i>Vendez-vous des livres?</i>	Do you sell books?
<i>J'ai de bon vin.</i>	I have (some) good wine.
<i>J'ai du vin rouge.</i>	I have (some) red wine.
<i>Je n'ai pas de vin.</i>	I have no (not any) wine.
<i>Cela n'est pas du vin.</i>	That is not wine.

For farther details, cf. Syntax.

[46.] The independent partitive sign is always excluded by a preceding *de*. — Ex. *L'araignée vit de mouches* (not *vit de des mouches*) 'The spider lives on flies.'

---

#### IV.

#### NOUNS.

[47. HISTORY. — A. Loss of Cases. The six Latin case-forms have in French been reduced to **one** in both singular and plural. This sweeping reduction, which has made the French noun even more barren of forms than the English with its possessive case, was brought about only gradually. Thus, the ancient Gallo-Romanic speech had, like Latin, five declensions and six cases, though this complicated system was simplified in the popular speech. The Old French dialect, till the beginning of the 12th century,

had three declensions and two cases. Then, till the end of that century, one declension, modelled on the Latin second, but still two cases; e.g.

Nom. sing. *murs* (L. *murus*)

Nom. pl. *mur* (L. *muri*)

Acc. " *mur* (L. *murum*)

Acc. " *murs* (L. *muros*)

These two cases were finally reduced to one in the 14th century. And that one was not the nominative, but the **accusative** (marked in bold type above). Only a few words — as *fils* (L. *filius*), *sœur* (L. *soror*), *traître* (L. *traditor*) — preserved in singular the nominative form, instead of the accusative. A few others have survived in both cases, but as distinct words: e.g. *pâtre* (L. *pastor*); *pasteur* (L. *pastorem*); *sire* (L. *senior*); *seigneur* (L. *seniorem*).

**B. Plural Sign.** — As the accusative plural terminated in *s* — all neuters having been reduced to masculines, or less often to feminines, already in the early Gallo-Romanic speech — *s* naturally became the **plural sign** in modern French.

By a confusion, however, *x* (for *œ*, both conventional signs in Old French for *-us*) has come to be used instead of *s*, as the regular plural sign of nouns with a final monophthong in *-u*, as well as those which change final *-l* to *-u* in the plural: e.g. *chevau-x* (for *chevaux* or *chevax*: *u* restored and yet *x* retained in *chevaux*), *chapeau-x*. Farther, if the singular ended already in a hissing sound (*s*, *x*, or *z*), it suffered no change in the plural.

Some of the actual rules for the plural formation of compound nouns (53) and proper names have been fixed only since the 17th century.

**C. Gender.** — Latin had three genders. Of these the neuter was lost in French, neuter nouns being changed, for the most part, into masculines. Hence the following general analogy:

Lat. *masc.* and *neut.* = Fr. *masc.*

Lat. *fem.* = Fr. *fem.*

This general correspondence, however, has been considerably disturbed by various influences, chiefly that of false analogy. Thus: — 1. Latin plural neuters in *-a* became feminines, in analogy with feminines in *-a*: e.g. L. *arma* (n.): Fr. *arme* (f.); L. *folia* (n.): Fr. *feuille* (f.); L. *vela* (n.): Fr. *voile* (f.); etc. — 2. Several Latin feminines in *-us* (especially names of trees) became masculines in analogy with masculines in *us*: e.g. L. *cupressus* (f.): Fr. *cyprès* (m.); L. *pinus* (f.): Fr. *pin* (m.); L. *cedrus* (f.): Fr. *cèdre* (m.); low L. *casnus* (f.): Fr. *chêne* (m.). — 3. Several Lat. masculines (or neut.) changed so as to end in *-e* in French became feminine, that being the usual gender of words in *-e*: e.g. L. *cometes* (m.): Fr. *comète* (f.); L. *pulverem* (Fr. *pulvis*, m.): Fr. *poudre* (f.); L. *amyletum* (n.):

Fr. *amulette* (f.).—4. Abstract nouns in *-eur*, in analogy with abstract nouns (as in *té*, etc.) generally, became feminine: e.g. L. *calor* (m.): Fr. *chaleur* (f.); L. *color* (m.): Fr. *couleur* (f.); L. *pavor* (m.): Fr. *peur* (f.).—5. A few nouns are masc. in their concrete, but feminine in their abstract sense: e.g. *garde* (m.) 'guard, watchman': *garde* (f.) 'guard, care.'—6. *minuit* (-*nuît*: L. *nox*, f.) is masc. in analogy with *midi* (-*di*: L. *dies*, m.); *gens* (pl. of *gent* 'race, nation': Lat. *gent-em* of *gens*, f.), assuming the sense 'person,' became masc. in many uses, but not all (cf. 62d): and so on.

Nouns of German or Greek origin also preserve the German or Greek gender in a manner analogous, in the main, with that described above.]

**48.**—French nouns have as a rule a different form for the singular and plural. But, unlike English nouns, they suffer no other change whatever.

#### 49. PLURAL FORMATION.

[50.] COMMON NOUNS not terminating already in a sibilant (*s*, *x*, *z*) form their plural by adding *s* or *x* to the singular form.

*X* is simply a spurious (47, B) substitute for *s* after nearly all monophthongs in *-u*. It is added to all nouns in *-eau*, *-(o)eu*, and some in *-ou* (note 1); and always to final *-au*, the required conversion in plural of final *-al* in most cases (note 2) and of *-ail* in many (note 3).—Ex.

a. *s* added:

Sing. <i>père</i> 'father' . . . . .	pl. <i>pères</i>
" <i>maison</i> 'house' . . . . .	" <i>maisons</i>
" <i>fleur</i> 'flower' . . . . .	" <i>fleurs</i>

b. *x* added (1) directly:

Sing. <i>chapeau</i> 'hat' . . . . .	pl. <i>chapeaux</i>
" <i>feu</i> 'fire' . . . . .	" <i>feux</i>
" <i>vœu</i> 'wish' . . . . .	" <i>vœux</i>

(2) after the conversion of *-al*, *-ail* to *-au*:

Sing. <i>général</i> 'general' . . . . .	pl. <i>générau-x</i>
" <i>cheval</i> 'horse' . . . . .	" <i>chevau-x</i>
" <i>corail</i> 'coral' . . . . .	" <i>corau-x</i>

**Nouns in a sibilant are invariable:**

Sing.	<i>fil</i> 'son'	pl.	<i>fil</i>
"	<i>prix</i> 'price'	"	<i>prix</i>
"	<i>nez</i> 'nose'	"	<i>nez</i>

NOTE 1.—Seven nouns in *-ou* add *x* in the plural. They are: *bijou* ‘jewel,’ *caillou* ‘pebble,’ *chou* ‘cabbage,’ *genou* ‘knee,’ *hibou* ‘owl,’ *joujou* ‘toy,’ *pou* ‘louse.’—Others in *-ou* add *s*.

NOTE 2.—A few nouns in *-al* simply add *s* in the plural. The most important are: monosyllabics (except *mal* 'evil' and *val* 'vale'); some polysyllabics as *aval* 'surety,' *carnaval* 'carnival,' *regal* 'entertainment'; and in general foreign names of plants and animals (*nopal* 'Indian fig-tree,' *chacal* 'jackal,' etc.).

NOTE 3. — Nouns in *-ail* are differently treated. About one-half of these (*détail, épouvantail, éventail, gouvernail, poitrail, portail*, and a few less common) add *s* to the singular. The remainder change *-ail* to *-au*, and then add *x* (*corail* 'coral,' pl. *corau-x*; *travail* 'labor,' pl. *travaux*, rarely *travails*, cf. note 4; etc.). Yet *ail* 'garlic' has in plural *aïls* or *aulx*; and *détail* 'cattle' has *bestiaux*.

NOTE 4. — The following nouns have a double plural form, an irregular retaining the general meaning of the noun, and a regular restricting in some manner that meaning:

*aïeul* 'ancestor, grandfather'  $\begin{cases} \textit{aïeux} \text{ 'ancestors'} \\ \textit{aïeuls} \text{ 'grandfathers'} \end{cases}$

**ciel** 'sky, heaven', { *cieux* 'heavens, skies'  
                                  *ciels* 'skies in pictures, clime, testers,' etc.

*œil* 'eye' { *yeux* 'eyes'  
*œils* in *œils-de-bœuf* 'oval windows' and many  
names of natural products.

*travail* 'labor' (cf. note 3)  $\begin{cases} \textit{travaux} \text{ 'labors' } \\ \textit{travails} \text{ 'official reports'; 'brakes' } \end{cases}$

NOTE 5. — Usage varies with regard to the plural form of foreign nouns. Generally *s* is added to simple nouns of familiar use (*album-s*, *opéra-s*, *piano-s*, etc.), while others, especially compounds, and some pure Latin words, remain unchanged (*les post-scriptum*, *les Te Deum*, *les credo* or *-credos*, *les requiem* or *requiems*, etc.), or have their foreign plural form (*les maxima*, *les minima*, *les lazzaroni*, *les ladies*, *les tories*, etc.).

[51.] **PROPER NOUNS** are for the most part unchanged in the plural when not used figuratively. Names of persons, however, take the plural sign: a) When denoting illustrious families or dynasties: e.g. *les Scipions*, *les Bourbons*. — b) When applied, by way of comparison, to other persons than those to whom they properly belong; or when used as titles of books or works of art: e.g. *La France a ses César-s*; *des Raphaël-s* 'pictures of Raphaël.'

NOTE. — Several geographical names (*les Indes*, *les Vosges*, etc.) are used chiefly or alone in the plural.

[52.] As in English, so also in French various nouns, especially abstracts or names of material, are used chiefly or alone in the singular [e.g. '*verdure*' 'verdure,' *argent* 'silver, money,' *lait* 'milk,' etc.], while others are used chiefly or alone in the plural [e.g. *ancêtres* (rarely sing. m. or f.) 'ancestors,' *annales* 'annals,' *environs* 'surroundings,' *frais* 'expenses,' *funérailles* 'funeral,' *mœurs* 'customs,' *ténèbres* 'shadows,' etc.].

NOTE. — Several nouns have in the plural a specialized meaning, differing more or less from that of the singular: e.g. *fer* 'iron,' pl. *fers*, generally 'fetters,' but also 'implements of iron,' 'kinds of iron'; *grâce* 'charm, mercy,' *grâces* 'thanks'; *ciseau* 'chisel,' *ciseaux* 'scissors,' and so on.

**53. PLURAL OF COMPOUND NOUNS.** — A. When the members of a compound, having lost more or less of their identity with regard to form or meaning, are written together without any intervening hyphen, the compound is treated as a single word. — Ex. *gendarme* (for *gent d'arme*) 'gendarm,' pl. *gendarmes*; *banlieue* (for *ban-lieue* 'land under public ban or jurisdiction') 'jurisdiction or precincts of a city,' pl. *banlieues*; *grand'mère* (cf. 64, B) 'grandmother,' pl. *grand'mères*.

B. When the members of a compound are separated by a hyphen, each of them, if a noun or adjective (*demi* and *nu* excepted) is put in the number in which it would be construed were the compound to be resolved according to its logical meaning. But other words than nouns and adjectives always remain unchanged. — Thus, *ver-luisant* 'glow-worm,' pl. *vers-luisants* (*luisant* 'shining' agreeing with *ver* 'worm'); *chef-lieu* 'chief place, head-quarters,' pl. *chefs-lieux* (*chef* 'head, leader' being in apposition with *lieu* 'place'); *arc-en-ciel* 'rain-

bow,' pl. *arcs-en-ciel* (i.e. "arches in the sky," not "in the skies"); *Hôtel-Dieu* 'hospital,' pl. *Hôtels-Dieu* (i.e. "hotels of God," not "of gods"); *avant-coureurs* 'forerunners'; *après-midi* 'afternoon,' pl. *après-midi* (i.e. the parts of the day coming "after midday"); *tête-à-tête* 'interview,' pl. *tête-à-tête* (because the meetings are always "head to head," i.e. between two); *passe-partout* 'master-key,' pl. *passe-partout* (because both words are indeclinable).

[54.] From this general principle (B) are derived the following special rules, viz.: —

a. If one member of a compound is a noun qualified by another noun in apposition, or by an adjective, both members take the plural sign. — Ex. *chefs-lieux* 'chief places,' *choux-fleurs* 'cauli-flowers'; *vers-luisants* 'glow-worms,' *grands-pères* 'grand-fathers.'

b. If the members of a compound are combined by a preposition expressed or understood, the chief member (generally the first) takes the plural sign. — Ex. *arcs-en-ciel* 'rain-bows,' *chefs-d'œuvre* 'master-pieces,' *pots-de-vin* 'bribes'; *Hôtels-Dieu* 'hospitals'; *timbres-poste* 'postage stamps.'

NOTE 1. — If one member does not qualify the other, both are unchanged. — Ex. *tête-à-tête* 'interviews.'

NOTE 2. — If the second member is plural in sense, it has the plural sign, whether the compound, as such, be in the plural or not. — Ex. *le char-à-bancs* 'coach' ("with benches").

c. If the first member is a verb-stem and the second a noun, both are generally unchanged (usage varying with regard to the noun). — Ex. *perce-neige* 'snow-drops'; *essuie-main* or *-s*, in both sing. and pl., 'towels.'

d. If the compound consists of a particle and a noun, the noun is unchanged if the particle is a preposition governing it, but otherwise it is inflected. — Ex. *les après-midi* 'the afternoons'; *les avant-coureurs* 'the forerunners.'

**55. GENDER.** — French nouns, whether names of living beings or not, are either **masculine** or **feminine**. No rules that are at all practical can teach the learner to determine, in every case, the gender of a noun. But a few general rules will help him to decide with relative certainty in a majority of cases, as also aid him in acquiring what only constant practice can teach him fully. These rules are given below, 56-62.

The classical student is helped in determining the gender of a French noun by the general analogy existing between the Latin and French gender, as described in the historical introduction, 47, C. — All students should, as an aid to memory, make it a habit to associate with a French noun the definite or (when the noun begins with a vowel) the indefinite article.

[56.] **Masculines** are :

a. Nouns denoting **male** beings : e.g. *le père* 'the father,' *le roi* 'the king,' *le bœuf* 'the ox.'

b. Nouns not implying distinct sex, when their termination **differs** from that of feminine nouns, as described below (57 b): e.g. *le sofa* 'the sofa,' *le blé* 'the grain,' *le noyau* 'the kernel,' *le courage* 'the courage,' *le fantôme* 'the phantom'; — *le pain* 'the bread,' *le fer* 'the iron,' *le nom* 'the name.'

[57.] **Feminines** are :

a. Nouns denoting **female** beings : e.g. *la mère* 'the mother,' *la sœur* 'the sister,' *la reine* 'the queen,' *la vache* 'the cow.'

b. Nouns not implying distinction of sex, when they terminate in :

-e (those in -ge, -ème, -ôme, -cle, -sme, as well as names of trees usually excepted) : e.g. *la vie* 'the life,' *la table* 'the table,' *la lumière* 'the light'; — but *le siège* 'the seat, the siege,' *le siècle* 'the century,' *le chêne* 'the oak.'

-té, tié : e.g. *la bonté* 'the kindness'; *la pitié* 'the pity';

-eur, -ion, -son (not -sson) : e.g. *la terreur* 'the terror,' *la possession* 'the possession,' *la maison* 'the house.'

[58.] The gender of nouns denoting living beings whose sex is not implied in the meaning of the word as commonly used, is for the most part determined by their ending (e.g. *la personne* 'the person,' *la connaissance* 'the acquaintance'; *le homard* 'the lobster,' *la mouche* 'the fly'). A few of these may, however, be used optionally for either gender (e.g. *un* or *une enfant* 'a child'); and for names of animals that are used in only one gender, a distinction may be made by using after them *mâle* or *femelle* (*la baleine mâle* or *femelle* 'the whale', m. or f.).

[59.] Among numerous exceptions to the general rules 56, 57, may be noticed the following **very** common nouns : — **Masculines**, *commerce* 'com-

merce,' *doute* 'doubt,' *fleuve* 'river,' *parapluie* 'umbrella' (but *pluie* 'rain,' fem.), *rêve* 'dream,' *silence* 'silence,' *tonnerre* 'thunder,' *verre* 'glass'; *comité* 'committee,' *côté* 'side,' *traité* 'treaty'; *bonheur* 'happiness,' *cœur* 'heart,' *honneur* 'honor,' *malheur* 'misfortune,' *poison* 'poison'; and several nouns of common natural gender, as *camarade* 'comrade,' *esclave* 'slave,' *élève* 'pupil,' *auteur* 'author.' — **Feminines**, *villa*, *loi* 'law,' *foi* 'faith,' *vertu* 'virtue,' *après-midi* 'afternoon'; *image* 'image,' *page* 'page (in a book),' *neige* 'snow,' *rage* 'rage,' *boucle* 'buckle,' *crème* 'cream'; *clef* 'key,' *faim* 'hunger,' *fin* 'end,' *main* 'hand,' *soif* 'thirst,' *façon* 'manner.'

NOTE. — Nouns in -e, of which some 5000 are feminines and some 2000 masculines, are especially refractory to any sweeping classification. *E* mute, though most often representing the Latin feminine ending *a*, quite frequently represents some other vowel.

[60.] Several nouns are used, with differentiated meaning, both as masculines and feminines. — Ex. *un enfant* 'a child (= a boy),' *une enfant* 'a child (= a girl)'; *le critique* 'the critic,' *la critique* 'the criticism'; *le manche* 'the handle,' *la manche* 'the sleeve'; *le mode* 'the manner,' *la mode* 'the fashion'; *le poste* 'the post, the station,' *la poste* 'the post-office'; *le voile* 'the veil,' *la voile* 'the sail'; *un aigle* 'an eagle' (bird), *une aigle* 'an eagle' (as a standard or coat of arms): and many others.

[61.] Several nouns of different gender, though identical in form, are of different origin, and thus naturally have a different meaning. — Ex. *le livre* 'the book,' *la livre* 'the pound'; *le page* 'the (boy) page,' *la page* 'the page (of a book)'; *le souris* 'the smile,' *la souris* 'the mouse'; *le tour* 'the round, the circuit, the turn,' *la tour* 'the tower'; *le vase* 'the vessel,' *la vase* 'the mud': and many others.

[62.] Some nouns are of different genders in singular and plural, or in different uses. Thus:

a. *Amour* 'love,' *déllice* 'delight,' *orgue* 'organ,' are masc. in the singular and fem. in the plural (*amour*, sing., being often, however, fem. in poetry).

b. *Chose* 'thing,' *personne* 'person,' are fem. as nouns. They are masc. in the pronominal expressions *quelque chose* 'something' (not, however, in *quelque chose* 'whatever') and *personne* 'anybody.'

c. *Foudre* 'lightning' is fem. in its proper sense, but masc. when used metaphorically of a person.

d. *Gens* 'people, persons' (properly a plural form of the feminine noun *gent* 'race, nation') wavers between masc. and fem.: it is masc. when its adjective follows (e.g. *les gens sérieux* 'serious people'), but fem. when it precedes (*les bonnes gens* 'good people'). Yet a preceding 'all' is



always masc. (*tous*), save when followed by an adjective having a distinct feminine form (e.g. *tous les gens*, *tous les honnêtes gens*, but *toutes les bonnes gens*).

NOTE. — *Gens* followed by a noun-determinant is always masc.: e.g. *de nombreux gens de guerre* 'numerous soldiers'; *certain gens d'étude* 'certain men of study.'

### 63. FORMAL RELATION BETWEEN KINDRED MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS.

— Different genders of persons and of the more common animals are, as a rule, denoted by the use of different words. The difference in form is either:

a. **radical**, when both words are derived from different sources: e.g. *père* 'father,' *mère* 'mother'; *homme* 'man,' *femme* 'woman'; *roi* 'king,' *reine* 'queen'; *cheval* 'horse' *jument* 'mare'; *bœuf* 'ox,' *vache* 'cow,' etc.; or

b. **relative**, when the feminine form is clearly derived from the masculine, the derivation being for the most part made in accordance with the principles determining the change of a masculine adjective to a feminine (cf. 67, etc.), except, chiefly: that final *-e*, *-eur* are changed in the feminine to *-esse*, *-euse*; and that masculines in *-teur* when derived from French verbs, change *-teur* to *-teuse*, otherwise to *-trice* (cf. 78): e.g. *ami*, m., *amie*, f., 'friend'; *cousin*, m., *cousine*, f., 'cousin'; *berger* 'shepherd,' *bergère* 'shepherdess,' *chien* 'dog,' *chienne* 'bitch'; *baron* 'baron,' *baronne* 'baroness'; *comte* 'count,' *comtesse* 'countess'; *tigre* 'tiger,' *tigresse* 'tigress'; *danseur*, m., *danseuse*, f., 'dancer,' *acteur* 'actor,' *actrice* 'actress,' etc.

## V.

### ADJECTIVES.

[64. HISTORY. — A. The case-forms of Latin adjectives have been reduced in French in precisely the same manner as those of nouns (47, A, B).

B. The genders have also been reduced to two: the masculine and the feminine. The latter has the distinct ending *-e* (mute), which corresponds to the Latin *-a* (e.g. Lat. *bona* = Fr. *bonne*), though it is now often added even to such feminines as had no *-a* in Latin (Lat. *grandis*, m., *grandis*, f.; Old Fr. *grand*, m., *grand*, f.; Fr. *grand*, m., *grande*, f.), or sometimes to both the masculine and the feminine (*triste*, m. and f.). A trace of the old feminine form *grand* is yet seen in a few words like *grand-mère* 'grandmother,' where the apostrophe is inserted, by a misunderstanding, to denote the loss of an (imaginary) *e*.

Some adjectives retain in the feminine a more primitive form than in the masculine: cf. *vil*: fem. *vive* 'lively,' from Lat. *virus*; *benin*: *benigne* 'benign' from Lat. *benignus*; *nul*: *nulle* 'none,' from Lat. *nullus*; *beau*: *belle* 'beautiful,' from Lat. *bellus*; *gros*: *grosse* 'large,' from Lat. *grossus*, etc. In other cases, the feminine form suffers a purely orthographical (and comparatively modern) change, serving to denote its pronunciation, or made by analogy: e.g. *cher*: f. *chère* 'dear' (è to avoid *che-re*, with *e-mute*: 35); *cruel*: *cruelle* (to avoid *cru-e-le*) 'cruel'; *public*: *publique* (to avoid *publice*) 'public'; *long*: *longue* (to avoid *longe*, *g = j*) 'long'; *bon*: *bonne* (to denote the openness of the *o*-sound), and so on.

C. **The Degrees of Comparison** are expressed, as they were already in Old French, by the aid of independent words (*plus* 'more,' *moins* 'less,' = Lat. *plus*, *minus*). Only three Lat. comparatives (*melior*, *pejor*, *minor* = Fr. *meilleur*, *pire*, *moindre*) have been retained in French, and no superlative, if we except a few technical terms in *-issime*, imported in the 16th century.]

**65.** French Adjectives have, as a principle, a different form for **singular** and **plural**, and for **masculine** and **feminine**, but suffer no other change. As attributes they are placed either before or after their noun (cf. 221).

**66. PLURAL FORMATION.**—Adjectives form their plural in a manner analogous to that of the nouns (cf. 50).—Ex. *joli* 'pretty,' plural *jolis* (fem. *jolie*, pl. *jolies*, and so on for all feminines, which in sing. invariably end in *ø*); *grand* 'great,' pl. *grands*; — *beau* 'beautiful,' pl. *beaux*; *hébreu* 'hebrew,' pl. *hébreux*; — *moral* 'moral,' pl. *moraux*; *général* 'general,' pl. *généraux*; — *mauvais* 'bad,' pl. *mauvais*; *faux* 'false,' pl. *faux*.

NOTE 1. — *Bleu* 'blue,' *feu* 'late (= deceased),' *fou* 'foolish,' *mou* 'soft,' add *s* in the plural.

NOTE 2. — Adjectives in *-al* have but slowly yielded to the tendency of changing *-al* to *-aux*, and plural forms in *-als* are frequently met with in the literature (*fatals*, *finals*, *glacials*, etc.); but they are constantly being reduced in number.

NOTE 3. — Polysyllabics in *-ant*, *-ent*, may optionally drop *t* in the plural, but the more common practice is to keep it. — Ex. *puissan(t)s*.

## FORMATION OF THE FEMININE.

**67. GENERAL RULE.**—Masculines, not ending in *e*, add *e* in the feminine; those in *e* remain unchanged. — Ex. *grand*, fem. *grande* ‘great’; *mauvais*: *mauvaise* ‘bad’; *joli*:  *jolie* ‘pretty’; *aimé*: *aimée* ‘beloved’; — *jeune*: *jeune* ‘young.’

**68. SPECIAL RULES.**—Before this *e*, the masculine form is subject to certain variations. These being either A. **etymological**, due to the fact that the feminine has retained a more primitive form than the masculine; or B. **orthographical**, serving chiefly to denote the pronunciation of the feminine form, are described below (cf. 64, B).

A. *Chiefly Etymological Changes:*

[69.] Final *f* is changed to *v*. — Ex. *vil*: f. *vive* ‘lively, vivid’; *actif*: *active* ‘active’; *bref*: *brève* ‘brief’ (è: 74).

[70.] *Bénin* ‘benign’ and *malin* ‘malicious’ resume in the feminine a lost *g*: *benigne*, *maligne*.

[71.] *Absous* ‘absolved’ and *dissous* ‘dissolved’ are in the feminine *absoute*, *dissoute*.

[72.] *Frais* (from a Germanic form *fresc*) ‘fresh’ is in the feminine *fratche*.

[73.] *Beau* ‘beautiful,’ *nouveau* ‘new, different,’ *fou* ‘foolish,’ *mou* ‘soft,’ *vieux* ‘old,’ retain in the singular, when placed before a noun beginning with a vowel or *h* ‘mute,’ their older masculine forms *bel* (also used in *bel et bon*), *nouvel*, *fol*, *mol*, *vieil* (the last optionally). Their feminine, singular or plural, is always made from this latter form by doubling *l* before *e*. Hence we have:

	SING.		PLUR.
m.	<i>beau</i> or (+ vow. or <i>h</i> ‘mute’) <i>bel</i>	<i>beaux</i>	} beautiful
f.	<i>belle</i>	<i>belles</i>	

m.	<b>nouveau</b> or <b>nouvel</b>	<b>nouveaux</b> }	new
f.	<b>nouvelle</b>	<b>nouvelles</b> }	
m.	<b>fou</b> or <b>fol</b>	<b>fous</b> }	foolish
f.	<b>folle</b>	<b>folles</b> }	
m.	<b>mou</b> or <b>mol</b>	<b>mous</b> }	soft
f.	<b>molle</b>	<b>molles</b> }	
m.	<b>vieux</b> or <b>vieil</b>	<b>vieux</b> }	old
f.	<b>vieille</b>	<b>vieilles</b> }	

Ex. *un bel arbre* 'a beautiful tree,' *un beau palais* 'a fine palace'; *une belle âme* 'a beautiful soul'; *une belle maison* 'a beautiful house'; *les beaux arbres* 'the fine trees'; *les belles maisons* 'the fine houses.'

#### B. Chiefly Orthographical Changes:

[74.] In accordance with the orthographical principle stated. § 35, a penultimate *e* of the masculine form is designated as open in the feminine:

a. By its change to *è* where the following consonant is not doubled according to b. — Ex. *cher*: f. *chère* 'dear'; *amer*: *amère* 'bitter'; *secret*: *secrète* 'secret'; *sec*: *sèche* (*ch*: 76, 1) 'dry'; *bref*: *brève* (*v*: 69).

b. By the **doubling** of a following *l*, *n*, and *t* (except of *-cret*, *-plet*). — Ex. *cruel*: *cruelle* 'cruel'; *ancien*: *ancienne* 'ancient'; *net*: *nette* 'neat'; *muet*: *muette* 'mute.'

NOTE. — *Inquiet* 'uneasy' has the feminine *inquiète*.

[75.] Final *l*, *n*, *t*, as well as *s*, are also often doubled after other vowels than *e* (*s* for etymological reasons). Thus:

*l* after *ei*, *i*, to designate the *y*-sound (e.g. *pareil*: *pareille* 'similar'; *gentil*: f. *gentille* 'nice'); and after *u* in *nul* (f. *nulle* = Lat. *nulla*) 'null, no.'

*n*, and *t* (of monosyllabics and diminutives) after *o*: e.g. *bon*: *bonne* 'good'; *sot*: *sotte* 'foolish'; *bellot*: *bellotte* 'pretty.'

**S** in monosyllables (*bas* 'low,' *las* 'tired,' *gras* 'fat,' *gros* 'big,' etc.), except *ras* 'smooth.' Also in *épais* 'thick,' *exprès* 'positive,' *profès* 'professed' (these two losing their grave accent), *métis* 'mongrel.' — Fem. forms: *basse*, *lasse*, etc. (the Lat. originals, *bassus*, etc., having *ss*).

[76.] Final *c*, *g*, and *x* (spurious sign for *s*) are before *e*, to retain or restore their utterance, written *qu*, *gu*, and *s*. — Ex. *public*: *publique* 'public'; *long*: *longue* 'long'; *heureux*: *heureuse* 'happy.'

NOTE 1. — *Grec* 'Grecian' is in fem. written *grecque* (i.e. *grec-que*, to avoid *gre-que*: 35); and *blanc* 'white,' *franc* 'free,' *sec* 'dry' change *c* to *ch* (*blanche*, *franche*, *sèche*).

NOTE 2. — *Doux* 'sweet,' *faux* 'false,' *roux* 'red' (us'ly of hair), *préfix* 'prefix' are, for historical reasons, in the fem. *douce*, *fausse*, *rousse*, *préfixe*.

[77.] To denote the unaltered pronunciation of final *gu*, a diæresis (6) is placed over the added *e*. — Ex. *aigu* 'sharp': *aigu-ë*.

78. Nouns in *-(t)eur* used appositively as adjectives end in the fem. in *-(t)euse* if derived from French verb-roots, otherwise in *-trice* (Lat. *trix*): cf. 63, b. It is to be noticed, however, that such nouns if denoting a profession chiefly practised by men remain unchanged in the feminine. — Ex. *danseur*: *danseuse* 'dancer'; *chanteur*: *chanteuse* 'singer,' *acteur*: *actrice* 'actor, actress'; — *auteur*, m. f., 'author,' *docteur*, m. f., 'doctor.'

NOTE 1. — *Ambassadeur*, *empereur*, *enchanteur*, *serviteur* form the feminines *ambassadrice*, *impératrice*, *enchanteresse*, *servante*.

NOTE 2. — Nouns in *e* add *-sse* (*traître*: *traïtesse* 'traitor'). *Favori* 'favorite' forms the feminine *favorite*.

79. A few adjectives (*dispos* 'lively,' *fat* 'foppish,' *aquilin* 'aquiline,' etc.) are used only with masc. nouns, and a few others (*crasse* 'gross' etc.) only with feminine nouns.

80. COMPOUND ADJECTIVES. — In compound adjectives, the first member is changed in gender and number only when co-ordinated with the second. e.g. *sourd-muet* 'deaf and dumb'; f. *sourde-muette*; pl. *sourd(e)s-muett(e)s*; but *nu-pieds* 'bare-footed,' *clair-semé* 'thin-sown,' with the determining *nu*- and *clair*- invariable. — Compounds denoting shades of color are invariable: e.g. *rouge-foncé* 'deep-red,' sing. or pl.

## COMPARISON.

[81.] The **comparative** of adjectives is formed by placing *plus* 'more' or *moins* 'less' before the positive, and the **superlative** by putting the definite article (or possessive adjective), before the comparative. — Ex.

<i>beau</i> 'fine'	<i>plus beau</i> 'finer'	<i>le plus beau</i> 'the finest'
<i>beau</i> "	<i>moins beau</i> 'less fine'	<i>le moins beau</i> 'the least fine'
<i>haut</i> 'high'	<i>plus haut</i> 'higher'	<i>mon plus haut</i> 'my highest'

[82.] *Bon, mauvais, petit*. — These adjectives are compared in two different ways (one old and irregular) according to their different sense, as shown below :

<i>bon</i>	{ 'good'	<i>meilleur</i>	<i>le meilleur</i>
	{ ['good-natured'	<i>plus bon</i>	<i>le plus bon</i> ]rare
<i>mauvais</i>	{ 'bad, evil'	<i>pire</i>	<i>le pire</i>
	{ 'bad, of poor quality'	<i>plus mauvais</i>	<i>le plus mauvais</i>
<i>petit</i>	{ 'little'	<i>moindre</i>	<i>le moindre</i>
	{ 'small (in size)'	<i>plus petit</i>	<i>le plus petit</i>

NOTE 1. — The distinction in use between these first and second forms of comparison (especially of *mauvais* and *petit*) is not so absolute as to exclude all option, and popular usage is towards the second or analytic form.

NOTE 2. — From the above adjectives should be carefully distinguished the kindred adverbs *bien*, *mal*, and *peu*, about which cf. 168.

[83.] Some adjectives, such as *principal* 'chief,' *dernier* 'last,' *éternel* 'eternal,' etc., by reason of their sense, admit of no comparison.

84. 'As (so) . . . as' is rendered by *aussi* (or *si* usually in negation) . . . *que*; and 'than' by *que* (or by *de* before a numeral). — Ex. *il est aussi grand que vous* 'he is as tall as you'; *il n'est pas si grand que vous* 'he is not so tall as you'; *il est plus grand que vous* 'he is taller than you'; *il a plus de quinze ans* 'he is more than fifteen years of age.'

NOTE. — 'As much (many) . . . as' is rendered by *autant* (or *tant*, usually in negation) . . . *que*.

[85.] 'Many, more, most' before a noun, or an adjective with a noun, are rendered as follows: 'many' *beaucoup de* (or *plusieurs* 'several'); 'more' *plus de*; 'most' *la plupart de* (with the def. article).

## VI.

## NUMERALS.

[86. HISTORY. — The Numerals are, as a rule, derived from corresponding Latin numerals. It should be noted, however: — That the older French forms for '70, 80, 90,' *septante, octante, nonante*, of which *septante* and *nonante*, found even in classical authors, are yet in use, dialectically, in parts of France, have been supplanted, presumably through Celtic influence, by the awkward forms *soixante-dix* ('sixty-ten'), *quatre-vingts* ('four twenties' cf. 'four-score'), *quatre-vingt-dix* ('eighty-ten'); — b. That '1st' is *premier* (Lat. *primarius*); — c. That the ending *-ième* (Lat. *-esimus*) is used for all ordinals from 'second' upward.]

87. A list of the numerals, though properly belonging to the vocabulary, is, in accordance with common practice, given below.

88. CARDINALS (all masc., except *une*).

1	<i>un</i> (f. <i>une</i> )	14	<i>quatorze</i>
2	<i>deux</i>	15	<i>quinze</i>
3	<i>trois</i>	16	<i>seize</i> ( <i>ei</i> = è long)
4	<i>quatre</i>	17	<i>dix-sept</i> ( <i>x</i> = <i>ss</i> )
5	<i>cinq</i> ( <i>q</i> = <i>k</i> )	18	<i>dix-huit</i> } <i>x</i> = <i>z</i>
6	<i>six</i> ( <i>x</i> = <i>ss</i> )	19	<i>dix-neuf</i> }
7	<i>sept</i> ( <i>sêt</i> )	20	<i>vingt</i> ( <i>gt</i> mute)
8	<i>huit</i> ( <i>ouit</i> )	21	<i>vingt et un</i>
9	<i>neuf</i> ( <i>f</i> = <i>ff</i> )		(or <i>vingt-un</i> )
10	<i>dix</i> ( <i>x</i> = <i>ss</i> )	22	<i>vingt-deux</i> }
11	<i>onze</i>	23	<i>vingt-trois</i> }
12	<i>douze</i>		etc.
13	<i>treize</i> ( <i>ci</i> = è long)	30	<i>trente</i>

\* Hence usually not in dates (*le cinq mars*: etc.), or where no determined noun follows (*six peut être* 'six perhaps').

31	<i>trente et un</i> (or <i>trente-un</i> )	90	<i>quatre-vingt-dix</i>	} (gt in <i>vingt</i> silent)
32	<i>trente-deux</i> : etc.	91	<i>quatre-vingt-onze</i>	
40	<i>quarante</i>	92	<i>quatre-vingt-douze</i>	
50	<i>cinquante</i>	100	<i>cent</i>	} (t mute)
60	<i>soixante</i> ( <i>x = ss</i> )	101	<i>cent un</i>	
70	<i>soixante-dix</i> ( <i>-x = -ss</i> )	102	<i>cent deux</i>	
71	<i>soixante-onze</i> (or <i>soixante-et-onze</i> )	200	<i>deux cents</i>	
72	<i>soixante-douze</i> : etc.	210	<i>deux cent dix</i>	
80	<i>quatre-vingts</i> ( <i>gts</i> silent)	1000	<i>mille</i>	
81	<i>quatre-vingt-un</i> } ( <i>gt</i> in <i>vingt</i>	2000	<i>deux mille</i> } ( <i>ll</i> as in 'ill')	
82	<i>quatre-vingt-deux</i> } silent)	1000000	<i>un million</i>	

**89.** The cardinals up to a million are all uninflected, except that *un* 'one' has the feminine form *une*, and that multiples of *vingt* '20' (i.e. *quatre-vingts*) and *cent* '100' in their usual collective sense have the plural sign *-s* when **not** followed by an added number. — Ex. *quatre-vingts* '80' (lit. 'four twenties'), but *quatre-vingt-deux* '82'; *trois cents* '300,' but *trois cent dix* '310.'

But compare *l'an trois cent* 'the year 300' (*trois cent* denoting a certain year, not a collective sum of years), *page quatre-vingt* 'page 80.'

*Million*, *trillion*, etc., are nouns. They take *s* in the plural, and are construed with *de*: e.g. *deux millions de livres* '2,000,000 books.'

NOTE. — *Mille* (m.) '1000' is *mil* (really the old sing. form) in dates of the Christian era, if it is followed by another number. — Ex. *mil deux cent* (also *douze cent*) *quatorze* '1214'; but *l'an mille* 'the year 1000.'

**90.** Contrary to English usage, French employs cardinal numbers from *deux* (inclusive) on — 1. to denote the **day of the month**: e.g. *le quatre mars* 'the fourth of March'; — 2. after **names of sovereigns** (where, however, *second* is also used): e.g. *Henri quatre* 'Henry IV,' *Henri deux* 'Henry II,' *Charles second* 'Charles II.'

NOTE 1. — In *Charles-Quint* 'Charles V' (the emperor) and *Sixte-Quint* 'Sixtus V' (the pope), the Latin *quintus* survives.



NOTE 2. — In quoting chapter, page, etc., it is optional, as in English, to use cardinals or ordinals, when the numeral follows its noun: e.g. *chapitre trois* or *troisième* 'chapter III' (but only *le troisième chapitre*).

**91. ORDINALS.** — Except for *premier* 'first' and *second* 'second,' the ordinal numbers are made by suffixing *-ième* to the cardinals, of which a final *e* is dropped. *Cinq* 'five' forms *cinquième*, *neuf* 'nine,' *neuvième*; and *unième*, instead of *premier*, is used in '21st,' '31st,' etc.

1st	<i>premier</i>	16th	<i>seizième</i>
2d	<i>second</i> ( <i>c = g</i> ), <i>deuxième</i> ( <i>x = z</i> )	17th	<i>dix-septième</i>
3d	<i>troisième</i>	18th	<i>dix-huitième</i>
4th	<i>quatrième</i>	19th	<i>dix-neuvième</i>
5th	<i>cinquième</i>	20th	<i>vingtième</i>
6th	<i>sixième</i> ( <i>x = ss</i> )	21st	<i>vingt (et) unième</i>
7th	<i>septième</i>	22d	<i>vingt-deuxième</i> : etc.
8th	<i>huitième</i>	30th	<i>trentième</i>
9th	<i>neuvième</i>	40th	<i>quarantième</i>
10th	<i>dixième</i> ( <i>x = z</i> )	50th	<i>cinquantième</i>
11th	<i>onzième</i>	60th	<i>soixantième</i>
12th	<i>douzième</i>	70th	<i>soixante-dixième</i>
13th	<i>treizième</i>	80th	<i>quatre-vingtième</i>
14th	<i>quatorzième</i>	90th	<i>quatre-vingt-dixième</i>
15th	<i>quinzième</i>	100th	<i>centième</i> : etc.

**92.** Ordinals are inflected in gender and number like common adjectives. — Ex. *le premier*, *la première*, *les premiers* (m.) or *premières* (f.) 'the first'; *le* or *la sixième*, *les sixièmes* 'the sixth.'

NOTE 1. — *Deuxième* is optionally used instead of *second* when there are more than two, and always in compounds (*vingt-deuxième* etc.).

NOTE 2. — *Tiers* (f. *tierce*) '3d' and *quart* (f. *quarte*) '4th' are still at times used as regular ordinals: e.g. *une tierce personne* 'a third person'; *un quart voleur* 'a fourth thief' (La Font.).

#### OTHER NUMERALS (Nouns and Adjectives):

**93. COLLECTIVES.** — These are usually formed by suffixing *-aine* to a cardinal. — Ex. *une huitaine* 'a number of eight, eight days,' *une dizaine*

'10,' *une douzaine* 'a dozen,' etc. — Such forms often express an approximate number: *une vingtaine*, *une centaine* 'about 20, about 100.'

94. FRACTIONALS. — *Moitié*, f., 'half' (noun, and construed as such: e.g. *la moitié du temps* 'half of the time'); *demi* 'half' (either invariable and preceding its noun with a hyphen, or variable, f. *demie*, and following its noun: e.g. *une demi-heure* 'a half-hour,' *une heure et demie* 'an hour and a half'); *tiers* (f. *tierce*) 'third,' *quart* 'quarter' (e.g. *un quart d'heure* 'quarter of an hour'); — *cinquième* 'fifth,' *sixième* 'sixth,' etc., the denominator being, as in English, an ordinal.

95. MULTIPLICATIVES. — *Double* 'double,' *triple* 'treble,' *quadruple* 'fourfold,' *quintuple* 'fivefold,' *sextuple* 'sixfold,' etc.

---

## VII.

### PRONOUNS AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

[96. HISTORY. — A. General Reduction of Forms. A few pronominals, retaining two or even three case-forms, have resisted better than nouns and adjectives the analytic tendencies of the language; but the great majority have only one case and one or two genders. The personal pronoun *il*, alone in the whole language, has retained as many as three different case-forms (nom., acc., dat.) in singular and plural, masculine and feminine (cf. 100). The personal pronouns *je*, *tu*, have two forms for the same three cases, and the relative *qui*, two forms for two cases (nom., acc.). All the remaining pronominals were reduced already in the 14th century to one case-form for the singular as well as one for the plural, that form usually representing, here as elsewhere, an original accusative. The neuter gender is lost, and several pronominals, as *mes*, *nos*, *ces*, *qui*, etc., have obliterated even the distinction between masculine and feminine.

B. Double Forms. A plurality of the French pronominals have two different forms: an *independent* (and usually stronger) when they are used so as to have the tone; and a *proclitic* (usually weaker) when they sacrifice their tone in favor of the word they determine. Thus, Lat. *ego* gave the proclitic form *je* (through *eo*, *io*, *jo*) and the independent form *gié* (now replaced by its object-form *moi*); Lat. *mē*, *mīhi* (through *mī-*) gave each the proclitic form *me* and the independent form *moi* (cf. 1, B); Lat. *mēm* gave the proclitic form *mon* and the independent *mien* (1, B); and so on. This difference of form is the result chiefly (as in the examples quoted) of a different treatment of accented and unaccented vowels, but also, in part, of other causes.

**C. Derivation.** With regard to derivation, it may be noted here that the French pronominals for the most part come directly from Latin, though exceptionally they are the result of new formations, by composition, or by the pronominal use of a few nouns and adverbs. Thus, to quote a few cases where the connection is not apparent at first sight: *je, moi* (cf. above); *lui* is from a vulgar Latin dat. *illui* (proclitic accent on *-lui*); it is a proclitic dat., and has also replaced the older independent acc. *ei*; *leur* is from *illorum*; — *ce*, the adjective, is from *eccistum* (= *ecce-istum*), later *icest*, *cest*, *cet* (the last form being yet regularly used before vowels, and as basis of the feminine *cette*); *ce*, the neuter, is from *eccehoc* (*iço, ça, ce*); — *celui* is from *ecc'illui* (*icelui, celui*: but the fem. *celle* from *ecc'illam*); — *on* is from *homo*; — *rien* from *rem* (acc. of *res*); — *y* from *ibi*; — *en* from *inde*: etc.]

**97.** The French pronouns and pronominal adjectives, like the English, are **Personal** (including *Reflexive*), **Possessive**, **Demonstrative**, **Interrogative**, **Relative**, and **Indefinite**.

**98.** Most of the pronominal words have a double form in French (as more exceptionally in English: cf. *my, mine*). When they are closely combined with the word they determine, they lose their accent-stress in favor of that word, and usually receive a shorter or lighter form than when they are used more independently, and as such have the tone. We then have:

a. A *proclitic* (usually called **conjunctive**, or **adjective**) *form*, which is used when the pronominal is combined closely with a verb or with a noun; and

b. An *independent* (usually called **disjunctive** or pure **pronoun**) *form*, which is used when the pronominal is separated from the verb or the noun it determines.

No name for the two classes of pronominal forms described above has received sanction by uniform usage. The terminology adopted below (**conjunctive**: **disjunctive** for the personal pronouns, and **adjectives**: **pronouns** for the other pronominals), though in some respects open to objection, is the terminology preferred by French grammarians.

[The author would, indeed, prefer the uniform use of *proclitic*: *independent*, but he has not ventured to adopt a terminology so much deviating from common usage (cf., however, Lücking. Mätzner adopts *conjunctive*: *disjunctive* throughout).]

**99.** All monosyllabic pronominals in *-e* (except only the demonstrative adjective *cē*: 107, a), and also *la*, drop their vowel before a vowel-sound (e.g. *j'ai* for *je ai*, etc.), as already described in 27, 27. 2.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS (*Reflexive* included).

**100.** The Personal Pronouns are either a. **conjunctive** or b. **disjunctive** (98).

a. *Conjunctive* (construed immediately with the verb as subject or object without preposition):

b. *Disjunctive* (not so construed):

SINGULAR.	PERS.	NOM.	ACC.	DAT.	NOM.	ACC.
	I	<i>je</i> I	<i>me</i> me   to me		<i>moi</i> I   me	
	II	<i>tu</i> thou	<i>te</i> thee   to thee		<i>toi</i> thou   thee	
	III m.	<i>il</i> he (it)	<i>le</i> him, it	<i>lui</i> to him (it)	<i>lui</i> he   him	
		f.	<i>elle</i> she (it)	<i>la</i> her (it)	<i>lui</i> to her (it)	<i>elle</i> she   her
	m. f.		<i>se</i> refl.   refl.		<i>soi</i> (or <i>lui, elle</i> ) refl.	
	PLURAL.	I	<i>nous</i> we   us   to us			<i>nous</i> we   us
		II	you	<i>vous</i> you   to you		<i>vous</i> you   you
		III m.	<i>ils</i> they (m.)	<i>les</i> them	<i>leur</i> to them	<i>eux</i> they (m.)   them (m.)
			f.	<i>elles</i> they (f.)		<i>les</i> them
m. f.			<i>se</i> refl.   refl.		<i>soi</i> ( <i>eux, elles</i> ) refl.	

NOTE 1. — As seen above, *il, elle, ils, elles* have each three different case-forms, and *je* and *tu* two, while all the remaining pronouns have only one. Identical forms may, however, represent different cases (e.g. *nous aimons* 'we love'; *Il nous aime* 'He loves us'; *Il nous écrit* 'He writes to us'; — *Je lui parle* 'I speak to him (or to her)'; *Lui* (note 3) *le fera* 'He will do it'; *Qui aimez-vous?* *Lui* 'Whom do you love? Him.' *Je parle de lui* 'I speak of him').

NOTE 2. — *Vous* 'you' may, precisely as in English, refer to one person or several. *Tu* 'thou' is used between intimate friends and relatives (cf. Syntax).

NOTE 3. — To render a conjunctive personal pronoun emphatic, the disjunctive form is placed before it, or after the predicate: e.g. *Moi, je l'aime* or *Je l'aime, moi* 'I love him.' For the 3d person, the disjunctive form alone is sometimes used: e.g. *Lui le pense* 'He thinks so.'

NOTE 4. — To a disjunctive pronoun is often appended the emphatic *-même* 'self' (107): e.g. *moi-même* 'myself,' *vous-même* (or *-mêmes*) 'yourself (or -selves).'

**101. THE PRONOMINAL PARTICLES *en* AND *y*.** — With the conjunctive pronouns are also reckoned the particles *en* (Lat. *inde*) 'thereof = of it, of them' and *y* (Lat. *ibi*) 'to it, to them,' which are used as a genitive and a dative case respectively of the 3d person, in either gender or number, with reference to things (exceptionally with reference to persons, especially if understood in an indefinite sense; or to personified objects). — Ex.

<i>Il en parle.</i>	He speaks of it.
<i>Laissez ce livre (ces livres),</i>	Leave this book (these books),
<i>j'en ai besoin.</i>	I need it (them).
<i>Voilà du papier, prenez-</i>	There is paper, take some (=
<i>en.</i>	of it).
<i>Vos raisons sont bonnes, je</i>	Your reasons are good, I yield
<i>m'y rends.</i>	to them.
<i>Je m'y fie.</i>	I rely on it.

## 102. POSITION OF THE CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUN.

A. Unlike English, French usually places the conjunctive pronouns, whether construed as subjects or objects, immediately

**before the verb:** e.g. *je le vois* 'I see him'; *je vous le donne* 'I give it to you'; *je ne le vois pas* 'I do not see him.'

In two constructions, especially, they **follow the verb** immediately, as in English, being then appended to it by a hyphen, viz.:

a. The subject-pronoun (*je, tu, etc.*) in interrogative clauses: e.g. *ai-je* ? 'have I'; *l'avez-vous* 'have you it?'

b. The object-pronoun (*me, te, etc.*) in affirmative imperative-clauses — *me, te* being then, however, changed to *moi, toi*, except before *en* —; e.g. *donne-le* 'give it' (but *ne le donne pas* 'give it not'); *donnez-le-lui* 'give it to him';  *aimez-moi* 'love me,'  *donnez-moi* 'give me,'  *donnez-m'en* 'give me some.'

B. Of several object-pronouns those of the **3d person** come **nearest** the verb (whether before or after). Of the latter, if more than one occur, the order of sequence is 1. *se*, 2. *le* (*la, les*), 3. *lui* (*leur*).—Ex. *il me le donne* 'he gives it to me';  *donnez-le-moi*;  *je le lui donne* 'I give it to him';  *donnez-le-leur* 'give it to them';  *il se le promet* 'he promises it to himself.'

The pronominal particles *en, y* always follow other conjunctives: e.g. *il m'en donne* 'he gives me some';  *donne-m'en* 'give me some';  *il lui en donne* 'he gives him some';  *donne-leur en* 'give them some.'—*En* follows *y*: *envoyez-y-en* 'send some there.'

Farther examples to 102:

*Il l'aime.*

*Aimez-le (-la).*

*Il me donne un livre.*

*Aimez-moi (acc.).*

*Donnez-moi (dat.) un livre.*

*Ne l'aimez pas.*

*Elle me l'a donné.*

*Il le lui dira.*

*Il vous en parle.*

*Donnez-le-moi, s'il vous  
platt.*

*Envoyez-les-leur.*

He loves him (her).

Love him (her).

He gives me a book.

Love me.

Give me a book.

Do not love him.

She has given it to me.

He will tell it to him (her).

He speaks to you of it.

Give it to me, if you please  
(*lit.* if it pleases you).

Send them to them.

*Il se l'est promis.*

*Je le lui ai donné.*

*Je lui en parle.*

*Il s'en amuse.*

*Elle leur y en enverra.*

*Dites-le-lui.*

*Donnez-m'en (nous en)*

*Conduisez-nous-y.*

*Je vous y en enverrai.*

He has promised it to himself.

I have given it to him.

I am speaking to him about it.

He is amused at it.

She will send them some there.

Tell it to him.

Give me some (us some).

Take us there (or to it).

I will send you some there.

For farther details, see Syntax, 254-6.

**103. THE REFLEXIVE EXPRESSION.** — French differs in its reflexive expression from English, the general principle being as follows:

[104.] **Preceded by no Preposition**, the unemphatic reflexive for the 1st and 2d person is simply the object-form of the conjunctive personal pronoun (*me* 'me' = 'myself': acc. or dat.; *te*, *nous*, *vous*), while for the 3d person *se* is used for sing. or plur. ('himself, herself, themselves': acc. or dat.). — Ex. *Je me loue* 'I praise myself (lit. me).' *Il (elle) se loue* 'He (she) praises himself (herself).'

If the reflexive is emphatic (as in 'He praises himself!'), the pronoun is repeated after the verb in its disjunctive form, usually (though not necessarily) strengthened by an added *-même*. — Ex. *Je me loue moi-même* 'I praise myself' (lit. 'I praise me myself'). *Il se parle à lui-même* 'He speaks to himself' (*à lui-même* because *se* is in the dat.; about *lui* for *soi* cf. note, 105).

[105.] **Preceded by a preposition**, the reflexive is the disjunctive form alone, usually (though not necessarily) strengthened by *-même*. — Ex. *Je pense à moi-même* 'I think of myself,' *Nous parlons de nous-mêmes* 'We speak of ourselves.'

NOTE. — *Soi* (*soi-même*) is rarely used except in the singular, and in general statements. In other cases the personal object-forms *lui*, *elle*, *eux*, *elles* are preferred. — Ex. *Chacun pense à soi* (or *soi-même*) 'Every-

body thinks of himself.' *La vertu est aimable en soi* 'Virtue is lovable in itself.' *On doit rarement parler de soi* 'One ought seldom to speak of himself.' — But: *Les guerres entraînent des maux avec elles* 'Wars bring evils with them.' *Il (elle) ne songe qu'à lui (elle) -même* 'He (she) thinks only of himself (herself).'

## POSSESSIVES.

**106.**— The Possessives are either a. **adjectives** or b. **pronouns** (cf. 98).

a. *Adjectives*  
(combined with a noun):

b. *Pronouns*  
(construed as nouns):

ONE POSSESSOR.	NUMB.	MASC.	FEM.		MASC.	FEM.	
	Sing.	<b>mon</b>	<b>ma</b> (or <b>mon</b> )	} my	<b>le mien</b>	<b>la mienne</b>	} mine
	Pl.	<b>mes</b>			<b>les miens</b>	<b>les miennes</b>	
	Sing.	<b>ton</b>	<b>ta</b> (or <b>ton</b> )	} thy	<b>le tien</b>	<b>la tienne</b>	} thine
	Pl.	<b>tes</b>			<b>les tiens</b>	<b>les tiennes</b>	
SEVERAL POSSESSORS.	Sing.	<b>son</b>	<b>sa</b> (or <b>son</b> )	} his, her, its	<b>le sien</b>	<b>la sienne</b>	} his, hers, its
	Pl.	<b>ses</b>			<b>les siens</b>	<b>les siennes</b>	
	Sing.	<b>notre</b>	} our		<b>le nôtre</b>	<b>la nôtre</b>	} ours
	Pl.	<b>nos</b>			<b>les nôtres</b>	<b>les nôtres</b>	
	Sing.	<b>votre</b>	} your		<b>le vôtre</b>	<b>la vôtre</b>	} yours
	Pl.	<b>vos</b>			<b>les vôtres</b>	<b>les vôtres</b>	
	Sing.	<b>leur</b>	} their		<b>le leur</b>	<b>la leur</b>	} theirs
	Pl.	<b>leurs</b>			<b>les leurs</b>	<b>les leurs</b>	

**NOTE 1.**— The adjective feminine-forms *mon*, *ton*, *son* are used before a vowel or *h* 'mute':— Ex. *mon âme* (f.) 'my soul'; *mon histoire* (f.) 'my history.'

[*Ma*, *ta*, *sa* are the regular feminine forms, and were formerly, like the definite article *la*, abbreviated to *m'*, *t'*, *s'* before a vowel-sound, a con-



struction which has survived in the expressions *m'amour*, *m'amie* (also, incorrectly, *ma mie*), and *tante* (for *t'ante?*). The anomalous feminine forms *mon*, *ton*, *son*, introduced in the 12th century, became regular in the 14th.]

NOTE 2. — When the pronoun-forms are preceded by *de* or *à*, the usual contractions, according to 41, take place. — Ex. *du mien* (for *de le mien*), *au mien* (for *à le mien*), etc.

NOTE 3. — Two possessive adjectives cannot determine one noun. Thus, instead of *Mon et ton frère*, we must say *mon frère et le tien* 'my brother and thine.'

### DEMONSTRATIVES.

107. The Demonstratives are either a. **adjectives** or b. **pronouns** (cf. 98).

a. *Adjectives*  
(combined with a noun):

b. *Pronouns*  
(construed as nouns):

NUM.	MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
Sing. Pl.	<b>ce</b> ( <i>cef</i> ) this, that <i>ces</i> these, those	<i>cette</i> <i>celle</i>	<b>celui</b> this, that (one) <i>ceux</i> these, those (ones)	<i>celle</i> <i>celles</i>
	NOTE. — To the noun determined by this pronoun may be suffixed <i>-ci</i> 'here' or <i>-là</i> 'there' to denote nearness or remoteness. — Ex. <i>ce vin-ci</i> 'this wine,' <i>cette fille-là</i> 'that girl.'		NOTE. — Except when followed by a relative pr. or <i>de</i> , these pronouns regularly take the suffix <i>-ci</i> 'here' or <i>-là</i> 'there,' denoting nearness or remoteness. — Ex. <i>Ceux-ci sont bons</i> 'these are good.'	
Sing.			neut. <b>ce</b> this, that, it (comp. <i>ceci</i> , <i>cela</i> or <i>ça</i> : cf. note 2)	
Sing. Pl.			<i>même</i> <i>mêmes</i> } same, self (cf. note 4)	

NOTE 1. — The adjective masculine form **ce** is used before consonants, and **cet** (the more original form: cf. 96, C) before vowels and *h* 'mute.' The plural (*ces*) comes from *ce* and the feminine (*cette*) from *cet*. Cf. 73. — Ex. *ce garçon* 'this boy'; *cet enfant* 'this child,' *cet homme* 'this man'; *ces garçons* (or *filles*) 'these boys (or girls)'; *cette fille* 'this girl.'

NOTE 2. — The pronoun-form **ce** (alone, or compounded with *-ci* 'here' and *-là* 'there' to *ceci*, *cela* or by contraction *ça*), refers to an unnamed object or to a sentence, expressed or understood. — Ex. *Ce qu'il dit est vrai* 'What (That which) he says is true.' *C'est bon* 'That is good' (viz. something already spoken of, or pointed to). *Voulez-vous ceci ou cela?* 'Do you wish this or that?' *Cela* (or *ça*) *veut dire* . . . 'That means . . .'

NOTE 3. — *Même* (*mêmes*), masc. or fem., is either a pronominal adjective, being placed before its noun in the sense of 'same' or after it in sense of 'self-same, very': e.g. *le même homme* 'the same man'; *ses gestes mêmes* 'his very gestures'; — or it is a pure pronoun, being used independently in the sense of 'same,' or suffixed to a disjunctive personal pronoun in sense of '-self, -selves': e.g. *son livre est le même* 'his book is the same'; *il s'aime lui-même* 'he loves himself.'

In sense of 'even,' *même* is an adverb, and invariable.

NOTE 4. — The definite article in its original use as a determinative is sometimes met with. — Ex. *N'agis pas de la sorte* 'Do not act in that manner.'

### INTERROGATIVES.

108. The Interrogatives are either a. pronominal adjectives or b. pure pronouns (cf. 98).

a. *Adjectives*  
(combined with a noun):

b. *Pronouns*  
(construed as nouns):

NUMB.	MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
	Referring to persons or things:		a. Referring to persons or things:	
Sing.	<i>quel</i> } which?	<i>quelle</i>	<i>lequel</i> } which one?	<i>laquelle</i>
Pl.	<i>quels</i> } what?	<i>quelles</i>	<i>lesquels</i> } which ones?	<i>lesquelles</i>

		b. Referring to persons alone : Sg. and pl. <i>qui</i> who (Acc. whom) ?
		c. Referring to things alone : Conjunctive (cf. 100) <i>que</i> } what ? Disjunctive <i>quoi</i> }

NOTE 1. — In *lequel*, etc., *le* is nothing but the definite article, and it is contracted in the usual way (21) with a preceding *de* or *à*. Hence *de lequel* = *duquel*, *à lequel* = *auquel*, *de lesquels* = *desquels*, etc.

NOTE 2. — The interrogative *qui* is singular or plural, nominative ('who') or accusative ('whom').

NOTE 3. — *Que* and *quoi* supplement one another as conjunctive and disjunctive forms (cf. 100). *Que* occurs in the nominative only after verbs of condition (*être, devenir*, etc.). *Quoi* is used after prepositions and absolutely (without verb) in exclamation and interrogation. — Ex. *Qu'est-ce ?* 'What is it?' *Que dit-il ?* 'What does he say?' *De quoi parlez-vous ?* 'Of what do you speak?' *Quoi !* 'What !'

NOTE 4. — About the use of *où* as a pronoun, cf. 111.

### RELATIVES.

#### 109. The Relatives are all

##### *Pronouns*

(following the word or words referred to) :

	MASC.	FEM.
Sing. and pl.	Nom. <i>qui</i> (Acc. <i>que</i> ; after preposition <i>qui</i> )	
Sing.	<i>lequel</i>	} who, which, that
Pl.	<i>lesquels</i>	
Sing.	(Neut.) <i>quoi</i> 'what,' disj. (i.e. after preposit'n)	

Exceptionally *lequel* (*laquelle*, etc.) is used adjectively before a noun.

**110.** The relatives *qui*, *lequel* differ from the interrogative in the following respects :

*Qui* : *a.* It has the direct object-form *que* (except when used absolutely without reference to any preceding word, as in *Qui j'aime, je l'aime bien* 'Whom I love, I love well'). — *b.* It may be used for both **persons or things**, except after prepositions, where, like the interrogative, it can refer only to **persons**.

*Lequel* 'which,' less often 'who,' is rarely used except after prepositions, or for purposes of more specific distinction of gender or number in case of doubtful reference (276. a).

**111. THE PRONOMINAL PARTICLES *dont* AND *où*.** — *Dont* (Lat. *de-unde*) 'whence' is often used for *de* with a relative in sense of 'of (from) which, of whom, whose'; and *où* (Lat. *ubi*) is generally used for *à* (or *dans*) and a relative or interrogative with reference to place or time, in sense of 'where, when, to which.' — Ex. *L'homme dont* (= *de qui*) *vous parlez est mort* 'The man of whom you speak is dead.' *La maison où* (= *dans laquelle*) *je loge* 'The house where (in which) I live.'

NOTE 1. — 'Whose' ('of which') is rendered by *dont*, or, after a preposition, by *duquel* (*de laquelle*, etc.). The construction of the sentence is in both cases the same as if 'of whom' (etc.) were used in English, observing that *dont* must head the relative clause. — Ex. *Le fils dont le père est malade* 'The son whose father is sick.' *L'homme avec le fils duquel vous êtes arrivé* 'The man with whose son you have arrived.'

NOTE 2. — *D'où* means 'whence' and *par où* 'by which, where.'

## INDEFINITES.

112. The Indefinites are of three kinds, viz. : —

a. *Adjectives*

(combined with a noun) :

b. *Pronouns*

(construed as nouns) :

MASC. AND FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
S. <i>chaque</i> each, every	S. <i>chacun</i> each, every (one)	<i>chacune</i>
S. <i>quelque</i> some Pl. <i>quelques</i> some, or a few	S. <i>quelqu'un</i> somebody, anybody Pl. <i>quelques-uns</i> some S. <i>quelque chose</i> something	<i>quelqu'une</i>  <i>quelques-unes</i>
S. <i>quelconque</i> (after its noun) whatever Pl. <i>quelconques</i>	S. <i>qui, quiconque</i> whoever	
	S. <i>on</i> ( <i>l'on</i> ) one, people S. <i>autrui</i> (m.) others S. <i>personne</i> (m.) anybody (indefinite); nobody, us'ly with <i>ne</i> S. <i>rien</i> (m.) anything; nothing, us'ly with <i>ne</i>	
	S. <i>l'un l'autre</i> Pl. <i>les uns les autres</i>	<i>l'une l'autre</i> <i>les unes les autres</i>

} each other

c. *Adjectives or Pronouns.*

- m. *nul*, f. *nulle* (rarely pl.) no, none : us'ly with *ne*  
 m. *aucun*, f. *aucune* (rarely pl.) any one (with ref. to a distinct noun); no, nobody, none, usually with *ne*  
 S. m. *tout*, f. *toute* every, all, everything  
 Pl. m. *tous*, f. *toutes* all  
 S. m. *tel*, f. *telle* } such, *un tel* such a (one)  
 Pl. m. *tels*, f. *telles* }  
 S. m. *l'un et l'autre*, -f. *l'une et l'autre* both  
 Pl. m. *les uns et les autres*, f. *les unes et les autres* both kinds  
 S. m. f. *plusieurs* several

NOTE 1. — As seen above, about one half of the indefinite pronouns do not distinguish gender and number.

NOTE 2. — The adjectives — as also the pronouns if referring to a preceding or following noun — may be used indifferently for either persons or things. But pronouns used absolutely refer to persons alone, *tout* and *rien* excepted, which have a neuter sense.

NOTE 3. — *L'on* for *on*. — It is customary, though largely optional, to insert a euphonic *l'* before *on* when preceded by a word ending in a vowel-sound, especially by *et*, *si*, *ou*, *où*, *que*. — Ex. *si l'on dit*; *et* (*t* always silent) *l'on dit*. *On*, however, is preferred, if followed by an *l*-sound: e.g. *si on l'a dit*; and *qu'on* is preferred to *que l'on*, except before a *k*-sound: e.g. *qu'on dit*; *que l'on commence*.

This *l'*, though now purely euphonic, is virtually the definite article, which was once freely used before *on*, as by origin a noun (Lat. *homo*).

NOTE 4. — *Aucun*, *personne*, *rien*. — *Aucun* (adj., or pron. referring to a distinct noun) 'any one, anybody,' *personne* (pron. used indefinitely) 'anybody,' and *rien* 'anything,' are usually construed with *ne* (placed before the verb) 'not,' and mean then resp. 'no, no one; — nobody; — nothing.' This meaning they also have, by ellipsis, without *ne* whenever the verb is omitted, and in certain phrases. — Ex.

<i>Aucun ami ne me reste.</i>	No friend remains for me.
<i>Il n'aime aucune de ces filles.</i>	He loves no one of these girls.
<i>Il n'aime personne.</i>	He loves nobody.
<i>Je n'ai rien.</i>	I have nothing.
— <i>Qui vient? Personne.</i>	Who comes? Nobody.
<i>À quoi pensez-vous? À rien.</i>	What are you thinking of? Nothing.
<i>Dieu a créé le monde de rien</i> (rien here noun).	God has created the world of nothing.

NOTE 5. — *Tout* may mean 'every, any, all, whole, everything' (as adverb 'wholly') according to its construction, as described in the *Syntax*.  
For further particulars about the indefinite pronouns, cf. *Syntax*.

---

## VIII.

### VERBS.

[113. HISTORY. — The Latin verb appears in French considerably remodelled, but its forms have not suffered such a sweeping reduction as those of other parts of speech. The actual loss of a synthetic form (like *amor* 'I am loved,' etc.) is generally compensated for by the use of verb-phrases (*je suis aimé* 'I am loved,' etc.), or, exceptionally, by the creation of a new synthetic form (like *aimer-ai*: cf. A). The more important features of the French verbs as compared with the Latin are those described below.

A. **General Remodelling.** All the synthetic forms of the **passive** — its past participle (Lat. *amatus*: Fr. *aimé*) alone excepted — are lost in French. The passive voice is there made periphrastically, as in English, by the aid of the auxiliary *être* 'be' (Lat. *amari*: Fr. *être aimé* 'be loved') — a practice not uncommon already in vulgar Latin. Some of the **past tenses** in the active are also, in like manner, expressed by the aid of the auxiliary *avoir* 'have' (Lat. *amaveram*: Fr. *j'avais aimé* 'I had loved'). — Farther, the **supine** has disappeared, the **gerund** has coalesced with the present participle, and the **deponent verbs** have all assumed active forms (Lat. *imitari*: Fr. *imiter*, inflected like *aimer*).

The Latin form for the **future** is also lost in French; but it is replaced by another synthetical future form. Already in the vulgar Latin of the 6th century, the expression *amare habeo* 'I have to love' had almost en-

tirely supplanted the regular future *amabo* 'I shall love.' The Romance tongues all adopted this manner of expressing futurity, and in French the two elements (*aimer* + *ai*) early coalesced into one (*aimerai*, *ai* retaining, in the main, its own inflexion). Their independent value then faded out of memory, and the composite nature of the future was rediscovered only about a century ago. — Similarly the French conditional, which has no exact equivalent in Latin, was formed from the phrase *amare habebam* (in Fr. *aimer-ais* 'I should love').

Of Latin synthetical forms there remain in French the present, imperfect, and perfect indicative (Lat. *amo*, *amaban*, *amavi* : Fr. *aime*, *aimais*, *aimai*), the present and pluperfect subjunctive (Lat. *amem*, *amavissem* : Fr. *aime*, *aimasse*), the imperative (*ama* : *aime*), the infinitive (*amare* : *aimer*), and the present and past participles (acc. *amantem*, *amatum* : *aimant*, *aimé*).

**Personal endings** are in French distinguished, in the main, as in Latin, allowing, of course, for phonetic changes, and for certain tendencies toward uniformity, as that reducing the Lat. endings of the 1st pl. present, *-amus*, *-emus*, *-imus*, into one, *-ons* (virtually from neither, but from *-umus* as in *sumus*). — Among more anomalous changes may be mentioned here: by analogy, apparently, with the 2d singular of personal tenses, an organic *s* (or, *x*, after *au*, *eu*) was added to the 1st singular present and preterit of most verbs outside of the I conjugation (e.g. Lat. *rūmpo* : Fr. *romp-s*), unless, indeed, the stem already terminated in *-s* (e.g. pres. *fin-is* : cf. below); to the 1st singular imperfect (hence also conditional) of all verbs (e.g. Lat. *rumpebam* : Fr. *rompai-s*); and to 2d sing. imperative of *re*-verbs, most *oir*-verbs, and *er*-verbs before *en* (e.g. Lat.  *rumpe* : Fr. *romp-s*; Lat. *recipe* : Fr. *reçois-s*; Lat. *dona* : Fr. *donne*, but *donnes-en*, cf. 127). This *s* has persisted in the language in spite of the efforts of authors like Corneille, Molière, Racine, and others to have it removed.

Further, the ending *-t*, characteristic of the 3d person sing. in Lat. (*ama-t*, etc.) is in French lost in the present and preterit indicative of verbs of the first conjugation, and in the future indicative and present subjunctive of all verbs (e.g. pres. *il aime*, pret. *il aima*, fut. *il aimera*, etc.). Only before a following subject-pronoun this *t* is restored, in analogy with forms preserving it, but it is then written as if simply euphonic (e.g. *a-t-il*, *aime-t-il*, *aima-t-il*, etc.).

**B. Conjugations.** Historically, the French verbs may be divided into a **living** and a **dead** conjugation. The former, comprising, originally, derivatives of Latin verbs in *-are* and *-ire*, has, from the oldest times, been encroaching on the latter, and has also appropriated all new verbs formed within the language from its own resources or borrowed from without, and made all these conform to one of its two models of inflection. The latter



comprising, originally, Latin verbs in *-ēre*, *-ēre*, now consists of such of these verbs, besides a few others, as have not yielded to the unifying tendencies of the 'living' or growing and encroaching conjugation.

It is natural that the living conjugation, comprising more than four-fifths of all French verbs, and implying only two models of inflection, should also be called the regular; but it is customary to count to the regular verbs also one large group of the other conjugation, viz. verbs in *-re*, the great majority of these being inflected regularly according to one model. As irregular are counted all verbs that do not conform to any of the three models of the Regular conjugation.

The infinitive of French verbs can end only in *-er*, *-ir*, *-re*, or *-oir*.

Verbs in *-er* (amounting to about 6500 out of the whole number of about 7500 French verbs) included at first only Latin verbs in *-are*. Later, however, many Latin verbs in *-ēre* and *-ēre*, and a number of Germanic, and of new-created verbs, have been added to the *-er* class. All, except *aller*, *envoyer*, follow one model of conjugation.

Verbs in *-ir* (amounting to more than 600) consist of Lat. verbs in *-ire*, and also, by transfer, of several Latin verbs in *-ēre*, *-ēre*, *-escēre*, (*-iscēre*), as well as of Germanic, and new-created verbs. In their inflection most of them have been greatly influenced by the verbs in *-escere* (*-iscere*). The inchoative syllable *-esc-* (*-isc-*) of these verbs, in French changed to *is(s)*, has entered into the present-forms (the infinitive excepted) and the imperfect indicative of the great majority of the *ir*-verbs (only 24 simple verbs having resisted its intercalation): e.g. Lat. *florescim*: Fr. *fleurissons*; but also Lat. *finim*: *finissons*; Lat. *agim*: Fr. *agissons*, etc. The inchoative syllable (no longer imparting an inchoative sense) is *iss* whenever followed by a vowel, otherwise *i(s)*: hence *floresco*: *fleuris*; *florescit*: *fleurit*; *ago*: *ag-is*, etc.

Verbs in *-re* (amounting to about 325) come from Latin verbs in *-ēre* or *-ēre*. About two-thirds of these follow one model of conjugation.

Verbs in *-oir* (55) come from Latin verbs in *-ēre* or *-ēre*. All the primary verbs in *-oir* differ more or less in their mode of conjugation.]

**114.** With regard to their use, French verbs, like English, are either **Transitive** ('going over' to, affecting some object: i.e.) having a direct object, or **Intransitive**, accompanied by no direct object. In special uses these verbs may be either **Reflexive**, having a reflexive pronoun as their (direct or indirect) object, or **Impersonal**, having the indefinite ('non-personal') *il* 'it' for their subject.

**115.** The conjugation of a verb involves, as in English, a distinction of **Voice, Mood, Tense, Number and Person.**

For their form and meaning the student is referred directly to the paradigms below.

**116. CLASSIFICATION OF FRENCH VERBS.**—The classification of verbs for practical purposes means nothing more or less than their arrangement in such a manner as to be most easily learned. This is accomplished by so grouping that the greatest number possible may be conjugated by the aid of as few type-verbs as practicable, each representing a **regular** conjugation, while the remaining verbs as **irregular** are treated by themselves.

**NOTE 1.**—The same principle of classification to some extent may be applied also to the **irregular** verbs. Thus, as will be seen, 30 verbs in *-indre*, 4 in *-oir*, and so on, are all conjugated precisely alike, though treated as irregular.

[**NOTE 2.**—Verbs that are regular or irregular according to the actual state of the language may from an historical point of view be the very opposite. Many regular verbs have in fact deviated from their old conjugation, while many irregular verbs have adhered to it. The actual and the historical point of view should not be confused.

A good historical classification of the French verbs, based on their own vitality as models, not on their adherence to old models (cf. 113, B), and adopted in recent historical grammars (Brunot, Clédat, etc.), is that of A. The **Living Conjugation** ("*la conjugaison vivante*"), including *-er* and root-extending *-ir* verbs (119, a), and B. The **Dead Conjugation** ("*la conjugaison morte*"), including *-re*, *-oir*, and radical *-ir* verbs.—The practical classification followed below (nearly coinciding with the above historical) is that adopted by Mätzner and some other recent authorities.]

**117.** The French verbs are most conveniently classified, according to the termination of their infinitives as follows:

[118.] **Ist or *er*-Class**, comprising all verbs—about 6500 out of the 7500 in the language—whose infinitive ends in *-er*: e.g. *aim-er* 'love.'

*Irregular.* Only two verbs of this class (*aller* 'go,' *envoyer* 'send') are irregular.

[119.] **II d or *ir*-Class**, comprising all verbs — more than 600 — whose infinitive ends in *-ir*: e.g. *fin-ir* 'finish.' These verbs are of two distinct sorts, viz.:

a. *Regular or Root-extending ir-verbs*, which all — about 550 — in their **present** forms (the subjunctive and imperative included, but the infinitive excepted) and in their **imperfect indicative** extend the root by adding to it the syllable *iss* or *is* (of inchoative origin, cf. 113, B): e.g. *fin-is(s)* instead of simply *fin*.

b. *Irregular or Radical ir-verbs*, whose root-form is never extended. Nearly 90 verbs (only 24 simple) belong to this division. Being divided, in their turn, into several discordant groups (cf. 159, 160), they are all classified as irregular.

[120.] **III d or *re*-Class**, comprising all verbs — about 325 — whose infinitive ends in *-re*: e.g. *romp-re* 'break.'

*Irregular.* About a third of these verbs (36 simple) deviate more or less from the model verb, and are, in their turn, subdivided into discordant groups (cf. 159 d, 160).

[121.] **IV th or *oir*-Class**, comprising all verbs — about 55 — whose infinitive ends in *-oir*: e.g. *recevoir* 'receive.' As all the primary verbs of this class have some peculiarity of their own, the whole class is treated as **irregular** (cf. 160, d).

**NOTE.** — In some grammars, especially French, verbs in *-oir* are classified as forming the III d regular conjugation (those in *-re* then forming the IV th). Its model verb is *recevoir* 'receive,' a compound of *re-* and the primary verb *-cevoir* (Lat. *capere*), which is not in use alone: cf. 161. *Recevoir*, however, serves as a perfect model only for other compounds of *-cevoir* (4), and in the main for *devoir*.

The regular and irregular verbs will be described separately below.

#### REGULAR VERBS.

**122. SIMPLE VERB-FORMS.** — The simple verb-forms (i.e. those made without the aid of independent auxiliaries, as in English *love, loved*) are made by adding to different stems of the verb certain endings. These endings (in the paradigms below marked by heavy type) are with few exceptions identical for all verbs.

123. As model-verbs for the three regular verb-classes may serve: I. *aim-er* 'love'; II. *fin-ir* 'finish'; III. *romp-re* 'break.'

Verbs of the I and III conjugation have two stems: one the radical [*aim-*, *romp-*], and the other the infinitive [*aim-er*, *romp-r-* (or *romp-re-*)]. Those of the II have, besides, one in *-is(s)* [*fin-*, *fin-ir-*, *fin-is(s)-*].

## INDICATIVE

*Present*

S. 1. <i>j'aim-e</i> I love (am loving, do love)	<i>je fin-is</i> <sup>1</sup> I finish, etc.	<i>je romp-s</i> I break, etc.
2. <i>tu aim-es</i>	<i>tu fin-is</i>	<i>tu romp-s</i>
3. <i>il aim-e</i>	<i>il fin-i-t</i>	<i>il romp-t</i> <sup>2</sup>
Pl. 1. <i>nous aim-ons</i>	<i>nous fin-iss-ons</i>	<i>nous romp-ons</i>
2. <i>vous aim-ez</i>	<i>vous fin-iss-ez</i>	<i>vous romp-ez</i>
3. <i>ils aim-ent</i>	<i>ils fin-iss-ent</i>	<i>ils romp-ent</i>

*Imperfect (Passé Descriptif)*

S. 1. <i>j'aim-ais</i> <sup>3</sup> I loved (was loving, did love)	<i>je fin-iss-ais</i> I finished, etc.	<i>je romp-ais</i> I broke, etc.
2. <i>tu aim-ais</i>	<i>tu fin-iss-ais</i>	<i>tu romp-ais</i>
3. <i>il aim-ait</i>	<i>il fin-iss-ait</i>	<i>il romp-ait</i>
Pl. 1. <i>nous aim-ions</i>	<i>nous fin-iss-ions</i>	<i>nous romp-ions</i>
2. <i>vous aim-iez</i>	<i>vous fin-iss-iez</i>	<i>vous romp-iez</i>
3. <i>ils aim-aient</i>	<i>ils fin-iss-aient</i>	<i>ils romp-aient</i>

*Preterit (Passé Narratif)*

S. 1. <i>j'aim-ai</i> <sup>3</sup> I loved	<i>je fin-is</i> <sup>1</sup> I finished	<i>je romp-is</i> I broke
---	---	------------------------------

<sup>1</sup> For the different origin of the Pres. and the Pret. *finis*, cf. 113, B.

<sup>2</sup> This *t* is always dropped after *c*, *d*, *t*, i.e. in nearly all verbs of III conjugation, as *il vend* (from *vend-re* 'sell') etc.

<sup>3</sup> In verbs *ai* not final pronounced as *è*, but final as *é* (cf. 15).

2. <i>tu aim-as</i>	<i>tu fin-is</i>	<i>tu romp-is</i>
3. <i>il aim-a</i>	<i>il fin-it</i>	<i>il romp-it</i>
Pl. 1. <i>nous aim-âmes</i>	<i>nous fin-imes</i>	<i>nous romp-imes</i>
2. <i>vous aim-âtes</i>	<i>vous fin-îtes</i>	<i>vous romp-îtes</i>
3. <i>ils aim-èrent</i>	<i>ils fin-irent</i>	<i>ils romp-irent</i>

*Future*

S. 1. <i>j'aim-er-ai</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>je fin-ir-ai</i>	<i>je romp-r-ai</i>
I shall (will) love	I shall (will) finish	I shall (will) break
2. <i>tu aim-er-as</i>	<i>tu fin-ir-as</i>	<i>tu romp-r-as</i>
3. <i>il aim-er-a</i>	<i>il fin-ir-a</i>	<i>il romp-r-a</i>
Pl. 1. <i>nous aim-er-ons</i>	<i>nous fin-ir-ons</i>	<i>nous romp-r-ons</i>
2. <i>vous aim-er-ez</i>	<i>vous fin-ir-ez</i>	<i>vous romp-r-ez</i>
3. <i>ils aim-er-ont</i>	<i>ils fin-ir-ont</i>	<i>ils romp-r-ont</i>

*Conditional*

S. 1. <i>j'aim-er-ais</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>je fin-ir-ais</i>	<i>je romp-r-ais</i>
I should (would) love	I should (etc.) finish	I should (etc.) break
2. <i>tu aim-er-ais</i>	<i>tu fin-ir-ais</i>	<i>tu romp-r-ais</i>
3. <i>il aim-er-ait</i>	<i>il fin-ir-ait</i>	<i>il romp-r-ait</i>
Pl. 1. <i>nous aim-er-ions</i>	<i>nous fin-ir-ions</i>	<i>nous romp-r-ions</i>
2. <i>vous aim-er-iez</i>	<i>vous fin-ir-iez</i>	<i>vous romp-r-iez</i>
3. <i>ils aim-er-aient</i>	<i>ils fin-ir-aient</i>	<i>ils romp-r-aient</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE<sup>2</sup>*Present*

S. 1. <i>j'aim-e</i>	<i>je fin-iss-e</i> <sup>3</sup>	<i>je romp-e</i>
I love (may, shall love, etc.)	I finished (etc.)	I break (etc.)
2. <i>tu aim-es</i>	<i>tu fin-iss-es</i>	<i>tu romp-es</i>
3. <i>il aim-e</i>	<i>il fin-iss-e</i>	<i>il romp-e</i>

<sup>1</sup> Cf. foot-note 3 of page preceding.<sup>2</sup> The subjunctive, generally dependent on some preceding expression, is variously rendered according to the varied sense of that expression (cf. 256, etc.).<sup>3</sup> For the different origin of the Pres. and Impf. *finisse* (cf. 113, B).

Pl. 1. <i>nous aim-ions</i>	<i>nous fin-iss-ions</i>	<i>nous romp-ions</i>
2. <i>vous aim-iez</i>	<i>vous fin-iss-iez</i>	<i>vous romp-iez</i>
3. <i>ils aim-ent</i>	<i>ils fin-iss-ent</i>	<i>ils romp-ent</i>
<i>Imperfect</i>		
S. 1. <i>j'aim-asse</i> I loved (might, should love) <sup>1</sup>	<i>je fin-isse</i> <sup>2</sup> I finished (etc.)	<i>je romp-isse</i> I broke (etc.)
2. <i>tu aim-asses</i>	<i>tu fin-isses</i>	<i>tu romp-isses</i>
3. <i>il aim-ât</i>	<i>il fin-ît</i>	<i>il romp-ît</i>
Pl. 1. <i>nous aim-ussions</i>	<i>nous fin-issions</i>	<i>nous romp-ussions</i>
2. <i>vous aim-ussiez</i>	<i>vous fin-issiez</i>	<i>vous romp-ussiez</i>
3. <i>ils aim-assent</i>	<i>ils fin-issent</i>	<i>ils romp-issent</i>

*Imperative (Present)*

S. 2. <i>aim-e</i> love!	<i>fin-is</i> finish!	<i>romp-s</i> break!
Pl. 1. <i>aim-ons</i> let us love!	<i>fin-iss-ons</i>	<i>romp-ons</i>
2. <i>aim-ez</i> love!	<i>fin-iss-ez</i>	<i>romp-ez</i>

*Infinitive (Present)*

<i>aim-er</i> (to) love	<i>fin-ir</i> finish	<i>romp-re</i> break
-------------------------	----------------------	----------------------

## PARTICIPLES

*Present*

<i>aim-ant</i> loving	<i>fin-iss-ant</i> finishing	<i>romp-ant</i> breaking
-----------------------	------------------------------	--------------------------

*Past*

<i>aim-é</i> loved	<i>fin-i</i> finished	<i>romp-u</i> broken
--------------------	-----------------------	----------------------

124. The circumflex which occurs in the 1st and 2d pl. preterit and 3d sing. imperfect subj. of all French verbs denotes the loss of an Old French *s*. Thus, *aimâmes* is for *amames* (for *amames* = Lat. *amavimus* : *s* intercalated through the influence of the 2d pl.) ; *aimâtes* is for *amastes* (Lat. *amavistis*) ; and *aimât* is for *amast* (L. *amasset*).

<sup>1</sup> See foot-note 1, p. 66.

<sup>2</sup> See foot-note 2, p. 66.

**125. PHONETIC AND ORTHOGRAPHIC CHANGES.** — The following changes affecting the sound itself, or simply the manner of denoting it in writing, are to be observed, viz. : —

[126.] *E* mute and *é* are before a syllable containing an *e* mute made open (= è, or *e* with a following *l* and *t* doubled), according to 35, which see. — Ex. *mener* 'lead': pr. *je mène*, *tu mènes*, *il mène*; *nous menons*, *vous menez*, *ils mènent*. fut. *je mènerai*, *tu mèneras*, etc. — *céder* 'yield': pr. *je cède*, *tu cèdes*, etc.; fut. *je céderai* (*é*, 35), etc. — *appeler* 'call': pr. *j'appelle*, *tu appelles*, *il appelle*; *nous appelons*, *vous appelez*, *ils appellent*; fut. *j'appellerai*. *jeter* 'throw': pr. *je jette*; fut. *je jetterai*.

NOTE. — Of verbs in *-eler* and *-eter* some double *l* and *t*, some take è, or both methods of expressing an open *e* are used for the same verb. Thus, out of 90 simple verbs, 48 double *l* and *t* before the mute syllable, and of the remainder, 16 (note especially *celer* 'hide,' *geler* 'freeze,' *peler* 'peel,' *harceler* 'harass'; *acheter* 'buy,' *haïer* 'hate') change *e* to è, while 20 others (*bosseler*, *becqueter*, etc.) do so in the present, but not in the future and conditional.

[The doubling of *l* and *t* is originally due to the existence of a double consonant in Latin (cf. *apellare*, *jactare*), though this etymological principle is now disturbed in several cases.]

[127.] Imperatives in *-e* (as well as the irregular *va* 'go!') are extended by an *s* before an appended objective particle *en* or *y* (cf. 27, note 5. b). — Ex. *Donnes-en à Jean* 'Give some to John.' *Donnes-y tes soins* 'Give thy attention to it.' But *Envoie en chercher* 'Send to find some.' *Va en* (prep.) *France* 'Go to France.'

[As noted, p. 113, this *s*, which is regular in the 2d Imperative of *re*-verbs, has been added, in either case, in false analogy with the 2d sing. of the present indicative. — The *s* of *ir*-verbs belongs to the inchoative stem.]

[128.] In future and conditional, *e* of *-rai(s)* is sometimes, though rarely, dropped if preceded by a vowel, which then takes the circumflex: thus, *louerai* or (chiefly in poetry) *louïrai*.

[129.] a. Verbs in *-cer* and *-ger* change *c* and *g* to *ç* and *ge* respectively wherever they would otherwise be hard (i.e. before *a*, *ai*, *o*). — Ex. *menacer* 'threaten': *menaçons*; *menaçais*, etc.; *manger* 'eat': *mangeons*; *mangeais*, etc.

b. Verbs in *-guer* and *-quer* retain *gu* and *qu* even before *a*, *o*, *u*. — Ex. *fatiguer* 'tire': *fatiguais*; *manquer* 'fail': *manquais*.

[130.] In *vaincre* the *k*-sound is written with *qu* before any vowel except *u*. — Ex. *vainquant*, *vainquis*, but *vaincu*.

[131.] The semivowel *y* of an infinitive in *-yer* is usually changed to *i* before *e* mute, this change being optional, however, after *a* and *e*. — Ex. *noyer* 'drown': pr. *noie*; *payer* 'pay': pr. *paie* or (less commonly) *paye*.

**132. MINOR IRREGULARITIES.**—The following verbs being almost regular (two of them entirely so in their usual sense) are conveniently described here:

[133.] Conjugation II:—

1. *Bénir* 'bless' is in the past participle regularly *béni*, or irregularly *bénit* in the sense of 'consecrated.'
2. *Fleurir* 'blossom' changes its root (*fleur-*) to *flor-* in the present participle and imperfect indicative (*florissant*, *florissais*, etc.), if used figuratively in the sense of 'flourish.'
3. *Hair* 'hate' drops its diæresis (6) in the singular of the present indicative and imperative (pr. ind. *je hais*, *tu hais*, *il hait*; *nous haïssons*, etc.; — impv. *hais*, *haïssons*, etc.).

[134.] Conjugation III:—

The personal ending *t* of the 3d sing. present indicative is dropped after a radical *c* (in *vaincre*), *d* (occurring in most verbs of this conjugation), and *t*; and a radical *tt* is in the singular of the present indicative and imperative reduced to *t*. — Ex.

1. *vaincre* 'conquer': ind. pr. *je vaincs*, *tu vaincs*, *il vaint*, etc., observing everywhere that *c* becomes *qu* before any vowel, except *u* (130): *vainquons*, *vainquez*, *vainquent*; but *vaincu*: (cf. 161, list).
2. *vendre* 'sell': ind. pr. *je vends*, *tu vends*, *il vend*, etc.
3. *battre* 'strike': *je bats*, *tu bats*, *il bat*; *nous battons*, etc.

**135. PRINCIPAL PARTS.**—The *Infinitive*, *Present Participle*, *Past Participle*, *Present Indicative*, and *Preterit* are called the principal parts of a verb, because they may serve as key-



forms, by the aid of which all other regular forms of a verb can be made out.

The method of such derivation is illustrated below by giving the principal parts of *aimer* and the forms made by their aid:

## PRINC. PARTS:

## DERIVED FORMS:

1. Inf. *aimer*: { fut. *j'aimer*-ai (i.e. add -ai after r).  
                              { cond. *j'aimer*-ais (i.e. add -ais after r).
2. Pr. part. *aim-ant*: { pr. subj. *j'aim*-e (i.e. substitute -e for -ant).  
                              { impf. ind. *j'aim*-ais (i.e. sub. -ais for -ant).
3. Past part. *aimé*: compound tenses, *j'ai aimé*, etc.
4. Pr. ind. *j'aime* {  
    (cf. note 1):    { imp've *aime* throughout (cf. note 1).
5. Pret. ind. *j'aimai*: { impf. subj. *j'aima*-sse (i.e. add -sse to the  
                              { stem: cf. note 2).

NOTE 1. — As is already seen, the pl. of present ind. of *ir*-verbs is itself irregular, being virtually formed from the same stem as the present part. (pr. part. *finiss-ant*: pr. ind. pl. *finiss-ont*, etc.). — It is, indeed, helpful always to consider the pr. part. as the basis of the plural of the pres. ind. and imperat. in both regular and irregular verbs.

NOTE 2. — The -sse of the impf. subj. is added to the pret. stems *aima*-, *fini*-, *rompi*- (i.e. the pret. without its last letter).

136. IMPERSONAL VERBS. — The impersonal verbs are, in French as in English, used only in the 3d person singular with the impersonal subject *il* 'it.' Among the more common may be noted here: *il neige* 'it snows,' *il gèle* 'it freezes,' *il pleut* (irreg.) 'it rains'; *il faut* (irreg.) 'it is necessary,' *il importe* 'it is of importance'; *il semble* 'it appears'; *il fait* (irreg.) 'it is' (lit. 'it makes' such and such weather); *il y a* 'there is': etc.

137. COMPOUND VERB-FORMS (= Verb-Phrases). — By using the auxiliary verb *avoir* 'have' or *être* 'be,' conjugated as usual, before the past participle of a verb, the compound active and all the passive forms are made. To describe these, we must therefore anticipate here the conjugation of two auxiliaries, which properly belong to the irregular verbs.

**Avoir** have**Être** be

## INDICATIVE

*Present*

Sing.	1. <i>j'ai</i> <sup>1</sup> I have (am having, do have)	<i>je suis</i> I am
	2. <i>tu as</i>	<i>tu es</i>
	3. <i>il a</i>	<i>il est</i>
Pl.	1. <i>nous avons</i>	<i>nous sommes</i>
	2. <i>vous avez</i>	<i>vous êtes</i>
	3. <i>ils ont</i>	<i>ils sont</i>

*Imperfect*

Sing.	1. <i>j'avais</i> <sup>1</sup> I had (was having)	<i>j'étais</i> <sup>1</sup> I was
	2. <i>tu avais</i>	<i>tu étais</i>
	3. <i>il avait</i>	<i>il était</i>
Pl.	1. <i>nous avions</i>	<i>nous étions</i>
	2. <i>vous aviez</i>	<i>vous étiez</i>
	3. <i>ils avaient</i>	<i>ils étaient</i>

*Preterit*

Sing.	1. <i>j'eus</i> (pr. <i>j'u</i> : 15, under <i>eu</i> ) I had	<i>je fus</i> I was, I became
	2. <i>tu eus</i>	<i>tu fus</i>
	3. <i>il eut</i>	<i>il fut</i>
Pl.	1. <i>nous eûmes</i>	<i>nous fûmes</i>
	2. <i>vous eûtes</i>	<i>vous fûtes</i>
	3. <i>ils eurent</i>	<i>ils furent</i>

*Future*

Sing.	1. <i>j'aurai</i> <sup>1</sup> I shall (will) have	<i>je serai</i> <sup>1</sup> I shall (will) be
	2. <i>tu auras</i>	<i>tu seras</i>
	3. <i>il aura</i>	<i>il sera</i>

<sup>1</sup> In verbs -ai final pronounced as *é*, but not final as *è* (cf. 15).

Pl.	1. <i>nous aurons</i>	<i>nous serons</i>
	2. <i>vous aurez</i>	<i>vous serez</i>
	3. <i>ils auront</i>	<i>ils seront</i>

*Conditional*

Sing.	1. <i>j'aurais</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>je serais</i> <sup>1</sup>
	I should (would) have	I should (would) be
	2. <i>tu aurais</i>	<i>tu serais</i>
	3. <i>il aurait</i>	<i>il serait</i>
Pl.	1. <i>nous aurions</i>	<i>nous serions</i>
	2. <i>vous auriez</i>	<i>vous seriez</i>
	3. <i>ils auraient</i>	<i>ils seraient</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE

*Present*

Sing.	1. <i>j'aie</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>je sois</i>
	I have (may or shall have)	I be (am, may or shall be), etc.
	2. <i>tu aies</i>	<i>tu sois</i>
	3. <i>il ait</i>	<i>il soit</i>
Pl.	1. <i>nous ayons</i>	<i>nous soyons</i>
	2. <i>vous ayez</i>	<i>vous soyez</i>
	3. <i>ils aient</i>	<i>ils soient</i>

*Imperfect*

Sing.	1. <i>j'eusse</i>	<i>je fusse</i>
	I had (might, should have)	I were (was, etc.)
	2. <i>tu eusses</i>	<i>tu fusses</i>
	3. <i>il eût</i>	<i>il fût</i>
Pl.	1. <i>nous eussions</i>	<i>nous fussions</i>
	2. <i>vous eussiez</i>	<i>vous fussiez</i>
	3. <i>ils eussent</i>	<i>ils fussent</i>

<sup>1</sup> Cf. foot-note, p. 71.

## IMPERATIVE

*Present*

Sing.	2. <i>aie</i> have !	<i>sois</i> be !
Pl.	1. <i>ayons</i> let us have !	<i>soyons</i> let us be !
	2. <i>ayez</i> have !	<i>soyez</i> be !

## INFINITIVE

*Present*

<i>avoir</i> (to) have	<i>être</i> (to) be
------------------------	---------------------

## PARTICIPLES

*Present*

<i>ayant</i> having	<i>étant</i> being
---------------------	--------------------

*Past*

<i>eu</i> (pr. <i>u</i> ) had	<i>été</i> been
-------------------------------	-----------------

[138. HISTORY. — *Avoir* is from Latin *habere*, whose *h* is lost throughout, and whose *b* is changed to *v* (in fut. and cond. vocalized to *u*), or lost. The future and conditional are, as usual, made from the infinitive (Old French *aver* = *av'r-*, *aur-*), and the present or imperfect (*-ai*, *-ais*).

*Être* has its forms from at least three different verbs: *esse* (vulg. Lat. *essere* = Fr. *estre*, *être*) 'be,' *stare* (Old Fr. *ester*) 'stand,' and *fui* 'was.' The derivation of *être* from *essere*, *suis* etc. from *sum* (vulg. Lat. *sui* in analogy with *fui*) etc., and of *fus*, *fusse* from *fui*, *fuissem* is clear. As for the other forms scholars are not quite agreed: probably *étant*, *été* from *stant-em*, *sta-tum*; *étais* from the radical *est-*; and possibly *serai*, as in Spanish, from *sedere* 'sit' (*seder-*, *ser-*). + *ai* (since *essere*, *estre* gave the old form *estr-ai*).

**139. THE COMPOUND ACTIVE TENSES** are formed in French, on the same principles as in English, by the aid of an auxiliary, *avoir* 'have,' and the **past participle** (about which cf. 141) of the main verb. — Thus, the compound tenses of *aimer* are :



**141.** The **past participle** (*aimé*, etc.) is in compound verb-forms changeable or unchangeable. The general principle is that it agrees in gender and number with the word it qualifies, provided that word is already mentioned. Hence we have the following definite rule:

a. IN ACTIVE CONSTRUCTION, the past participle agrees with a **preceding** (not a following) **direct object**: e.g. *je l'ai* (*l'* for *le* or *la*) *aimé* or *aimée* 'I have loved him (or her)'; *je les* (m. or f.) *ai aimés* or *aimées* 'I have loved them.'

b. IN PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION it agrees with the **subject**, even when by inversion (except after the impersonal *il*) it follows the participle: e.g. *elle est aimée* 'she is loved'; *ils (elles) sont aimés* or *aimées* 'they are loved'; *que bénie soit la main qui m'a sauvé!* 'blessed be the hand that has saved me!'; but, *il a été fait une emplette* (= *une emplette a été faite*) 'a purchase has been made.'

Where in active construction there is no preceding object, the past participle remains unchanged: e.g. *j'ai aimé cette fille* 'I have loved this girl.'

[**HISTORY.**—The past participle is a verbal adjective (cf. 'I have written the letter' = 'I have the letter written') and originally agreed with the word qualified, whatever its position (cf. Lat. *habeo scriptam epistolam* = *j'ai écrite une lettre*: now *écrit*). Gradually, however, the participle came to be looked upon as an unchangeable part of the verb; and after much uncertainty and variation of usage, the principle now followed, being virtually that it agrees with the word qualified if already mentioned before the participle, began to prevail in the 15th, and was established in the 18th century.]

**142. Être FOR avoir.**—A few intransitive verbs (chiefly of the irregular conjugation), denoting change of position or condition, are never compounded with *avoir*, but always with *être*.—Ex. *Il est allé* 'He is (or has) gone.' *Il est mort* 'He (has) died' or 'He is dead.'

These verbs, grouped according to their meaning, are:

{ aller 'go'	tomber 'fall'
{ partir 'depart'	{ naître 'be born'
{ sortir 'go out'	{ éclore 'hatch'
{ arriver 'arrive'	{ mourir 'die'
{ entrer 'enter'	{ décéder 'decease'
{ venir 'come'	

[143.] About fifty other verbs of a similar kind are used (somewhat freely) with *avoir* when emphasizing a progress of the action expressed by the verb rather than its result, and with *être* when the reverse is the case. — Ex. *Il a grandi pendant ce temps* 'He has grown during this time.' *Il est grandi* 'He has (is) grown.' *La procession a passé par ici* 'The procession passed here.' *La procession est passée* 'The procession has passed.'

**144. REFLEXIVE (or RECIPROCAL: 150) VERBS.**—Transitive and intransitive verbs used with a reflexive pronoun in the acc. or dat. respectively are reflexive. The forms of the pronoun, alike for acc. and dat., are: sing. 1 *me*, 2 *te*, 3 *se*; pl. 1 *nous*, 2 *vous*, 3 *se*.

[145.] The conjugation of the reflexive verb is as usual, observing:

1. that the reflexive pronoun **precedes** the verb, except in the imperative affirmative, according to 102. E.g. *il se flatte* 'he flatters himself'; *flatte-toi* 'flatter thyself';

2. that the compound tenses are formed by the aid of the auxiliary *être*, in English to be rendered by 'have': e.g. *il s'est flatté* 'he has flattered himself';

3. that their past participle — as in compound active forms — agrees with a preceding **direct object**, if there be one: e.g. *elle s'est flattée* 'she has flattered herself' (*se* dir. obj.), but *elle s'est dit* 'she (has) said to herself' (*se* indir. obj. = dat.).

[146.] As an example of the reflexive conjugation may be given here *se flatter* 'flatter one's self.'

## INDICATIVE

## SIMPLE TENSES

## COMPOUND TENSES

*Present*

<i>je me flatte</i>	<i>je me suis flatté(e)</i>	} I have flattered myself etc.
I flatter myself		
<i>tu te flattes</i>	<i>tu t'es flatté(e)</i>	
thou flatterest thyself		
<i>il se flatte</i>	<i>il (elle) s'est flatté(e)</i>	
he flatters himself		
<i>nous nous flattons</i>	<i>nous nous sommes flatté(e)s</i>	}
we flatter ourselves		
<i>vous vous flattez</i>	<i>vous vous êtes flatté (e)s</i>	
you flatter yourselves		
<i>ils se flattent</i>	<i>ils (elles) se sont flatté(e)s</i>	}
they flatter themselves		

*Imperfect*

<i>je me flattais</i>	<i>je m'étais flatté(e)</i>
I flattered myself, etc.	I had flattered myself, etc.

*Imperative*: *flatte-toi* etc. flatter thyself, *flattons-nous* let us flatter ourselves, *flattez-vous* flatter yourselves.

[147.] As in English, so also in French several verbs are exclusively reflexive, while nearly all transitives may be used as such. Yet the reflexive construction is much more common and important, and verbs that are habitually or frequently reflexive much more frequent in French than in English. As examples may be mentioned the following verbs (some of them irregular): *s'arrêter* 'stop,' *s'asseoir* 'sit down,' *se battre* 'fight,' *se coucher* 'go to bed,' *se douter* 'suspect,' *s'écrier* 'cry out,' *s'écrouler* 'crumble,' *s'écrire* 'be written, write (to) one another,' *s'ennuyer* 'be bored, feel lonesome,' *se fâcher* 'grow angry,' *se lever* 'rise, get up,' *se plaindre* 'complain,' *se porter* 'be (in respect to health),' *se réjouir* 'rejoice,' *se taire* 'be silent,' *s'en aller* 'go away' (cf. 150 and 161 under *aller*).

NOTE. — It should be especially noticed that when English transitives have an identical or kindred intransitive form, the latter is regularly rendered in French by a reflexive. — Ex. 'close' (tr.) *fermer*, (intr.) *se fermer*; 'raise' *lever*, 'rise' *se lever*; etc.



[148.] Many reflexive verbs followed by prepositions form expressions of special often transitive meaning in English. Examples are: *s'approcher* de 'approach,' *se douter de* 'suspect,' *s'entendre à* 'be a judge of,' *se passer de* 'do without,' *se servir de* 'use.'

[149.] The reflexive pronoun is in French often a weakened dat. of relation (*dativus commodi*) or it has slipped in without assignable reason. Cf. *s'en aller* 'go away' (where *se*, however, is treated as an acc.: *elle s'en est allée*).

[150.] **RECIPROCAL USE OF REFLEXIVES.**— Reflexive forms often denote reciprocity: *ils s'aiment* 'they love one another; *on se bat* 'they are fighting'; *aimons-nous* 'let us love one another.'

**151. INTERROGATIVE FORMS.**— In interrogative forms, the subject pronoun is placed after the personal verb-form, as in English, but it is connected with it by a hyphen (e.g. *ai-je* 'have I?'). For the rest, it is to be noticed only that:

a. A final *-e* of the verb is changed to *è* (or *é*, cf. 35.1) before *je*—the two words being really treated as one (cf. 35).—Ex. *aimè-je* 'do I love?'

b. When the 3d sing. terminates in a vowel (*e*, *a*) the lost etymological termination *t* is, in analogy with forms preserving it, added, though with a hyphen on either side, as if being nothing but a phonetic insertion (cf. 27, note 5).—Ex. *aime-t-il?* 'does he love?'

Thus:

#### INDICATIVE

##### *Present*

SIMPLE FORMS	COMPOUND FORMS
<i>aimè-je?</i> 'do I love?'	<i>ai-je aimé?</i> 'have I loved?'
<i>aimes-tu?</i> 'dost thou love?'	<i>as-tu aimé?</i> 'hast thou loved?'
<i>aime-t-il?</i> 'does he love?'	<i>a-t-il aimé?</i> 'has he loved?'
<i>aimons-nous?</i> 'do we love?'	<i>avons-nous aimé?</i> 'have we loved?'
etc.	etc.

[152.] Instead of this direct interrogative construction, it is quite common to introduce a question by placing the phrase *est-ce que?* 'is it that?' (pr. *è'c'k'*)—as 'do' is placed in

English — before the subject and the verb. — Ex. *Est-ce que je romps?* ‘Do I break?’ *Est-ce que je l’aurais rompu?* ‘Should I have broken it?’

Especially common is this circumlocution where euphony requires it (as when the 1st sing. of the present ends in two consonants or *-ge*), or in interrogations implying surprise or denial.

NOTE. — In the spoken language this circumlocution is more common than in the written, and in popular style used somewhat indiscriminately for any tense.

**153. NEGATIVE FORMS.** — The simple negation ‘not’ is usually expressed by the aid of two words, viz. the negative particle *ne* (*n’* before vowel or *h* ‘mute’) placed immediately before the personal verb or an object-pronoun preceding it, and the adverb *pas* (or the more emphatic *point*) placed immediately after the personal verb-form. — Thus: *je ne finis pas* (or *point*) ‘I do not finish’; *je n’ai pas fini* ‘I have not finished’; *il n’est point aimé* ‘he is not loved.’ — For further rules see Syntax.

[NOTE. — *Pas* and *point* (originally from Lat. *passum* ‘step’ and *punctum* ‘point’) simply strengthen the real negative *ne*. Comp. English *not* = *nought* = *na* ‘not’ *wiht* ‘a whit.’]

**154. NEGATIVE INTERROGATIVE FORMS.** — These are made by placing the negative particles, as above, before and after the interrogative form of the verb as described under 151. — Thus: *n’aimè-je pas?* (or *est-ce que je n’aime pas?*) ‘do I not love?’ *n’aimes-tu pas?* (or *est-ce que tu n’aimes pas?*) ‘dost thou not love?’ — *n’ai-je pas aimé?* (or *est-ce que je n’ai pas aimé?*) ‘have I not loved?’ etc.

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

**155.** Verbs deviating in their conjugation from those already described as regular are called **irregular**.

**156.** Their irregularities, consisting mainly in a variation of the stem, make a difficult, but important, chapter in French accidence. Yet, by mastering a few guiding principles, and studying the irregular verbs in **groups** with reference to those principles, in the way explained below a good command of the whole field is readily gained.

**157.** The irregular verbs may be referred to two large divisions :


**The First Division** comprises verbs that have the **same stem** in their principal and derived parts, so that the latter can always be made, in accordance with the general rules of derivation (135), from the former (e.g. inf. *sentir* : fut. *sentir-ai* ; pr. part. *sent-ant* : pr. subj. *sent-e*, and so on).

The great plurality of the irregular verbs belong to this class.

**The Second Division** comprises verbs that **change the stem** of their principal parts in some of the **derived tenses**, as described in 160 : e.g. inf. *devoir* : fut. *dev'r-ai* ; pr. part. *dev-ant* : pr. subj. *doiv-e*, 3 pl. pr. ind. *doiv-ent*).

No imperfect ind. (save *savais*) or subj. is ever irregularly derived, and no imperative, except *va* (of *aller*), *veuille* (of *vouloir*), and *sache* (of *savoir*).

**158.** These two divisions with their sub-divisions are farther described below in 159-160, where the student can have an easy survey of their chief irregularities, while he should study in detail the verbs of **each group** separately, by referring to the alphabetical list of irregular verbs, § 161.

 The student should notice that in each sub-division (A, B, etc.) below, the **model-verbs** are printed in **bold type**, *others*, conjugated like them, in *ordinary type*. For a first course he is advised to learn only the **former**, looking them up for each group in the alphabetical list § 161 (after understanding fully the principles of their description as explained under the heading of that list). — Knowing the key-verbs (altogether 47), it is an easy task to acquire those conjugated like them.

[159.] **THE FIRST DIVISION.** — To this division belong a. all irregular *ir*-verbs (save those in *-rir*, *-nir* preceded by a vowel) ; b. all irregular *re*-verbs (save *boire*, *faire*).

The *ir*-verbs all lack the stem-extending syllable *-is(s)* : cf. 119, b. No other irregularity is common to all *ir*- or *re*-verbs.

The verbs of this division may be studied in the following order, groups A-E :

A. — *fuir*, entirely regular, observing the loss of *-iss* (159), and the graphical change of *i* to *y* before a pronounced vowel.

B. — *IR*-verbs whose **pres. ind.**, being the *root* (oftenest without its end-consonant) + *s*, follows the **3d conjugation**, and which are otherwise regular (observing 159), except that *vêtir* has the past part. *vêtu* : e.g. *sentir* : **pres. ind.** *sen-s*. These are : *sentir*<sup>1</sup> : so also *mentir*, *repentir*, *partir*, *sortir*, *servir* ; — *dormir* (really like *sentir*) ; — *vêtir* (**pres.** *vêt-s*) ; — *bouillir* (**pr.** *bou-s*).

C. — *IR*-verbs whose **pres. ind.** being the *root* + *e*, follows the **1st conjugation** ; and whose past part., if the inf. ends in *-rir*, terminates in *-ert* : e.g. *couvrir* : **pres. ind.** *couvr-e* ; past part. *couvert*. These are : *cueillir* (**pr.** *cueill-e*), conveniently counted to this division though its fut. is *cueillerai* (with changed stem) ; — *couvrir* : so also *ouvrir*, *offrir*, *souffrir* ; — *assaillir* (**pr.** *assaill-e*).

D. — *RE*-verbs having in their **pres. part.** a **new consonant-sound** (inherited from Latin) added to the root-vowel (e.g. *dire* : **pres. part.** *dis-ant*) and supplanting any root-consonant following that vowel (e.g. *naitre* : *naiss-ant* ; *peindre* : *peign-ant*). — Verbs in *-uire*, *-dre*, and *-crire* also repeat the same sound in **pret. ind.**

These verbs may be studied in the following order :

1. *s* added to the root-vowel : all verbs in *-ire* (exc. those in *-crire* and *rire*), viz. *con-duire*<sup>2</sup> (and other compounds in *-duire*), *con-struire* (etc.), *dé-truire*, *cuire*, *luire*, *nuire* ; — *dire* ; — *lire* ; — *suffire*, *confire* ; — *plaire*, *taire*.

2. *ss* supplanting final radical *t* : all verbs in *-aitre*,<sup>3</sup> *-oitre*,<sup>3</sup> viz. *connaître*, *paraître*, *paraître* ; — *naitre* ; — *croître*.

<sup>1</sup> Compounds verbs (*con-sentir*, etc.), when conjugated like the simple, and also defective verbs are here omitted. (They are all described in the alphabetical list, 161).

<sup>2</sup> Written *conduire*. Hyphen here to separate prefix from radical.

<sup>3</sup> The circumflex, denoting loss of *s*, used when *i* is followed by *t* (in *croître* always, exc. before *ss*). For archaic *-oitre* instead of *-aitre* cf. 17 (*oi*, n. 2).

3. *s* supplanting final radical *d*: *coudre*.

4. *l(v)* supplanting final radical *d*: *moudre*; — *ré-soudre*.

5. *gn* supplanting final radical *nd*: all verbs in *-ndre*, viz. *peindre*, *craindre*, *plaindre*, *ceindre*, *feindre*, *en-feindre*, *teindre*, *joindre*.

6. *v* added to the root vowel: all verbs in *-crire*, viz. *écrire*, *décrire* (and other compounds in *-crire*), *inscrire* (and other compounds in *-scrire*).

Observe that of above verbs of the D-group, *lire* and those in *-aire*, *-âtre* (exc. *naître*), and *croître*, form, irregularly, their pret. in *-us*.

E. — RE-verbs with **no new** radical sound in the **pres. part.**:

[past part. in *i(s)*, pret. in *is*] *rire*; — *mettre*; — *prendre*; — *suivre*; — [past part. in *u*, pret. in *us*] *croire*; — *vivre*; — *con-clure*.

[160.] **THE SECOND DIVISION.** — To this division belong a. the only two irregular *er*-verbs (*aller*, *envoyer*); b. irregular *ir*-verbs in *-rir*, *-nir* preceded by a vowel; c. 2 *re*-verbs (*boire*, *faire*); d. all *oir*-verbs.

A peculiarity common to all the verbs in *-ir* [save *courir*] and *-oir(e)* [save *voir*] of this division is that they strengthen their root-vowel [*e* = to *ie* or *oi*, *ou* (old *o*) to *eu*] in the pres. ind. and subj. and imperat. whenever it receives **the tone**, i.e. in the sing. and 3 pl. (e.g. *ten-ir*: pres. 1 sing. *tiens*, but 1 pl. *tenons*; *dev-oir*: pres. 1 sing. *dois*, 1. pl. *devons*; *mourir*: pres. 1 sing. *meurs*, 1 pl. *mourons*).

Verbs in *-nir* strengthen their root also in fut.-cond. (cf. below).

For the rest the verbs of this division may be studied in the order they were enumerated above, viz.:

A. — **ER-verbs**: *aller* forms its stems from 3 different roots (see the verb); — *envoyer* is irregular only in being changed (by the loss of *oy*) to *enverr-* in the fut.-cond.

B. — **IR-verbs**: all lack the stem-extending syllable *-is(s)*; all drop *i* of *-ir* in fut.-cond. (*courir*: fut. *cour'rai*), those in *-nir*, besides, modifying their root (*ten-ir*: fut. *tiend'r-ai*). Other

peculiarities are best studied under each verb. Here belong: *courir*; — *mourir*; — *ac-quérir* (with other compounds in *-quérir*); — *tenir*, *venir*.

C. — RE-verbs: *faire*; — *boire*.

D. — OIR-verbs: all (save the compounds *pré-*, *pour-voir*) lack <sup>1</sup> *oi* in fut.-cond. (e.g. *devoir*: fut. *devr-ai*). They also modify the stem as described under each verb. All, save *voir*, *asseoir* form their past part. in *-u*, and pret. in *-us*. Other peculiarities are best studied under each verb. Here belong: *re-cevoir* (and other comp. of *-cevoir*); *devoir*; *mouvoir*; *pouvoir*, *pleuvoir*; — *savoir*; —  *falloir*; *valoir*; *vouloir*; — *voir*; *asseoir*.

#### REFERENCE LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

**161.** The irregular verbs are described below in alphabetical order. The principles of arrangement are as follows:

1. Every **simple** verb — even when occurring only in composition (like *-cevoir* in *re-cevoir*, etc.) — is given in its alphabetical order. Under it are enumerated its compounds. When it is not in use itself, one of its compounds is pointed out as model and described in its alphabetical place. — Exceptionally a compound verb whose derivation is not evident, is given in its alphabetical order even without reference to this method.

2. The principal parts are given first, and below them the derived tenses. The principles of derivation are those described in § 135. The plural of the present ind. is considered regular whenever it contains the stem of the present partic. The imperative is inflected like the present indic. (unless otherwise stated).

3. Bold type denotes irregularities: in the principal parts with reference to the **regular conjugation** (in *oir-* verbs simply with reference to the stem); but in the derived tenses with reference to the **principal parts**.

---

<sup>1</sup> Historically it was the original Latin vowel, not *oi*, that disappeared as atonic (*movere hábeo*; *mouv'r-ai*).

## PRINCIPAL AND DERIVED PARTS (cf. 135).

INFINITIVE :	PR. PART. :	PAST PART. :	PRES. IND. :	PRETERIT :
Fut. + <i>ai</i> Cond. + <i>ais</i>	Pr. S. - <i>e</i> } for Ip. I. - <i>ais</i> } - <i>ant</i>	Comp. tens.	Imperat.	Impf. S. + <i>sse</i> (to stem)
<b><i>Ac-quérir</i></b> <sup>1</sup> (160. B) acquiere F. <i>acquerrai</i> <sup>2</sup> C. <i>acquerrais</i> <sup>3</sup>	<b><i>acquérant</i></b>  Pr. S. <i>acquière</i> <i>acquières</i> <i>acquière</i> <i>acquérions</i> <i>acquériez</i> <i>acquièrement</i>  Ip. I. <i>acquérais</i>	<b><i>acquis</i></b>	<b><i>acquiérs</i></b> <sup>4</sup>  <i>acquiérs</i> <i>acquiért</i> <i>acquérons</i> <i>acquérez</i> <i>acquièrement</i>  Imp've <i>acquiérs</i>	<b><i>acquis</i></b>  Ip. S. <i>acquisse</i>

[*Acquérir* is from low-Lat. *ac-querire* for *-querere* (which has given *acquiérs*, etc.). The *rr* of the fut.-cond. is owing to the loss of *i*.]

So also *con-quérir* and *recon-quérir*, both used only in inf., past part. and pret.; *en-quérir*, *re-quérir*.

<b><i>Aller</i></b> (160. A) go F. <i>irai</i> C. <i>irais</i>	<b><i>allant</i></b>  Pr. S. <i>aille</i> <sup>4</sup> <i>ailles</i> <i>aille</i> <i>allions</i> <i>alliez</i> <i>aillent</i>  Ip. I. <i>allais</i>	<b><i>allé</i></b> (être : 142)	<b><i>vais</i></b>  <i>vas</i> <i>va</i> <i>allons</i> <i>allez</i> <i>vont</i>  Imp've <i>va</i> ( <i>vas</i> 127) <i>allons</i> <i>allez</i>	<b><i>allai</i></b>  Ip. S. <i>allasse</i>
---	--	------------------------------------	---	---

[*Aller* forms its tenses from three different radicals, viz. : 1. *all-*, in subjunct. *aille*, (uncertain derivation); 2. *va-* (Lat. *vadere* 'go'); and 3. *ir-* (Lat. *ire* 'go').]

Of common use is the reflexive idiom *s'en aller* (cf. 147, 160) 'go away': Pr. *je m'en vais*, *tu t'en vas*, *il s'en va*; *nous nous en allons*, etc.

<sup>1</sup> Pronounce *a-kérir*. Hyphen in above list used to separate prefix from verb.    <sup>2</sup> Pron. *a-kièr*.    <sup>3</sup> Pron. *a-kèr-ré* (C. *-rè*).    <sup>4</sup> Pron. *ǎy*.

\**Ap-paroir* (Lat. *ap-parēre*) 'appear' is defective, occurring only in the infinit., and in 3d sing. pres. ind. *il appert*.

<i>A-saillir</i>	<i>assaillant</i>	<i>assailli</i>	<i>assaille</i>	<i>assaillis</i>
(159. C) assail	Pr. S.		Imp've	Ipf. S.
F.	<i>assaille</i>		<i>assaille</i>	<i>assaillisse</i>
<i>assaillirai</i>	Ipf. I.			
C.	<i>assaillais</i>			
<i>assaillirais</i>				

[*Assaillir* is from Lat. *as-salire*.]

So also *tres-saillir*.

<i>As-seoir</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>asseyant</i>	<i>assis</i>	<i>assieds</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>assis</i>
(160. D) seat	Pr. S.		<i>assieds</i>	Ipf. S.
F.	<i>asseye</i> (131)		<i>assied</i>	<i>assisse</i>
<i>asseyerai</i>	Ipf. I.		<i>asseyons</i>	
or	<i>asseyais</i>		<i>asseyez</i>	
<i>assiérai</i>			<i>asseyant</i>	
C.			Imp've	
= + s			<i>assieds</i>	

*Asseoir* (Lat. *as-sidēre* 'be seated near') is used chiefly as a reflexive verb *s'asseoir* (*je m'assieds*, etc.) 'sit down.'

Like *asseoir* also *rasseoir*, *surseoir* (which, however, in the pres. ind. is *sursois* and defective: cf. *seoir*).

*Avoir*: for full conjugation cf. 137.

*Battre*: cf. 134, 3. So also compounds *a-*, *com-*, *dé-*, *é-*, *ra-*, *re-battre*.

<i>Boire</i>	<i>buvant</i>	<i>bu</i>	<i>bois</i>	<i>bus</i>
(160. D)	Pr. S.		<i>bois</i>	Ipf. S.
drink	<i>boive</i>		<i>boit</i>	<i>busse</i>
F.	<i>boives</i>		<i>buvons</i>	
<i>boirai</i>	<i>boive</i>		<i>buvez</i>	
C.	<i>buvions</i>		<i>boivent</i>	
<i>boirais</i>	<i>buviez</i>		Imp've	
	<i>boivent</i>		<i>bois</i>	
	Ipf. I.			
	<i>buvais</i>			

[*Boire* is from Lat. *bibere*, whose *b* becomes *v* between vowels.]

<sup>1</sup> Pron. *ā-soir*. <sup>2</sup> Pron. *a-siē*. Exceptionally the form *assois* is also found.



<i>Bouillir</i> (159. B) boil (intr.) F. <i>bouillirai</i> C. <i>bouillirais</i>	<i>bouillant</i> Pr. S. <i>bouille</i> Ipf. I. <i>bouillais</i>	<i>bouilli</i>	<i>bous</i> <i>bous</i> <i>bout</i> <i>bouillons</i> <i>bouillez</i> <i>bouillent</i> Imp've <i>bous</i>	<i>bouillis</i> Ipf. S. <i>bouillisse</i>
<p>[Fr. Lat. <i>bullire</i> 'boil,' with loss of <i>ll</i> in pres. ind. sing.]          To express 'boil' transitively use <i>faire bouillir</i>.          Like <i>bouillir</i> also <i>é-bouillir</i>, <i>re-bouillir</i>.</p>				
<p>* <i>Braire</i> (low Lat. <i>bragire</i>), 'bray' is defective. It has <i>brayant</i>; <i>braît</i>, <i>braient</i>; <i>brayais</i>, <i>brayaient</i>; <i>il braira</i>, <i>brairont</i>; <i>il brairait</i>, <i>brairaient</i>.          * <i>Bruire</i> (Lat. <i>rugire</i>?) 'roar' has only <i>bruyant</i> (as adj.); <i>je bruyais</i> or <i>bruissant</i> (<i>bruisse</i>, <i>bruissais</i>); <i>bruit</i>; <i>je bruis</i>, <i>tu bruis</i>, <i>il bruit</i> (no pl.); <i>je bruirai</i>(s).</p>				
<i>Ceindre</i> (159. D.5) <i>girt</i>	<i>ceignant</i>	<i>ceint</i>	<i>ceins</i>	<i>ceignis</i>
<p>Conjugated like <i>peindre</i> (which see). So also <i>en-ceindre</i>.          [Lat. <i>cingere</i> 'girt': <i>d</i> intercalated; <i>ng</i> = (<i>g</i>)<i>n</i>.]</p>				
<p>-<i>cevoir</i> (Lat. <i>capere</i> 'take') occurs only in compounds: <i>aper-cevoir</i>, <i>con-cevoir</i>, <i>dé-cevoir</i>, <i>per-cevoir</i>, <i>re-cevoir</i>. These are all conjugated like <i>recevoir</i> (which see).</p>				
<p>* <i>Choir</i> 'fall': only in the pres. ind. <i>je choisis</i>, <i>tu choisis</i>, <i>il choisit</i>, infinit. and past part. <i>chu</i> with <i>être</i>. Compounds are <i>déchoir</i> and <i>échoir</i>, which see.          [Old form <i>cheoir</i>, from Lat. <i>cadēre</i> (through <i>cadēre</i>) 'fall'].</p>				
<p><i>Circon-cire</i> 'circumcise' is conjugated like <i>suf-fire</i>, except that the past part. is <i>circon-cis</i>.          [Lat. <i>circum-cidere</i> 'cut around'].</p>				
<p>-<i>cire</i> (Lat. <i>cidere</i> = <i>cadere</i> 'cut') only in <i>circon-cire</i>, see above.</p>				
* <i>Clore</i> close	—	<i>clos</i>	<i>clos</i>	—
F.	Pr. S.		<i>clos</i>	
<i>clorai</i>	<i>close</i>		<i>clôt</i>	
C.	—		pl. wanting	—
<i>clorais</i>				

[This defective verb from Lat. *cludere* 'close']. Compounds *dé-clore* (only p. p. *déclos*), *é-clore* (p. p. *éclos* and 3d sing. and pl. of some tenses: *il éclôt*, etc.), *en-clore* (= *clore*), *for-clore* (only p. p. *for-clos*).

*-clure* (Lat. *cludere* 'close') in *con-clure* (which see), *ex-clure*, *re-clure* (only inf. and past p.).

<i>Con-clure</i> (159. E)	<i>concluant</i>	<i>conclu</i>	<i>conclus</i>	<i>conclus</i>
conclude	Pr. S.		Imp've	Ipf. S.
F.	<i>conclue</i>		<i>conclus</i>	<i>concluse</i>
<i>-clurai</i>	Ipf. I.			
C.	<i>concluais</i>			
<i>-clurais</i>				

<i>Con-duire</i> (159. D. 1)	<i>conduisant</i>	<i>conduit</i>	<i>conduis</i>	<i>conduisis</i>
conduct	Pr. S.		Imp've	Ipf. S.
F.	<i>conduise</i>		<i>conduis</i>	<i>conduisisse</i>
<i>conduirai</i>	Ipf. I.			
C.	<i>conduisais</i>			
<i>conduirais</i>				

[Lat. *con-ducere* 'conduct': c changed to s where not lost.]

So all verbs in *-uire*, viz.: compounds of *-duire* (*dé-, en-, in-, intro-, pro-, recon-, repro-, ré-, sé-, tra-duire*); — compounds of *-struire*, *con-, in-, recon-struire*); — *dé-truire*; — *cuire* (*dé-, re-*); — *luire* (*re-luire*: both p. p. *-lui*); *nuire* (p. p. *nui*).

Only the defective *bruire* (which see) deviates.

<i>Connaitre</i> (159. D. 2)	<i>connaissant</i>	<i>connu</i>	<i>connais</i>	<i>connus</i>
know	Pr. S.		<i>connais</i>	Ipf. S.
F.	<i>connaisse</i>		<i>connait</i>	<i>connusse</i>
<i>connaîtrai</i>	Ipf. I.		<i>connaissons</i>	
C.	<i>connaissais</i>		<i>connaissiez</i>	
<i>connaîtrais</i>			<i>connaissent</i>	
			Imp've	
			<i>connais</i>	

[Lat. *co-gnoscere* 'know': Old Fr. *conoistre*, *t* intercalated; later *con-naître* (the circumflex denoting the loss of s); *sc = ss* in *connaissant* and derived forms. Cf. *naître*.]

So all verbs in *-aître*, except *naître*: i.e. the compounds *mé-connaître*, *re-connaître*; — and farther *paraître* with compounds, *paître* (defective), *re-paître*.

*Con-quérir* 'conquer' = *ac-quérir* (which see).

*Con-traindre* 'constrain': conjugated = *peindre* (which see).

<i>Coudre</i> (159. D. 3) sew	<i>cousant</i> Pr. S. <i>couse</i>	<i>cousu</i>	<i>couds</i> <i>couds</i> <i>coud</i> <i>cousons</i> <i>cousez</i> <i>cousent</i> Imp've <i>couds</i>	<i>cousis</i> Ipf. S. <i>cousisse</i>
F. <i>coudrai</i>	Ipf. I. <i>cousais</i>			
C. <i>coudrais</i>				

[Lat. *con-suere*, whose *s* appears outside of the infinit.]

So also *dé-coudre*, *re-coudre*.

<i>Courir</i> (160. B) run	<i>courant</i> Pr. S. <i>coure</i>	<i>couru</i>	<i>cours</i> etc. = 3d conj'n Imp've. <i>cours</i>	<i>courus</i> Ipf. S. <i>courusse</i>
F. <i>courrai</i> <sup>1</sup>	Ipf. I. <i>courais</i>			
C. <i>courrais</i> <sup>1</sup>				

[Lat. *currere* (through *currere*) 'run.' The *rr* of the inf. through loss of *i*, as usual where *-rir* follows a vowel. Cf. *mour'rai*.]

So also all compounds *ac-*, *con-*, *dis-*, *en-*, *par-*, *re-*, *se-*, *s'entre-secourir* (hyphen, as here). Of these *ac-courir* usually has *être* in comp'd tenses.

<i>Couvrir</i> (159. B) cover	<i>couvrant</i> Pr. S. <i>couvre</i>	<i>couvert</i>	<i>couvre</i> etc. = 1st conj'n Imp've <i>couvre</i>	<i>couvris</i> Ipf. S. <i>couvrisse</i>
F. <i>couvrirai</i>	Ipf. I. <i>couvrais</i>			
C. <i>couvrais</i>				

[Lat. *co-operire* 'cover,' *p* changed to *v*.]

So all verbs in *-vrir* and *-frir*, viz.: compounds of *couvrir* (*dé-*, *re-couvrir*); *ouvrir* (with *entr'ouvrir*, *rouvrir*); — *offrir*, *souffrir*.

*-crire*: (same as *-scrire*, Lat. *scribere* 'write') in *é-crire* (which see), *d ré-crire*.

<sup>1</sup> Pron. *cour-rai(s)*, to distinguish from the Ipf. *cou-rai*.

<i>Craindre</i> fear	<i>craignant</i>	<i>craint</i>	<i>crains</i>	<i>craignis</i>
-------------------------	------------------	---------------	---------------	-----------------

Conjugated like *peindre* (which see).

[The usual derivation from Lat. *tremere* seems uncertain.]

<i>Croire</i> (159. E) believe F. <i>croirai</i> C. <i>croirais</i>	<i>croyant</i> (36) Pr. S. <i>croie</i> Ipf. I. <i>croyais</i>	<i>cru</i>	<i>crois</i> <i>crois</i> <i>croit</i> <i>croyons</i> <i>croyez</i> <i>croient</i> Imp've. <i>crois</i>	<i>crus</i> Ipf. S. <i>crusse</i>
---	--	------------	--	---

[L. *credere* 'believe':  $\bar{e} = oi$ , which before a vowel is *oy*.]

*Ac-croire* used only in *faire accroire* 'make believe.'

<i>Croître</i> (159. D. 2) grow F. <i>croitrai</i> C. <i>croitrais</i>	<i>croissant</i> Pr. S. <i>croisse</i> Ipf. I. <i>croissais</i>	<i>crû</i>	<i>crois</i> <i>crois</i> <i>croit</i> <i>croissons</i> <i>croissez</i> <i>croissent</i> Imp've <i>crois</i>	<i>crûs</i> Ipf. S. <i>crûsse</i>
--	---	------------	---	---

[Lat. *creſcere* 'grow': old form *croistre*, *t* intercalated; later *croître* (^ denoting the loss of *s*). In *croissant* and derived forms *sc = ss*. The circumflex of *crû*, *crois*, *crûs* (*crûsse*) to distinguish these forms from *cru*, *crois*, *crus* of *croire* (see above).]

So also *ac-croître*, *dé-croître*, *re-croître*, *sur-croître*, though the vicarious circumflex is often omitted in *-cru*, *-crois*, *-crus* (*crusse*).

<i>Cueillir</i> (159. C) cull F. <i>cueillerai</i> C. <i>cueillerais</i>	<i>cueillant</i> Pr. S. <i>cueille</i> Ipf. I. <i>cueillais</i>	<i>cueilli</i>	<i>cueille</i> Imp've <i>cueille</i>	<i>cueillis</i> Ipf. S. <i>cueillisse</i>
---	---	----------------	--	---

[Lat. *col-ligere* = *con* + *legere* (cf. *cueillerai*).]

So also *ac-cueillir*, *re-cueillir*.

<i>Cuire</i> (159. D. 1) cook	<i>cuisant</i>	<i>cuit</i>	<i>cuis</i>	<i>cuisis</i>
Conjugated like <i>con-duire</i> (which see). [Lat. <i>coquere</i> 'cook' (later <i>cocere</i> : <i>c = s</i> in <i>conduisant</i> , etc.)]				
<i>Dé-choir</i> fall, decline	<i>déchânt</i> or <i>déchoyant</i>	<i>déchu</i>	<i>déchois</i> etc. cf.	<i>déchus</i> Ipf. S.
F. C. <i>décherrai(s)</i>	Pr. S. <i>déchoie</i>		<i>voir</i>	<i>déchusse</i>

*Dé-crire* 'describe': (conjugated = *écrire*, which see).

*Dé-truire* 'destroy': conjugated like *conduire* (which see). [Lat. *de-struere*.]

<i>Devoir</i> (160. D) owe	<i>devant</i> Pr. S. <i>doive</i>	<i>dû</i> (f. <i>due</i> )	<i>dois</i> <i>dois</i> <i>doit</i>	<i>due</i> Ipf. S. <i>duisse</i>
F. <i>devrai</i>	<i>doives</i> <i>doive</i>		<i>devons</i> <i>devez</i>	
C. <i>devrais</i>	<i>devions</i> <i>deviez</i> <i>doivent</i>		<i>doivent</i> Imp've <i>dois</i>	
	Ipf. I. <i>devais</i>			

[Lat. *debere*: *b* changed to *v*; and *e*, when accented, to *oi*. *Dû* with circumflex to distinguish the form from *du = de le*.]

Observe that *devoir* is conjugated precisely like *-cevoir* of *recevoir*, except that it has the circumflex in *dû*.—So also *re-devoir*, which, however, has *re-du*.

<i>Dire</i> (159. D. 1) say	<i>disant</i> Pr. S. <i>dise</i>	<i>dit</i>	<i>dis</i> <i>dis</i> <i>dit</i>	<i>dis</i> Ipf. S. <i>disse</i>
F. <i>dirai</i>	Ipf. I. <i>disais</i>		<i>disons</i> <i>dites</i> <i>disent</i>	
C. <i>dirais</i>			Imp've <i>dis</i>	

[Lat. *dicere* 'say,' whose *c* appears as *s* in pr. part. and derived parts.]

So also compounds of *dire* (*contre-*, *dé-*, *inter-*, *mau-*, *mé-*, *pré-*, *re-dire*), except that *maudire* has *ss* in pr. part. (*maudissant*) and derived parts; and that they all, save *redire*, have *-disez*, instead of *-dites*, in 2d pl. pres. ind.

<i>Dormir</i> (159. B) sleep F. <i>dormirai</i> C. <i>dormirais</i>	<i>dormant</i> Pr. S. <i>dorme</i> Ipf. I. <i>dormais</i>	<i>dormi</i>	<i>dors</i> <i>dors</i> <i>dort</i> <i>dormons</i> <i>dormez</i> <i>dorment</i> Imp've <i>dors</i>	<i>dormis</i> Ipf. S. <i>dormisse</i>
---	---	--------------	---	---

[Lat. *dormire* 'sleep.'] So also *en-dormir*, *r-en-dormir*.

-*duire* (Lat. *ducere*) in *con-duire* (which see), *dé-*, *in-*, *intro-*, *pro-*, *ré-*, *sé-*, *tra-duire*.

<i>Échoir</i> fall due F. <i>il echerra</i>	<i>éch ant</i> — —	<i>échu</i> .	<i>il echoit</i> <sup>1</sup> —	— Ipf. S. <i>il échût</i>
--	--------------------------	---------------	------------------------------------	---------------------------------

Forms not given, lacking. [Lat. *ec-cadère* (through *-cadère*).]

<i>Écrire</i> (159. D. 6) write F. <i>écrivrai</i> C. <i>écrivrais</i>	<i>écrivait</i> Pr. S. <i>écrive</i> Ipf. I. <i>écrivais</i>	<i>écrit</i>	<i>écris</i> <i>écris</i> <i>écrit</i> <i>écrivons</i> <i>écrivez</i> <i>écrivent</i> Imp've <i>écris</i>	<i>écrivis</i> Ipf. S. <i>écrivisse</i>
--	--	--------------	--	---

[Lat. *scribere* 'write': *é-* simply euphonic (commonly before *sc-*, *sm-*, *sp*, *st-*); *b* lost or changed to *v*.]

So also *dé-crire*, *ré-crire*; and compounds in *-scrire*.

<i>Envoyer</i> (160. A) send F. <i>enverrai</i> C. <i>enverrais</i>	<i>envoyant</i> Pr. S. <i>envoie</i> Ipf. I. <i>envoyais</i>	<i>envoyé</i>	<i>envoie</i> (131) Imp've <i>envoie</i>	<i>envoyai</i> Ipf. S. <i>envoyasse</i>
--	--	---------------	--	---

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes written, as it is pronounced, *échet*.

[Probably from *en voie* (Lat. *via*) 'on the way.' For the interchange of *y* and *i* cf. 131.]

So also *ren-voyer* (but *con-voyer*, *four-voyer* regular).

*Être*: cf. 137.

<i>*Faillir</i>	<i>faillant</i>	<i>failli</i>	<i>faux</i>	<i>faillis</i>
fail, err	Pr. S.		<i>faux</i>	Ipf. S.
F.	—		<i>faut</i>	—
<i>faillirai</i>	Ipf. I.		<i>faillons</i>	
or <i>faudrai</i>	<i>faillais</i>		<i>failliez</i>	
C.			<i>faillent</i>	
<i>faillirais</i>			Imp've	
or <i>faudrais</i>			—	

Not much used outside of inf., past part., and pret.

[Lat. *fallere* (through *fallire*).] So also *dé-faillir*.

<i>Faire</i>	<i>faisant</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>fait</i>	<i>fais</i>	<i>fis</i>
(160. C)	Pr. S.		<i>fais</i>	Ipf. S.
do, make	<i>fasse</i>		<i>fait</i>	<i>fisse</i>
F.	Ipf. I.		<i>faisons</i>	
<i>ferai</i>	<i>faisais</i> <sup>2</sup>		<i>faites</i>	
C.			<i>font</i>	
<i>ferais</i>			Imp've	
			<i>fais</i>	
			<i>faisons</i>	
			<i>faites</i>	

[Lat. *facere* 'make': *c*, lost in the inf., appears as *s(s)* in the pres. part. and derived forms.]

So also the compounds *contre-*, *dé-*, *par-*, *re-*, *redé-*, *satis-*, and *sur-faire*; but *for-*, *mal-* or *mé-faire* occur only in inf. and past. part.

<i>*Falloir</i>	—	<i>fallu</i>	<i>il faut</i>	<i>il fallut</i>
be necessary	Pr. S.	<i>il a fallu</i>		Ipf. S.
F.	<i>il faille</i>	etc.		<i>il fallût</i>
<i>il faudra</i>	Ipf. I.			
C.	<i>il fallait</i>			
<i>il faudrait</i>				

<sup>1</sup> Pronounce *fe-zā* (15, *ai*, note 1).

<sup>2</sup> Pron. *fe-zai*.

[Lat. *fallère* (through *fallère*): *l* changed to *u* before a cons't; *oi* of -oir lacking, as usual, in fut.-cond., and *d* intercalated.]

<i>Feindre</i>	<i>feignant</i>	<i>feint</i>	<i>feins</i>	<i>feignis</i>
feign				

Conjugated like *peindre* (which see).

[Lat. *figere* 'invent': *d* intercalated; -ng = (g)n.]

\* *Férir* 'strike': only in the phrase *sans coup férir* 'without striking a blow.' [Lat. *ferire*.]

-*fire* (Lat. *ficere* = *facere* 'make') in *con-fire*, *dé-con-fire*, *suf-fire* (which see).

*Fleurir*: cf. 133, 2. So also *re-fleurir*.

-*freindre* (Lat. *fringere* = *frangere* 'break') in *en-freindre* 'infringe': conjugated like *peindre* (which see).

-*frir* (Lat. *ferre*) in *of-frir*, *souf-frir*, both = *offrir*, which see.

\* *Frîre* 'fry' and *re-frîre*: only past part. *frit*; pres. ind. *fris*, *fris*, *frit*; Ipv. *fris*; fut. cond. *frirai(s)* throughout. — [Lat. *frigere* 'roast.']

<i>Fuir</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>fuyant</i> (36)	<i>fui</i>	<i>fuis</i>	<i>fuis</i>
(159. A) flee	Pr. S.			
	<i>fui</i>		<i>fuis</i>	Ipf. S.
F.	<i>fui</i>		<i>fuit</i>	<i>fuisse</i>
<i>fuirai</i>	<i>fui</i>		<i>fuyons</i>	
	<i>fuyions</i>		<i>fuyez</i>	
C.	<i>fuyiez</i>		<i>fui</i>	
<i>fuirais</i>	<i>fui</i>		<i>fui</i>	
	Ipf. I.		Imp'v	
	<i>fuyais</i>		<i>fuis</i>	

[Lat. *fugere* (through *fugire*) 'flee.' For the interchange of *y* and *i* cf. 36.] — So also *s'en-fuir*, *re-fuir*.

*Geindre* 'sigh' is inflected like *peindre* (which see).

[Lat. *gemere*, with intercalated *d*.]

\* *Gésir* 'lie': only *gisant*; *ci-gît* (for *ici gît*) 'here lies,' *ci-gisent* 'here lie': on tomb-stones; *gisons*, *gisez*, *gisent*; *ci-gisait*, *ci-gisent*. *s* sharp, save in inf.

[Lat. *jacere* 'lie.']

*Hâtr*: cf. 133, 3. [From a Germanic word, akin to *hate*.]

\* *Issir* 'be born': only past part. *issu*. [Lat. *ex-ire*.]

<i>Joindre</i>	<i>joignant</i>	<i>joint</i>	<i>joins</i>	<i>joignis</i>
join				

Conjugated like *peindre* (which see). So *ad-*, *con-*, *dé-*, *en-*, *dis-*, *dis-joindre*.

<sup>1</sup> *ui* is a diphthong.



[Lat. *jungere*: *d* intercalated; *ng* = (*g*)*n*.]

So also compounds: *ad-*, *con-*, *dé-*, *dis-*, *re-*, *re-joindre*.

<i>Lire</i> (159. D. 1)	<i>lisant</i>	<i>lu</i>	<i>lis</i>	<i>lus</i>
read	Pr. S. <i>lise</i>		<i>lis</i> <i>lit</i>	Ipf. S. <i>lusse</i>
F. <i>lirai</i>	Ipf. I. <i>lisais</i>		<i>lisons</i> <i>lisez</i>	
C. <i>lirais</i>			<i>lisent</i> Imp've <i>lis</i>	

[Lat. *legere* 'pick, read': *s* of *lisant*, etc., in analogy with *disant*, etc.]

So also *re-lire*, *é-lire*, *ré-é-lire*, *pré-lire*.

<i>Luire</i> shine	<i>luisant</i>	<i>lui</i>	<i>luis</i>	* <i>luisis</i>
Conjugated like <i>con-duire</i> (which see), noticing that the past part. is <i>lui</i> . — So also <i>re-luire</i> .				

[Lat. *lucere* 'shine': *c* = *s* where it is not lost.]

<i>Mentir</i> lie	<i>mentant</i>	<i>menti</i>	<i>mens</i>	<i>mentis</i>
Conjugated like <i>sentir</i> (which see).				

[Lat. *mentiri* 'lie.'] So also *dé-mentir*.

<i>Mettre</i> (159. E)	<i>mettant</i>	<i>mis</i>	<i>mets</i> (cf. 134)	<i>mis</i>
put	Pr. S. <i>mette</i>		<i>mets</i> <i>met</i>	Ipf. S. <i>misse</i>
F. <i>mettrai</i>	Ipf. I. <i>mettais</i>		<i>mettons</i> <i>mettez</i>	
C. <i>mettrais</i>			<i>mettent</i> Imp've <i>mets</i>	

[Lat. *mittere* 'let go, send.'] — So also compounds: *ad-*, *com-*, *compro-*, *dé-*, *é-*, *s'entre-*, *o-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sou-*, and *trans-mettre*.

<i>Moudre</i> (159. D. 4)	<i>moulant</i>	<i>moulu</i> (avoir)	<i>mouls</i>	<i>moulus</i>
grind	Pr. S. <i>moule</i>		<i>mouls</i> <i>moud</i>	Ipf. S. <i>moulusse</i>
F. <i>moudrai</i>	Ipf. I. <i>moulais</i>		<i>moulons</i> <i>moulez</i>	
C. <i>moudrais</i>			<i>moulent</i> Imp've <i>mouls</i>	

[Lat. *mōlere* 'grind': *d* inserted after *l* before cons't (*moldre*); and *l* = *u*, or retained before vowel.]

So also *é-moudre*, *re-moudre*, *ré-moudre*.

<i>Mourir</i>	<i>mourant</i>	<i>mort</i>	<i>meurs</i>	<i>mourus</i>
(160. B)	Pr. S.	(être: 142)	<i>meurs</i>	Ipf. S.
die	<i>meure</i>		<i>meurt</i>	<i>mourusse</i>
F.	<i>meures</i>		<i>mourons</i>	
<i>mourrai</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>meure</i>		<i>mourez</i>	
C.	<i>mourions</i>		<i>meurent</i>	
<i>mourrais</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>mouriez</i>		Imp've	
	<i>meurent</i>		<i>meurs</i>	
	Ipf. I.			
	<i>mourais</i>			

[Lat. *mōriri* (for *mori*): *o* accented = *eu*, unaccented = *ou* (cf. *pouvoir*); *i* dropped in fut.-cond., as usual, when *-rir* is preceded by a vowel (cf. *cour'rai*, *acquer'rai*).]

<i>Mouvoir</i>	<i>mouvant</i>	<i>mu</i>	<i>meus</i>	<i>mus</i>
(160. D)	Pr. S.		<i>meus</i>	Ipf. S.
move	<i>meuve</i>		<i>meut</i>	<i>musse</i>
F.	<i>meuves</i>		<i>mouvons</i>	
<i>mouvrai</i>	<i>meuve</i>		<i>mouvez</i>	
C.	<i>mouvions</i>		<i>meuvent</i>	
<i>mouvrais</i>	<i>mouviez</i>		Imp've	
	<i>meuvent</i>		<i>meus</i>	
	Ipf. I.			
	<i>mouvais</i>			

[Lat. *mōvere* 'move': *o* accented = *eu*, unaccented = *ou* (cf. *pouvoir*, *mourir*); *oi* of *-oir*, lacking as usual, in fut.-cond.]

So also *é-mouvoir*. — *Dé-mouvoir*, *pro-mouvoir* are used only in inf. and (the latter) past part.

<i>Naître</i>	<i>naissant</i>	<i>né</i>	<i>nais</i>	<i>naquis</i>
(159. D. 2)	Pr. S.	(être: 142)	<i>nais</i>	Ipf. S.
be born	<i>je naisse</i>		<i>naît</i>	<i>naquisse</i>
F.	Ipf. I.		<i>naissons</i>	
<i>naîtrai</i>	<i>je naissais</i>		<i>naissez</i>	
C.			<i>naissent</i>	
<i>naîtrais</i>			Imp've	
			<i>nais</i>	

<sup>1</sup> Pronounce *mour-rai(s)*, to distinguish from Ipf. *mou-raïs*.

[Lat. *nascere* (for *nasci* 'be born': 113): old form *naistre*, *t* intercalated; later *naître* (the circumflex denoting the loss of *s*); *sc* = *ss* in *naissant* and derivatives. Cf. *croître*.]

So also *re-naître*.

*-naître* (Lat. *gnoscere*) in *connaître*, which see.

<i>Nuire</i>	<i>nuisant</i>	<i>nui</i>	<i>nuis</i>	<i>nuisis</i>
hurt				

Conjugated like *con-duire* (which see), except that the past part. is *nui*.

[Lat. *nō-cēre* (through *nocēre*) 'hurt': *c* = *s* where not lost.]

<i>Offrir</i>	<i>offrant</i>	<i>offert</i>	<i>offre</i>	<i>offris</i>
offer				

Conjugated like *couvrir* (which see).

[Lat. *of-ferre*, through *of-f(e)rēre*, 'offer.']

<i>Oindre</i>	<i>oignant</i>	<i>oint</i>	<i>oigne</i>	<i>oignis</i>
anoint				

Conjugated like *peindre* (which see).

[Lat. *ungere*: *d* intercalated; *ng* = *gn* or simply *n*.]

\**Ouir* 'hear': only past part. *ouï*; pr. ind. *ouis*, etc.; ipf. subj. *ouïsse*, etc. [Lat. *audire*.]

<i>Ouvrir</i>	<i>ouvrant</i>	<i>ouvert</i>	<i>ouvre</i>	<i>ouvris</i>
open				

Conjugated like *couvrir* (which see). So also *r-ouvrir*.

[Lat. *aperire* 'open': *p* changed to *v*.]

\**Paître* 'graze' = *connaître*; but not used in the pret., and rarely in the past part. *Re-paître* = *connaître*.

[Lat. *pascere* (for *pasci* 'feed': 113 A).]

<i>Paraître</i>	<i>paraissant</i>	<i>paru</i>	<i>paraît</i>	<i>parus</i>
appear				

Conjugated like *connaître* (which see).

[Vulg. Lat. *parascere* (for *parere* 'appear'): old form *paraistre*, *t* intercalated, later *paraître* (^ for the loss of *s*); *sc* = *ss* in *paraissant* and derived forms.]

So also the compounds *ap-*, *com-*, *dis-*, *re-paraître*.

*-paroir* (Lat. *parere* 'appear') in *ap-paroir*, which see.

<i>Partir</i>	<i>partant</i>	<i>parti</i>	<i>parte</i>	<i>partis</i>
depart				

Conjugated like *sentir* (which see).

[Lat. *partiri* 'divide, separate.'] — So also *re-partir*, *dé-partir*.

<i>Peindre</i> (159. D. 5)	<i>peignant</i>	<i>peint</i>	<i>peins</i>	<i>peignis</i>
paint	Pr. S. <i>peigne</i>		<i>peins</i>	Ipf. S. <i>peignisse</i>
F. <i>peindrai</i>	Ipf. I. <i>peignais</i>		<i>peignons</i>	
			<i>peignez</i>	
C. <i>peindrais</i>			<i>peignent</i>	
			Imp've <i>peins</i>	

[Lat. *pingere* 'paint': *i* = *ei*; *d* intercalated in inf.; *ng* = *n* or (before a vowel) *gn*.]

So all verbs in *-ndre* [i.e. in *-aindre*: *contraindre*, *craindre*, *plaindre*; — in *-sindre*: *ceindre* with comp., *feindre*, *-freindre* (in *en-*), *geindre*, *peindre* (compounds of *dé-*, *re-*), *-preindre* (in *é-*, *em-*), *-streindre* (in *a-*, *re-*), *teindre* (and compounds of *teindre* or *-teindre*, which see: *at-*, *dé-*, *é-*, *rat-*, *re-*, *ré-*), *-treindre* (in *é-*); — *-oindre*: *joindre* (and compounds: cf. the verb), *oindre*, *poindre* (defective).] All, save *craindre* (?), are derived from a Latin form in *-ngere*, treated in analogy with *pingere*, as explained above.

<i>Plaindre</i> pity	<i>plaignant</i>	<i>plaint</i>	<i>plaints</i>	<i>plaignis</i>
-------------------------	------------------	---------------	----------------	-----------------

Conjugated like *peindre* (which see).

[Lat. *plangere*: *d* intercalated; *ng* = (*g*)*n*.]

<i>Plaire</i> (159. D. 1)	<i>plaisant</i>	<i>plu</i>	<i>plais</i>	<i>plus</i>
please	Pr. S. <i>plaise</i>		<i>plais</i>	Ipf. S. <i>plusse</i>
F. <i>plairai</i>	Ipf. I. <i>plaisais</i>		<i>plaît</i>	
			<i>plaisons</i>	
C. <i>plairais</i>			<i>plaisez</i>	
			<i>plaisent</i>	
			Imp've <i>plais</i>	

[Lat. *plācere* (through vulg. Lat. *plācēre*) 'please': *c* = *s* where not lost. Its loss in *plait* (= *placet*) denoted by a circumflex.]

So also *com-plaire*, *dé-plaire*, and *taire*, which however has no circumflex in *taît*, but may have one in p. p., *tû* (or *tu*), to distinguish this form from *tu* 'thou.'

<b>Pleuvoir</b> (160. D) rain	<b>pleuvant</b>	<b>plu</b>	<b>il pleut</b>	<b>il plut</b>
F.	Pr. S.			Ip. S.
<i>il pleuvra</i>	<i>il pleuve</i>			<i>il plût</i>
C.	Ip. I.			
<i>il pleuvrait</i>	<i>il pleuvait</i>			

[Lat. *pluëre* (through vulg. Lat. *pluëre*): *v* intercalated before a vowel (cf. Lat. *plu-vi-um*); *oi* of -oir lacking, as usual, in fut.-cond.]

In figurative use the 3d plurals are also found (e.g. *les compliments pleuvent sur elle*).

\**Poindre* 'dawn': only *il point*; *il poindra*; *poignez*.

[Lat. *pungere*: *d* intercalated, *ng* = (*g*)*n*.]

<b>Pouvoir</b> (160. D) be able	<b>pouvant</b>	<b>pu</b>	<b>peux (or puis<sup>1</sup>) pus</b>	
F.	Pr. S.		<i>peux</i>	Ip. S.
<i>pourrai</i>	<i>puisse</i>		<i>peut</i>	<i>pusse</i>
C.	Ip. I.		<i>pouvons</i>	
<i>pourrais</i>	<i>pouvais</i>		<i>pouvez</i>	
			<i>peuvent</i>	

[Vulg. Lat. *potere* (for *posse* 'be able'): *t* lost and *v* intercalated before vowel; *o* accented = *eu*, unaccented = *ou* (cf. *mourir*, *mouvoir*); in fut.-cond. *oi* of -oir lacking, as usual, and *rr* for old *dr*.]

-*prendre* (Lat. *premere*) in *é-preindre*, *em-preindre*: both like *peindre* (which see).

<b>Prendre</b> (159. E) take	<b>prenant</b>	<b>pris</b>	<b>prends</b>	<b>pris</b>
F.	Pr. S.		<i>prends</i>	Ip. S.
<i>prendrai</i>	<i>prenne</i> (35)		<i>prend</i>	<i>prisse</i>
C.	<i>prennes</i>		<i>prenons</i>	
<i>prendrais</i>	<i>prenne</i>		<i>prenez</i>	
	<i>preniens</i>		<i>prennent</i>	
	<i>preniez</i>		Imp'v	
	<i>prennent</i>		<i>prends</i>	
	Ip. I.			
	<i>prenais</i>			

[Lat. *prendere* (= *prehendere*) 'take': *n* doubled before *e*: 35. — So *ap-*, *com-*, *dé*, *désap-*, *entre-*, *mé-*, *rap-*, *re-*, *sur-*, *s'é-prendre* (only in past part.).]

<sup>1</sup> Chiefly in questions (*puis-je?* etc.) and with *ne* (*je ne puis . . .*).

*Querir* 'seek, find out': only in inf. (with *aller*, *envoyer*, *venir*); and in the compounds *ac-querir* (which see), *con-querir* (*re-conquerir*), *en-querir*, *re-querir*.

<i>Recevoir</i> (160. D) receive F. <i>recevrai</i> C. <i>recevrais</i>	<i>recevant</i> Pr. S. <i>reçoive</i> <i>reçoives</i> <i>reçoive</i> <i>recevions</i> <i>receviez</i> <i>reçoivent</i> Ipf. I. <i>recevais</i>	<i>reçu</i>	<i>reçois</i> <i>reçois</i> <i>reçoit</i> <i>recevons</i> <i>recevez</i> <i>reçoivent</i> Imp've <i>reçois</i>	<i>reçus</i> Ipf. S. <i>reçusse</i>
---	---	-------------	---	---

[Lat. *re-cipere* (through vulg. Lat. *re-cipere* : *p* changed to *v*, and *ē*, when accented, to *oi* (cf. *devoir*).]

So all compounds (*aper-*, *con-*, *dé-*, *per-cevoir*).

*Re-pentir* (*se*) 'repent': conjugated like *sentir* (which see). [*-pentir* from Lat. *paenitere*.]

<i>Résoudre</i> (169. D. 4) resolve F. <i>résoudrai</i> C. <i>résoudrais</i>	<i>résolvant</i> Pr. S. <i>résolve</i> Ipf. I. <i>résolvais</i>	<i>résolu</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>résous</i> <i>résous</i> <i>résout</i> <i>résolvons</i> <i>résolvez</i> <i>résolvent</i> Imp've <i>résous</i>	<i>résolus</i> Ipf. S. <i>résolusse</i>
--	---	----------------------------	---	---

[Lat. *re-solvere* : *d* intercalated in inf.; *-olv-* = *-olv-* (before vowel, exc. *u*), or *-ol-* (before *u*), or *-ou-* (before consonants).]

So also *ab-soudre* (but past part. m. *absous*, f. *absoute*), *dis-soudre* (but past part. m. *dissout*, f. *dissoute*).

<i>Rire</i> (169. E) laugh F. <i>rirai</i> C. <i>rirais</i>	<i>riant</i> Pr. S. <i>rie</i> Ipf. I. <i>riaais</i>	<i>ri</i>	<i>ris</i> Imp've <i>ris</i>	<i>ris</i> Ipf. S. <i>risse</i>
--	--	-----------	------------------------------------	---------------------------------------

[Lat. *ridere* 'laugh.'] So also *sou-rire* 'smile.'

<sup>1</sup> Also *résous* (no f.) in sense of 'dissolved, changed.'

*Rouvrir* 're-open' = *ouvrir*, which see.

\* *Saillir* 'project' conjugates like *as-saillir* (which see), except that the fut.-cond. is *saillirai(s)*. But it occurs only in the 3d persons sing. and plur. — (In the sense of 'spout out' it is regular).

[Lat. *salire* 'jump.'] For *as-saillir*, *tres-saillir*, see the former.

<i>Savoir</i> (160. D) know F. <i>saurai</i> C. <i>saurais</i>	<i>sachant</i> Pr. S. <i>sache</i> Ipf. I. <i>savais</i>	<i>su</i>	<i>sais</i> <i>sais</i> <i>sait</i> <i>savons</i> <i>savez</i> <i>savent</i> Imp'v'e <i>sache</i> <i>sachons</i> <i>sachez</i>	<i>sus</i> Ipf. S. <i>susse</i>
--	--	-----------	---	---------------------------------------

[Lat. *săpĕre* (through vulg. Lat. *săpĕre*) 'be wise': *p* = *v*; *ch* in *sachant*, etc., owing to the reduction of *pi* in *sapient-* to a fricative *j* (cf. *diurnus* = *jour*); — *oi* of *-oir* lacking, as usual, in fut.-cond., and *v* = *u*.] — *-scrire* (Lat. *scribere*) in the compounds *circon-*, *in-*, *pre-*, *pro-*, *sou-*, *transcrire*, all conjugated like *écrire*, which see.

<i>Sentir</i> (159. B) feel F. <i>sentirai</i> C. <i>sentirais</i>	<i>sentant</i> Pr. S. <i>sente</i> Ipf. I. <i>sentais</i>	<i>senti</i>	<i>sens</i> <i>sens</i> <i>sont</i> <i>sentons</i> <i>sentez</i> <i>sentent</i> Imp'v'e <i>sens</i>	<i>sentis</i> Ipf. S. <i>sentisse</i>
--	---	--------------	--	---

[Lat. *sentire* 'feel.']

So also compounds (*as-*, *con-*, *pres-*, *res-sentir*); and farther *mentir* (*dé-mentir*), *partir* (*re-*, *dé-partir*), *se repentir*, *servir*, *sortir* (*ressortir*).

\* *Seoir* 'fit': only *seant*; past part. *sis*; pr. ind. *il sied*; fut.-cond. *il siéra(it)*.

[Lat. *sedere* 'be seated.']

Compounds: *as-seoir* (see the verb), *sur-seoir* (only past part. *sur-sis*, pres. ind. *surseois*, pret. *sursis*), *ras-seoir* (see *asseoir*).

<i>Servir</i> serve	<i>servant</i>	<i>servi</i>	<i>sers</i>	<i>servis</i>
------------------------	----------------	--------------	-------------	---------------

Conjugated like *sentir* (which see).

[Lat. *servire* 'serve.'] So also *des-servir*. But *as-servir* is regular.

<i>Sortir</i>	<i>sortant</i>	<i>sorti</i>	<i>sorts</i>	<i>sortis</i>
go out				

Conjugated like *sentir* (which see).

[Lat. *sortiri* 'go out.'] So also *res-sortir*.

*Soudre* (Lat. *solvere*) 'solve': only the inf. — Also in the compounds *ab-soudre*, *dis-soudre*, and *ré-soudre* (which last see).

<i>Souffrir</i>	<i>souffrant</i>	<i>souffert</i>	<i>souffre</i>	<i>souffrit</i>
suffer				

Conjugated like *couvrir* (which see).

[Lat. *suf-fere*, through *suf-f(e)rère*, 'bear.']

*Souloir* (Lat. *solere*) 'be accustomed': only in *il soulait*.

*Sourdre* (Lat. *surgere*) 'rise up, gush': only pres. ind. *sourd*, *sourdent*.

*-streindre* (Lat. *stringere* 'press') in *a-streindre*, *re-streindre*, both like *peindre*, which see.

*-struire* (Lat. *struere* 'build') in *con-struire* (*recon-struire*), *in-struire*, all like *conduire*, which see.

<i>Suf-fire</i> (151. D. 1)	<i>suffisant</i>	<i>suffi</i>	<i>suffis</i>	<i>suffis</i>
suffice	Pr. S. <i>suffise</i>		<i>suffis</i> <i>suffit</i>	Ipf. S. <i>suffisse</i>
F. <i>suffirai</i>	Ipf. I. <i>suffisais</i>		<i>suffisons</i> <i>suffisez</i> <i>suffisent</i>	
C. <i>suffirais</i>			Imp've <i>suffis</i>	

[Lat. *suf-ficere* 'suffice': c = s where not lost.]

So also *con-fire*, *décon-fire*, except past part. *confit*, *déconfit*. — Also *circconcire* (exc. past part. *-cis*).

<i>Suivre</i> (159. E)	<i>suivant</i>	<i>suiwi</i>	<i>suis</i>	<i>suiwis</i>
follow	Pr. S. <i>suive</i>		<i>suis</i> <i>suit</i>	Ipf. S. <i>suivisse</i>
F. <i>suivrai</i>	Ipf. I. <i>suivais</i>		<i>suiavons</i> <i>suiwez</i> <i>suiwent</i>	
C. <i>suivrais</i>			Imp've <i>suis</i>	



[Vulg. Lat. *sequere* (for *sequi* 'follow': 113, A): *qu* = *v*.]

So also *s'entre-suivre*, *poursuivre*. *S'ensuivre* only in 3d sing. and pl.

<i>Taire</i> keep silent	<i>taisant</i>	<i>tu</i> (or <i>tù</i> )	<i>tais</i>	<i>tus</i>
-----------------------------	----------------	---------------------------	-------------	------------

Conjugated like *plaître* (which see), except that *taît* (3d sing. pres. ind.) has no circumflex. Usually refl., *se taire* 'be silent.'

[Lat. *tacēre* (through vulg. L. *tācēre*) 'be silent': *c* = *s* where not lost.]

<i>Tenir</i> (160. B) hold	<i>tenant</i> Pr. S. <i>tienne</i> F. <i>tiendrai</i> C. <i>tiendrais</i>	<i>tenu</i>	<i>tiens</i> <i>tiens</i> <i>tient</i> <i>tenons</i> <i>tenez</i> <i>tiennent</i> Imp've <i>tiens</i>	<i>tins</i> <i>tins</i> <i>tint</i> <i>tinmes</i> <i>tîntes</i> <i>tinrent</i> Ipf. S. <i>tinsses</i>
	Ipf. I. <i>tenais</i>			

[Lat. *tēnēre* (through *tēnīre*): *ē* accented changed to *ie* or *i* (pret.); in fut.-cond. *e*, though unaccented, = *ie* (to distinguish from fut.-cond. of *tendre*: so also *viendrai* of *venir* to distinguish from fut. of *vendre*); *i* of -*ir* lost, and *d* intercalated.] — So also compounds (*abs*-, *appar*-, *con*-, *dé*-, *entre*-, *main*-, *ob*-, *re*-, *sou-tenir*). — Also *venir*.

<i>Teindre</i> tint	<i>teignant</i>	<i>teint</i>	<i>teins</i>	<i>teignis</i>
------------------------	-----------------	--------------	--------------	----------------

Conjugated like *peindre* (which see). Comp'ds *deteindre*, *reteindre*.

[Lat. *tingere*: cf. *pingere* under *peindre*.]

*-teindre* = *peindre*, in *at*-, *rat-teindre* [fr. Lat. (*at*)*tingere*]; and in *é*-, *ré-teindre* [fr. Lat. (*ex*)*tinguere*]. Cf. also *teindre* above.

*-treindre* in *étreindre* (Lat. *stringere*) 'tighten, bind': conjugated like *teindre*.

* <i>Traire</i> milk	<i>trayant</i> Pr. S. <i>traie</i> Ipf. I. <i>trayais</i>	<i>trait</i>	<i>trais</i> (pl. <i>trayons</i> etc.) Imp've <i>trais</i>	—
F. <i>trairai</i>				
C. <i>trairais</i>				

[Lat. *trāhēre* 'draw.']

So also compounds (*abs*-, *dis*-, *ex*-, *ren*-, *re*-, *sous*-, *at-traire*).

*-truire* (Lat. *struere*) in *dé-truire*, which see.



[Lat. *vivere* 'live': *i* changed to *é* before *c* (which represents the Lat. *k*-sound in *vixi* = *vic-si*, *vic-tum*.)]

So also *re-vivre*, *sur-vivre*.

<i>Voir</i> (159. D)	<i>voyant</i> (36)	<i>vu</i>	<i>vois</i>	<i>vis</i>
see	Pr. S. <i>voie</i>		<i>vois</i>	Ipf. S. <i>visse</i>
F. <i>verrai</i>	<i>voies</i>		<i>voit</i>	
C. <i>verrais</i>	<i>voie</i>		<i>voyons</i>	
	<i>voyions</i>		<i>voyez</i>	
	<i>voyiez</i>		<i>voient</i>	
	<i>voient</i>		Imp've <i>vois</i>	
	Ipf. I. <i>voyais</i>			

[Lat. *videre* 'see': fut. *verrai*, with lacking *oi* as usual, and *rr* for old *dr* (*vedrai*). The distinction between *voy-*, *voi-* is simply orthographic: cf. 36.]

So also *entre-voir*, *pré-voir* (whose fut.-cond., however, is *préverrai*, -s), *pour-voir* (but fut.-cond. *pourverrai*, -s, and pret. *pourvus*), *re-voir*. — *dé-pourvoir*, only in the inf. and past part.

<i>Vouloir</i> (160. D)	<i>voulant</i>	<i>voulu</i>	<i>voux</i>	<i>voulus</i>
wish	Pr. S. <i>veuille</i>		<i>voux</i>	Ipf. S. <i>voulusse</i>
F. <i>voudrai</i>	<i>veuilles</i>		<i>veut</i>	
C. <i>voudrais</i>	<i>veuille</i>		<i>voulons</i>	
	<i>voulions</i>		<i>voulez</i>	
	<i>vouliez</i>		<i>veulent</i>	
	<i>veillent</i>		Imp've <i>veuille</i>	
	Ipf. I. <i>voulais</i>		<i>veuilions</i>	
			<i>veuillez</i>	
			(cf. note)	

NOTE. — Usually, the imperat. form is *veuillez* 'please.'

[Lat. *volo* (through *völere* = *velle*) 'wish': *ø* accented = *eu*, unaccented = *ou*; *l* lost before consonant; *oi* of -oir lacking, as usual, in fut.-cond., where *d* is intercalated.]

## IX.

## INDECLINABLE WORDS.

[162. HISTORY.—Of Indeclinables a rather limited number are directly derived from the Latin (e.g. *bien* from *bene*, *donc* from *tunc*, *très* from *trans*; *à* from *ad*, *en* from *in*; *et* from *et*, *ou* from *aut*: etc.). The majority are formed by later composition (cf. *assez* from *ad satis*, *jamais* from *jam magis*, *encore* from *hanc oram*, *enfin* from Fr. *en* and *fin*; *avant* from *ab ante*, *avec* from *apud hoc*, *à travers*, *sans que*, etc.); or by derivation from other parts of speech (cf. *chez* ‘at’ from *in casa* ‘in the house,’ Old Fr. *en chez*; *hors*, prep., ‘out of’—like *fors* ‘except’—from *foris* ‘out of doors,’ *durant*, pres. part., ‘during’: etc.).

An important formation is that of adverbs in *-ment*. Adverbial ablative constructions like *bona mente* ‘in a good manner’ were used already in Latin, and later this *mente* (Fr. *mens*), abbreviated to *-ment*, was fused with its preceding feminine adjective into one word; and such adverbial compounds are now formed about as freely as, in English, adverbs in *-ly* (= *like*).]

163. Indeclinables, as involving no change of form, are all found directly in dictionaries, and might therefore properly be dismissed here with few words. For the convenience of students, however, who may desire to save time in reading or writing French by learning at once the most common of the indeclinables, these are enumerated below in alphabetical order.

## ADVERBS.

164. **Single adverbs** (of place, time, manner, etc.).—*ailleurs* ‘elsewhere,’ *ainsi* ‘thus, so,’ *alors* ‘then,’ *assez* ‘enough, quite, pretty,’ *aucunement* ‘by no means,’ *aujourd’hui* ‘to-day,’ *auparavant* ‘before,’ *aussi* ‘also,’ *as,* *aussitôt* ‘immediately,’ *autant* ‘as much,’ *autrefois* ‘formerly,’ *autrement* ‘otherwise’; *beaucoup* ‘much,’ *bien* ‘well, much,’ *bientôt* ‘soon’; *cependant*

'meanwhile,' *combien* 'how much,' *comme* 'as, like,' *comment* 'how'; *davantage* 'more,' *dedans* 'within,' *dehors* 'outside,' *déjà* 'already,' *demain* 'tomorrow,' *derrière* 'behind,' *désormais* 'henceforth,' *dessous* 'under,' *dessus* 'over,' *devant* 'before,' *dorénavant* 'henceforth'; *encore* 'still,' *enfin* 'in short, finally,' *ensemble* 'together,' *ensuite* 'then,' *environ* 'about,' *exprès* 'purposely'; *fort* 'very'; *hier* 'yesterday'; *ici* 'here'; *jadis* 'formerly,' *jamais* 'ever, never,' *jusque* 'till, until'; *là* 'there,' *longtemps* 'long (time),' *lors* 'then'; *maintenant* 'now,' *mal* 'badly,' *même* 'even,' *mieux* 'better,' *moins* 'less'; *ne* 'not,' *néanmoins* 'nevertheless,' *non* 'no,' *nullement* 'by no means'; *où* 'where,' *oui* 'yes'; *parfois* 'at times,' *partout* 'everywhere,' *pas* 'not,' *peu* 'little,' *pis* 'worse,' *plus* 'more,' *plutôt* 'rather,' *pourtant* 'however,' *près* 'near,' *presque* 'almost,' *puis* 'then'; *quand* 'when,' *que* (for *combien*) 'how,' *quelquefois* 'sometimes'; *si* 'yes' (used especially in reply to a negative question), *soudain(ement)* 'suddenly,' *souvent* 'often,' *surtout* 'especially'; *tant* 'so much,' *tantôt* 'by and by, recently' (*tantôt . . . tantôt* 'now . . . now'), *tard* 'late,' *tôt* 'soon,' *toujours* 'always,' *tout* 'wholly, quite,' *toutefois* 'however,' *très* 'very,' *trop* 'too, too much'; *vite* 'quickly,' *volontiers* 'willingly'; *y* 'there.'

[165.] Besides, most French adjectives may be changed to adverbs by adding *-ment* to their feminine form, or to the masculine if ending in a vowel.—Ex. *hautement* 'highly; haughtily; aloud' (from *haut* 'high'), *doucement* 'softly' (Fr. *doux* 'soft'), *follement* 'foolishly' (Fr. *fol*, fem. *folle* 'foolish': 75; so also *bellement*, etc.); *poliment* 'politely' (Fr. *poli* 'polite'), etc.

NOTE 1.—A few adjectives accent their final *e* before *-ment*.—Ex. *profondément*, *précisément*, *expressément*, etc.

NOTE 2.—Adjectives in *-nt* change *nt* to *m* before *-ment*.—Ex. *constant*: *constamment*, *patient*: *patiemment* (*-emm* pronounced as *ä-m*: 19, note 2).

166. As in English, some adjectives are, in a certain sense, used as adverbs or adverbial predicates without any change of form. Thus: *bas* 'low,' adv. 'in a low voice,' *cher* 'dear,' adv. 'dear,' *droit* 'straight,' adv. 'straightways,' *exprès* 'express,' adv. 'purposely,' *fort* 'strong,' adv. 'very,' *faux* 'false,' adv. 'out of tune,' *haut* 'high,' adv. 'loudly,' *juste* 'just,' adv. 'correctly,' *soudain* 'sudden,' adv. 'suddenly,' *vite* 'quick,' adv. 'quick(ly), fast.'

167. **Adverb-phrases** (of place, time, manner, etc.).—à *bon marché* 'cheap(ly),' à *jamais* 'forever,' à *la fois* 'at once,' à *l'envi* 'in emulation,' à *part* 'aside,' à *peine* 'hardly,' à *peu près* 'nearly, almost,' *après-demain*

'the day after to-morrow,' *à présent* 'at present, now,' *au moins* 'at least,' *au reste* 'besides,' *avant-hier* 'the day before yesterday,' *avant peu* 'before long,' *ça et là* 'here and there,' *ci-après* 'hereafter,' *ci-inclus* 'enclosed,' *ci-joint* 'annexed,' *d'abord* 'at first,' *d'accord* 'agreed,' *d'ailleurs* 'besides,' *de bonne heure* 'in good time, early,' *de là* 'hence,' *de même* 'likewise,' *de plus* 'moreover,' *de suite* 'in succession,' *dès lors* 'since then,' *d'ici* 'from here,' *d'ordinaire* 'usually,' *d'où* 'whence,' *du moins* 'at least,' *du reste* 'however,' *du tout* 'at all,' *en attendant* 'in the meantime, until,' *en avant* 'forward,' *en bas* 'below, down-stairs,' *en effet* 'in fact,' *en haut* 'aloft, up-stairs,' *là-bas* 'yonder,' *là-dessus* 'upon that, thereupon,' *ne . . . pas* (etc., cf. 169), *non plus* 'not either,' *nulle part* 'nowhere,' *par cœur* 'by heart,' *peut-être* 'perhaps,' *plus tôt* 'sooner,' *quant à* 'as to,' *quelque part* 'somewhere,' *sans doute* 'undoubtedly,' *si fait* 'yes, indeed,' *sur-le-champ* 'on the spot, at once,' *tant soit peu* 'ever so little,' *tôt ou tard* 'sooner or later,' *tour à tour* 'in turn,' *tout à coup* 'suddenly,' *tout à l'heure* 'presently,' *tout de suite* 'immediately,' *tout d'un coup* 'in one stroke.'

**168. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.**—Adverbs that can have a comparative and superlative degree are compared, like adjectives, by the aid of *plus* and *moins* (e.g. *facilement* 'easily,' *plus facilement*, *le plus facilement*). Only the following four deviate from this rule, viz. :—

POSIT.	COMPARAT.	SUPERLAT.
<i>bien</i> 'well'	<i>mieux</i>	<i>le mieux</i>
<i>mal</i> { 'badly'	<i>pis</i>	<i>le pis</i>
{ 'poorly'	<i>plus mal</i>	<i>le plus mal</i>
<i>peu</i> 'little'	<i>moins</i>	<i>le moins</i>
<i>beaucoup</i> 'much'	<i>plus</i>	<i>le plus</i>

**169. NEGATION.**—With a verb, the simple negation 'not' is usually (cf. 321-338) expressed by the aid of two words, viz. *ne*, placed before the personal form of the verb or an object-pronoun preceding it, and *pas* or (more emphatically) *point* after it.—So also *ne . . . jamais* mean 'never,' *ne . . . plus* 'no longer' (but *ne . . . pas plus* 'not more'), *ne . . . que* 'only,' *ne . . . guère* 'hardly, but little.'—Ex.

<i>Je n'ai pas.</i>	I have not.
<i>Je n'ai pas (or point) parlé.</i>	I have not spoken.
<i>Je ne lui ai pas parlé.</i>	I have not spoken to him.
<i>Je ne le lui donnerai pas (or point).</i>	I shall not give it to him.
<i>Je ne joue jamais.</i>	I never play.
<i>Je ne jouerai plus.</i>	I shall not play any more (= I shall play no longer).
<i>Je ne jouerai pas plus que lui.</i>	I shall not play any more than he.
<i>Je n'ai que trois dollars.</i>	I have only three dollars.
<i>Il n'était guère arrivé.</i>	He had hardly arrived.

For farther particulars, see Syntax.

[170.] Without a verb, 'not' is expressed by *non* or *non pas* (*non point*), or, more seldom, by *pas*, as described in the Syntax.

### PREPOSITIONS.

171. **Single prepositions.** — *après* 'after,' *avant* 'before' (in 'time or place'), *avec* 'with,' *chez* 'at (the house of),' *contre* 'against,' *dans* 'in,' *depuis* 'since,' *derrière* 'behind,' *dès* 'from, since,' *devant* 'before (a place),' *durant* 'during,' *en* 'in,' *entre* 'between,' *envers* 'towards,' *environ* 'about,' *hormis* 'except,' *jusque* 'till, until,' *malgré* 'in spite of,' *moyennant* 'by means of,' *nonobstant* 'notwithstanding,' *outre* 'besides, beyond,' *par* 'by,' *parmi* 'among,' *pendant* 'during,' *pour* 'for,' *sans* 'without,' *sauf* 'save,' *selon* 'according to,' *sous* 'under,' *suivant* 'according to,' *sur* 'on, upon,' *vers* 'towards.'

172. **Preposition-phrases.** — *à cause de* 'on account of,' *à côté de* 'by, next to,' *à force de* 'by dint of,' *à l'égard de* 'with regard to,' *à l'exception de* 'excepted,' *à l'insu de* 'unknown to,' *à moins de* 'unless,' *à travers de* 'through, across (without resistance),' *au-dedans de* 'within,' *au dehors de* 'without,' *au delà de* 'beyond,' *au-dessous de* 'under,' *au dessus de* 'upon,' *au-devant de* 'before,' *autour de* 'around,' *au lieu de* 'instead of,' *au milieu de* 'in the middle of,' *au moyen de* 'by means of,' *auprès de* 'near, by,' *au travers de* 'through, across (an obstacle),' *en deça de* 'on this side,' *en dépit de* 'in spite of,' *ensuite de* 'after,' *faute de* 'for want of,' *hors de* 'out of,' *le long de* 'along,' *près de* 'near,' *proche de* 'near,' *quant à* 'as for,' *vis-à-vis de* 'opposite to.'

## CONJUNCTIONS.

**173. Single conjunctions.** — *car* 'for,' *cependant* 'however,' *donc* 'then,' *et* 'and,' *lorsque* 'when,' *mais* 'but,' *ni* 'neither, nor,' *ou* 'or,' *pourquoi* 'why,' *pourtant* 'however,' *puisque* 'since,' *quand* 'when,' *que* 'that,' *quoique* 'although,' *si* 'if.'

**174. Conjunction-phrases.** — *afin que* 'in order that,' *ainsi que* 'as well as,' *à moins que* 'unless,' *avant que* 'before,' *bien que* 'although,' *depuis que* 'since,' *dès que* 'since, as soon as,' *jusqu'à ce que* 'until,' *parce que* 'because,' *pendant que* 'while,' *pour que* 'in order that,' *pourvu que* 'provided,' *sans que* 'without, unless,' *tant que* 'as long as,' *tandis que* 'while.'

## INTERJECTIONS.

**175.** *Ah* 'ah!' *ahé* 'oh!' *bah* 'pshaw!' *chut* 'hist!' *fi* 'fie!' *ha* 'ha!' *hélas* (s pronounced sharp) 'alas!' *holà* 'hallo!' *paix* 'silence!' — and so on.



# SYNTAX.

---

## X.

### INTRODUCTORY.

**176.** Syntax treats of the combination of words into sentences: their interdependence and agreement, as well as their relative position.

**177.** The leading syntactical principles are in French the following:

a. The **subject** determines, as in English, the number and person of the **verb**: *il aime* 'he loves'; *ils aiment* 'they love.' It also determines the number and gender of the **complement**: e.g. *il est bon* 'he is good'; *elles sont bonnes* 'they are good.'

b. The **verb** determines, as in English, the construction of the **object** (an indirect case-relation being in French always, except for conjunctive personal pronouns, expressed by the aid of prepositions): e.g. *il aime son père* 'he loves his father'; *il pense à son père* 'he thinks of his father'; *il donne un livre à son père* 'he gives a book to his father,' or 'his father a book.'

c. The **adjuncts** of above words modify their sense by various constructions.

d. The **direct** order of arrangement requires, as in English, the subject with its adjuncts to come first, then the verb with its adjuncts, and finally the predicate complement or the object with their adjuncts: e.g. *Ce bon père — aime tendrement — ses jolis enfants* 'This good father loves dearly his pretty children.'

e. The **inverted** order — used especially in interrogative and optative clauses when the subject is a pronoun, in interjected phrases like *dit-il* and the like, and after certain adverbs — requires the subject to follow the verb: e.g. *l'aimez-vous?* 'do you love her?' *puisse-t-il venir* 'may he come'; *à peine fut-il mort* 'hardly was he dead.'

**178.** The peculiarities of syntactical constructions in French are described in detail in the following chapters.

---

## XI.

### ARTICLES AND PARTITIVE SIGN.

[179. **HISTORY.** — The rules for the use of the various articles now observed in French were not yet fixed in the 17th century, and still less in the 16th. The definite article was then often omitted, where it is now required; and the nice distinctions in the use of the independent partitive sign were not observed. Hence, in the literature of those centuries, we frequently meet with expressions like the following: *Il vous assure et vie et liberté* (instead of *et la vie et la liberté*, 195): Corneille. — *J'ai tendresse* (inst. of *de la tendresse*) *pour toi*: id. — *Des grosses* (inst. of *De grosses*: 45) *larmes lui tombent des yeux*: Sévigné. And so on.]

**180. USE OF THE DEFINITE (or Generic) ARTICLE.** — As has already been pointed out (40), *le*, *la*, *les* are used either — like the English 'the' — before nouns whose general meaning is individualized and thus made **definite**, or else — where in English, for the most part, no article occurs — before nouns used in their **generic** (and so far *definite*) sense. Special rules are given below.

**181. THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.** — The definite article is used in French, on the whole, as in English. Still, in some cases, nouns are in French treated as determinate, while the English language treats them differently (using the indefinite article, or the possessive adjective, or no determinant at all, etc.). Thus:

*The Definite Article with Common Nouns:*

**182. FOR POSSESSIVES.**—The definite article is used instead of the possessive adjective with common nouns (especially denoting **parts of the body**), where there can be no misunderstanding as to who is the owner of the object mentioned. — Ex.

<i>Elle leva les mains.</i>	She raised <i>her</i> hands.
<i>Elle a perdu la mémoire.</i>	She has lost <i>her</i> memory.
<i>Il s'est cassé le bras.</i>	He has broken <i>his</i> arm.
<i>Elle avait les larmes aux yeux.</i>	She had tears <i>in her</i> eyes.

Quite common is this construction after the idiomatic expression *avoir mal à* (lit. 'have pain in') 'have a sore,' 'have a (head- etc.) ache.' — Ex.

<i>J'ai mal à la tête.</i>	I have a head-ache.
<i>Ma sœur a mal aux dents.</i>	My sister has the tooth-ache.
<i>Il a mal au bras.</i>	He has a sore arm.

[183.] The definite article is used for a possessive adjective also in **descriptive phrases** with nouns connected by a preposition, when they are in English preceded by 'with' in sense of 'having,' 'holding' (which is then omitted in French). — Ex.

<i>Il paraît toujours le (or un) livre à la main.</i>	He always appears with his ( <i>ora</i> ) book in his hand.
<i>Il vint, le parapluie sous le bras.</i>	He came with his umbrella under his arm.
<i>Le roi était assis sur son trône, le sceptre à la main.</i>	The king was seated on his throne with his sceptre in <i>his hand</i> .

[184.] The definite article is commonly used for a possessive adjective also in **descriptive phrases** with nouns denoting some constituent part or quality of an object, when they are governed by *avoir* and determined by an adjective or participle (which then regularly follows the noun). — Ex.

*Il a la tête grosse.*

He has a large head.

*Il a le bras cassé.*

His arm is broken.

*Elle a l'esprit pénétrant.*

She has a penetrating mind.

*Votre sœur a la bouche petite,  
le teint beau et les yeux  
bleus.*

Your sister has a small mouth,  
beautiful complexion, and blue  
eyes.

*Ils ont l'esprit fatigué.*

Their minds are tired.

*Le hêtre a l'écorce lisse.*

The beech has a smooth bark.

*Ce couteau a le tranchant  
émoussé.*

This knife has a dull edge.

NOTE 1.—The noun denoting the constituent part or quality is put in the singular even when referring to several objects, provided each of them would require that number.—Ex. *Ces bêtes ont la tête longue* 'These animals have long heads': and cf. ex. 5 above.

NOTE 2.—Constructions like *il a une grosse tête* etc. are also allowable, especially when the thing itself rather than its quality is the object of the thought.

**185.** The definite article is used before nouns considered distributively (where in English 'each,' 'every,' or 'a' may be used). This is especially the case before names of **weight** and **measure**; and also before designations of time, unless preceded by *par*.—Ex.

*La viande coûte vingt sous la  
livre.*

The meat costs twenty *sous* a  
pound.

*J'ai payé cinq dollars le baril.*

I have paid five dollars a barrel.

*Il perd six centimes l'aune.*

He loses six *centimes* an ell.

*Il vient me voir le jeudi (les  
jeudis).*

He comes to see me each Thurs-  
day or on Thursdays.

[But *Il vient six fois par  
jour.*

He comes six times a (every)  
day.]

**186.** The definite article is used before names of **fractional** parts.—Ex.

*La moitié de l'armée*

One half of the army.

**187.** The definite article is used before names of **titles** and **professions** when followed by a proper noun (except in direct address), or when preceded by *monsieur*, *madame*, or *mademoiselle*. — Ex.

<i>Le maréchal Ney a visité l'em-</i>	Marshal Ney has called on the
<i>pereur.</i>	emperor.
<i>Monsieur le comte n'est pas</i>	The count is not at home.
<i>chez lui.</i>	

**188.** The definite article is used in various idiomatic expressions that cannot conveniently be brought under any definite rules. — Ex.

<i>Soyez le bienvenu !</i>	[Be] welcome!
<i>Je vous souhaite le bonjour.</i>	I bid you good-day.
<i>Il n'a pas le sou.</i>	He has not a farthing.
<i>On crie au secours.</i>	Some one cries for help.
<i>Il demanda l'aumône.</i>	He asked alms.
<i>Je n'en ai pas le temps.</i>	I have no time for it.
<i>Je l'ai dit au hasard.</i>	I said it at a venture.

### *The Definite Article with Proper Nouns :*

**189.** Except in direct address, the definite article is used before all **proper nouns** that are determined by an **adjunct** (even, as seen below, where in similar cases English omits the article). — Ex.

<i>La vie du grand Corneille.</i>	The life of the great Corneille.
<i>Le Paris du quinzième siècle.</i>	Paris of the fifteenth century.
<i>Le Cinna de Corneille.</i>	Corneille's Cinna.

**NOTE.** — Proper names preceded by *saint* take the definite article only when denoting saints' days, and it is then written *Saint*-. — Ex. *C'était saint Jean* 'it was Saint John'; *La (fête de understood) Saint-Jean* 'mid-summer.'

[190.] Exceptionally the definite article occurs before names of persons not thus determined, the rules being as follows :

a. Personal names denoting plurality take the plural of the definite article, while they are themselves usually in the plural only when referring to illustrious families or dynasties: e.g. *Les Duval* 'The Duvals'; *Les Bourbons* 'The Bourbons.'

b. Names of illustrious individuals may be construed with the definite article in plural: e.g. *Les Montesquieu, les Rousseau ont illustré notre littérature* 'A Montesquieu, a Rousseau have illustrated our literature.'

c. A few names of famous Italians and of celebrated or well-known persons, especially actresses, always take the definite article: e.g. *Le Tasse* 'Tasso'; *le Corrège* 'Corregio'; *La Patti*; *La Brinvilliers*.

d. Personal names used by way of comparison for other persons than the real owners, or, vicariously, as titles of books or works of art, take the definite article, both article and noun being construed in singular or plural as the case requires: e.g. *Les Alexandres sont rares* 'Alexanders are rare'; *J'ai lu le Télémaque* 'I have read T'; *Les Raphaels ou les Titiens sont bien précieux* ' (Paintings by) Raphael or Titian are very precious.'

191. The definite article is generally (cf. 192) used with names of **extended geographical features**—such as countries (states, provinces, etc.) or large islands, mountains, rivers, seas, and lakes—but not before names of small islands, cities and places. French then differs from English chiefly in using the article before names of countries and islands, and before mountains without exception. — Ex.:

*La Russie est grande.*

Russia is great.

*La France est bornée au midi  
par les Pyrénées et la Méditerranée.*

France is bounded on the south  
by the Pyrenees and the Mediterranean.

*La Navarre est une province.*

Navarre is a province.

*La Sicile est une grande île.*

Sicily is a large island.

*Le Gange est un fleuve de l'Asie.*

The Ganges is a river in Asia.

*Le Liban est une montagne de  
la Syrie.*

Lebanon is a mountain in Syria.

[192.] *Exception 1.*—In the following cases the definite article is omitted before **feminine** names of countries in the **singular** (save *la Chine* and a few less common names of remote countries), provided they have **no adjuncts**:

a. Always after *en* 'in, to' (used for *dans*, *à* before such feminines to denote in a general way the *where*): e.g. *être en France* 'be in France,' *passer en France* 'go to F.'

b. After *de* in sense of 'from': e.g. *venir de France* 'come from F.'; or in sense of 'of' when it introduces an attributive genitive of distinction (= quality), which may be rendered without ambiguity by an adjective: e.g. *le roi de France* 'the king of F.' (= 'the French king'); *du vin de France* 'French wine.'

Usage is not quite settled with regard to the retention or omission of the article after *de* 'of.' It is safe, however, to follow this rule: Use *de la* in a possessive, partitive, or objective genitive [e.g. *le pouvoir de la France*; *le midi de la F.*; *la dévastation de la F.*]. Use *de* in a genitive of distinction [as of title: *le roi (l'ambassadeur etc.) de F.*; of origin: *du vin de F.*; of description or apposition: *histoire de F.*; *le royaume de F.*].

### Examples to 192 :

- |   |   |
|---|---|
|   | a.  |
| <i>Il demeure en Allemagne.</i>                                 | He lives in Germany.  |
| [But <i>Il demeure dans l'Allemagne méridionale.</i>            | He lives in Southern Germany.]                                      |
| <i>Il va en Amérique.</i>                                       | He goes to America.   |
| [But <i>Il va aux Indes, au Brésil, aux États-Unis, etc.</i>    | He goes to India (pl. in French), Brazil, the United States, etc.]] |
|   | b.  |
| <i>Il est venu de France.</i>                                   | He has come from France.  |
| [But <i>Il est venu du Mexique or de la France méridionale.</i> | He has come from Mexico or from Southern France.]                   |
| <i>À mon retour d'Italie.</i>                                   | On my return from Italy.  |
| <i>Chassé d'Angleterre il se réfugia en Amérique.</i>           | Banished from England he fled to America.                           |
| [But <i>Chassé de la Chine il se réfugia aux Indes.</i>         | Driven from China he fled to India.]                                |
| <i>Le royaume d'Espagne.</i>                                    | The kingdom of Spain.   |
| <i>Le roi de France.</i>  | The king of France.   |
| <i>La reine de la Grande-Bretagne.</i>                          | The queen of Great Britain.   |
| <i>L'ambassadeur de Prusse.</i>                                 | The ambassador of Prussia.  |
| <i>Le fer de Suède est excellent.</i>                           | Swedish iron is excellent.  |
| <i>Du drap d'Angleterre.</i>                                    | English cloth.  |

<i>Un mille d'Allemagne.</i>	A German mile.
<i>La paix de Westphalie.</i>	The treaty of Westphalia.
<i>Les limites de la France.</i>	The French confines.

Compare farther :

<i>L'ambassadeur de France.</i>	<i>Un marchand français.</i>	A
The French ambassador.	French merchant.	
<i>Le roi de France.</i>	<i>L'empereur de la Chine.</i>	The
of France.	emperor of China.	
<i>Le fer de Suède.</i>	<i>Le fer de la Suède.</i>	The iron
(= iron found in S.).	(= all the iron) of Sweden.	
<i>L'histoire de France.</i>	<i>L'histoire de la France.</i>	The
(The)	French history (as distin-	
French history or The his-	guished from Fr. geography	
story of France.	etc.). — Rare expression.	
<i>L'armée d'Egypte.</i>	<i>L'armée de l'Egypte.</i>	The army
The army	of Egypt (= belonging to E.).	
of Egypt (= sent into E.).	<i>La république française.</i>	The
<i>La république de Venise.</i>	French republic.	
The		
Venetian republic.		

[193.] *Exception 2.* — a. Several names of countries derived from names of cities (such as *Naples*, *Bade* etc.) do not take the article. Others (like *Hanovre*, *Brandebourg* etc.) require it.

b. Certain names of cities have the definite article as a part of that name itself (often because its appellative origin is still felt). E.g. *Le Havre* ('the Haven') 'Havre'; *La Rochelle* ('the Rock') 'Rochelle'; *La Haye* ('the Enclosure') '(the) Hague'; *Le Caire* 'Cairo'; *La Mecque* 'Mecca'.

[194.] Usage varies with regard to names of rivers, the principle being generally the same as with names of countries: e.g. *Je bois de l'eau de Seine* 'I drink Seine water.' *L'eau de la Seine est bourbeuse* 'The water of the Seine is muddy.' *Les vins du Rhin* '(the) Rhine wines.' *Le fleuve du Mississippi* 'the M. river.'

EXERCISE I (end of the book).

**195. THE GENERIC ARTICLE** (cf. 40, note). — French, unlike English, requires the generic (= definite) article before all nouns used in a generic sense, i.e. in such a way that 'in general,' 'all,' 'every,' may be understood with them (e.g.



*L'amour vient du cœur* 'Love — i.e. love in general — comes from the heart.' *L'homme est mortel* 'Man — i.e. every man — is mortal.' *Les oiseaux ont des ailes* 'Birds — i.e. as a genus — have wings').

In the singular, **abstract** or **collective** nouns and nouns of **material** are especially apt to be thus construed with the definite article, while in the plural **any** noun may be so construed. — Ex.

<i>Le vice est odieux.</i>	Vice is odious.
<i>L'orgueil et la vanité sont la source de bien des maux.</i>	Pride and vanity are the source of many evils.
<i>La société vivra toujours.</i>	Society will always live.
<i>L'or est un métal précieux.</i>	Gold is a precious metal.
<i>Le bleu vous sied bien.</i>	Blue is becoming to you.
<i>Aimez-vous le café ?</i>	Do you like coffee ?
<i>Le printemps est une belle saison.</i>	Spring is a beautiful season.
<i>Les enfants aiment à jouer.</i>	Children like to play.
<i>Les riches ne donnent pas toujours.</i>	Rich people do not always give.

[196.] **Names of languages** require (a) *le* when treated as nouns; but (b) no article after *en*, or when treated as adverbs after *parler* (cf. ex. under b. below). — Ex.

	a.
<i>Il apprend le français.</i>	He learns French.
<i>Savez-vous le français ?</i>	Do you know French ?
<i>Il parle bien le français.</i>	He speaks French well.
<i>Je parle un peu le français.</i>	I speak French a little.
	b.
<i>Il parle français.</i>	He speaks French (i.e. 'in the manner of the French': cf. Lat. <i>latine loquitur</i> ).
<i>Dites cela en français.</i>	Say that in French.
<i>Il faut penser en français pour parler français.</i>	To speak French we must think in French.

---

EXERCISE II.

---

## USE OF THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

**197.** The indefinite article is used, on the whole, as in English. It is to be observed, however, that before abstract nouns determined by an adjective, *un* (*une*) is generally expressed in French even if omitted in English (e.g. *Ne prenez votre parti qu'après un mûr examen* 'Take your decision only after mature consideration').

NOTE. — With *tout*, *un* follows: *tout un monde* 'a whole world.'  
About the omission of the indefinite article in French, cf. 203 etc.

## USE OF THE PARTITIVE SIGN (cf. 43).

**198. THE DEPENDENT PARTITIVE SIGN** *de* is used after nouns and adverbs of quantity (size etc.), as described in 44.

It is followed by the article (*du, de la, des*) after the adverb *bien* 'much, many' (provided no adjective precedes the noun limited); after superlative expressions (*la plupart, le plus grand nombre*, etc.); and, as also in English, when the noun limited is determined by other words following it. — Ex.

<i>J'ai acheté une quantité de livres.</i>	I have bought a quantity of books.
<i>Une foule de curieux le suivaient.</i>	A crowd of curious people followed him.
<i>Donnez-moi un morceau de pain.</i>	Give me a piece of bread.
<i>J'ai acheté beaucoup de livres.</i>	I have bought many books.
<i>Je n'ai pas assez de fleurs.</i>	I have not flowers enough.
<i>Ce jeune homme a plus de connaissances que d'amis.</i>	This young man has more acquaintances than friends.
<i>J'ai acheté bien des livres.</i>	I have bought many books.
<i>But Bien de braves gens.</i>	Many brave people.
<i>Il connaît un grand nombre des fables d'Ésope.</i>	He knows a great number of the fables of Esop.

NOTE 1.—The most common adverbs of quantity are: *assez* (never, as in English, placed after its noun) ‘enough,’ *autant* ‘as much, as many,’ *beaucoup* ‘much, many,’ *bien* ‘much, many’ (requiring def. art.), *combien* ‘how much?’ *moins* ‘less,’ *peu* ‘little,’ *plus* ‘more,’ *tant* ‘so much, so many,’ *trop* ‘too much, too many,’ *trop peu* ‘too little, too few,’ *la plupart* ‘most’ (requiring def. art.).

NOTE 2.—*De* is also used where English has an appositive noun or adjective after statements of quality, *quelque chose*, and *rien*. — Ex. *Mille soldats de prisonniers, dix de tués* ‘A hundred soldiers prisoners, ten killed.’ *J’ai quelque chose de bon* ‘I have something good.’ *Il n’a rien de beau* ‘He has nothing beautiful.’

NOTE 3.—By false analogy, *de* is used in expressions like the following: *Qui (des deux) est le plus grand, de César ou de Napoléon?* ‘Who (of the two) is the greater, Cæsar or Napoleon?’

**199. THE INDEPENDENT PARTITIVE SIGN** (or *Partitive Article*: 45). — The independent partitive sign, unless excluded by a preceding *de* (46), is used before **abstract** or **collective** nouns and nouns of **material** in the singular, and before any noun in the **plural**, when an undefined portion of the entire thing designated by these nouns is contemplated. .

This partitive sign, as already described (45), is ***de*** alone; a. when the partitive noun is determined by a **preceding adjective**; and b. when a preceding negation affects the partitive noun rather than the verb or a modifier of that noun, *i.e.* generally when that noun is the **unmodified accusative object** of a **negative verb**.

#### EXAMPLES:

*de* with the article:

*de* alone:

*Il a du courage.* He has courage. *Il n’a point de courage.* He has no courage.

*J’ai du vin.* I have (some) wine. *J’ai de bon vin.* I have (some) good wine.

*J’ai du vin rouge et de l’eau fraîche.* I have some red wine and fresh water. *J’ai de belles fleurs et d’excellents fruits.* I have (some) fine flowers and excellent fruit.

*Avez-vous des livres?* Have you some (or any) books? *Non, je n’ai pas de livres.* No, I have no books.

*Dans cette montagne il y a du fer, du cuivre et de l'or.*  
There is iron, copper, and gold in this mountain.

*Il s'expose à de graves erreurs, à d'étranges mécomptes, en jugeant ainsi.* He is liable to make serious mistakes, strange errors, in judging thus.

*Je ne ferai pas des remarques indiscrètes là-dessus.* I shall not make heedless remarks on the subject (though some remarks will be made).

*Je ne ferai pas de remarques là-dessus.* I shall make no remarks on the subject.

*Je n'ai pas des sentiments si bas.* I have not such base feelings.

*Cet homme n'a guère de sentiments.* This man hardly has any feelings.

*Ne donnez jamais des conseils qu'il soit dangereux de suivre.* Never give advice which it may be dangerous to follow.

*Il ne m'a jamais donné de conseils du tout.* He has never given me any advice at all.

*L'avare n'amasse des trésors que pour lui.* The miser heaps up treasures for himself alone.

*Le prodigue n'accumule jamais de richesses.* The spendthrift never amasses riches.

*Ceci n'est pas de l'or, c'est du cuivre.* This is not gold, it is copper.

*Il contredit sans avoir d'opinion.* He contradicts without having any opinion.

NOTE 1. — If the partitive noun forms with a preceding adjective a compound, whether in form or idea, it takes the definite article. — Ex. *Il a des petits-fils* 'He has grand-sons' (but *de petits fils* 'little sons'). *Il a montré du bon sens* 'He has shown good sense.' *De la bonne foi* 'honesty.' *Des jeunes gens* 'young people.'

In popular style, *du, de la, des* are freely used whenever an adjective precedes the noun (e.g. *du bon vin, de la bonne bière*, etc.).

NOTE 2. — In negative-interrogative sentences, *de* with the article denotes rather an appeal with implied affirmation than a real question, which

is expressed by *de* alone. — Ex. *N'avez vous pas de la santé, des amis? que vous faut-il de plus?* 'Have you not health, friends? What more do you need? *N'avez vous pas d'argent?* 'Have you no money?'

NOTE 3. — By an extended use of the partitive sign, it sometimes serves to denote 'the character of,' and the like; and the whole partitive expression is then often best rendered by an abstract noun or an adjective. — Ex. *Quand il a fallu montrer de l'homme, ils se sont sauvés* 'When it became necessary to show manliness, they fled.' *Ce latin est du Cicéron tout pur* 'This is pure Ciceronian Latin.'

Similar constructions sometimes verge on being pure genitives of characteristic.

[200.] If in a partitive expression an adjective is used as a noun, it is construed as such. If it is used alone, but with the noun understood, it is construed as it would be if the noun were expressed, unless, indeed, that noun be represented by the particle *en*, in which case the adjective is always preceded by *de* alone. — Ex. *Dans cette ville il y a des riches et des pauvres* 'There are rich and poor people in this town.' *J'ai du vin blanc et du rouge* 'I have white wine and red.' *Il a de bon vin, et d'adultéré* 'He has good wine, and adulterated.' *Ces fleurs sont belles; il y en a de rouges, de jaunes et de blanches* 'These flowers are beautiful; some are red, some are yellow and some white.'

[201.] It has already been noted (46) that the partitive *de* and the following article are both excluded by a preceding *de* ('of, from, with, by'). — Ex.

<i>L'araignée vit de mouches</i>	The spider lives on flies.
(not <i>de des mouches</i> ).	
<i>Je parle de bons livres et de bons amis.</i>	I speak of good books and good friends.
<i>On le combla de bienfaits.</i>	He was overwhelmed with kindnesses.
<i>Aucun mortel n'est exempt de défauts.</i>	No mortal is free from faults.
<i>Il a besoin d'argent.</i>	He is in need of money.
<i>Il a soif de sang.</i>	He is blood-thirsty.
<i>Voilà un palais de marbre.</i>	Behold, a marble palace.

---

EXERCISE III.

---

## REPETITION OF ARTICLES AND PARTITIVE SIGN.

**202.** The articles and the partitive sign must be repeated before each noun or adjective denoting a **different object**, and before every **superlative**. — Cf.

## REPEATED:

*Le garçon et l'homme.* The boy and the man.

*Les grands et les petits états.*  
The great and the small states.

## NOT REPEATED:

*La Gaule ou France.* Gaul or France (synonymous).

*Les grands et puissants états.*  
The great and powerful states.

Ex. for superlatives, under 229.

## OMISSION OF ARTICLES.

**203.** The articles (the partitive included) are omitted in numerous phrases, corresponding to similarly construed phrases in English, or wholly peculiar to French.

This omission occurs especially: — a. in certain **set expressions** where the noun forms a phrase with the verb, as in *avoir faim* (*soif, froid*, etc.) 'be or feel hungry (thirsty, cold,' etc.), *faire beau temps* (*froid, chaud*, etc.) 'be warm (cold, fine,' etc. with reference to weather), or with a preposition, as in *à cheval* 'on horseback,' *à dessein* 'on purpose,' etc. — b. when the noun explains **predicatively** what a person is or is made, or **appositively** what a thing or person is; — c. before **successive** nouns, where in English no article would be used. (For details see below, 204.) — Ex.

a.

*J'ai faim (soif, chaud, froid).* I am hungry (thirsty, warm, cold); — *lit.* 'I have hunger' etc.

*J'ai mal à la tête (aux yeux, au bras).* I have a headache (sore eyes, a sore arm); — *lit.* 'I have a pain in' etc.

*Il fait beau temps (froid, chaud) aujourd'hui.* It is fine weather (cold, warm) to-day.

*Faites attention.* Pay attention.

*Prenez garde qu'il ne tombe.* Take care he does not fall.

*Il est à cheval.* He is on horseback.

*Il l'a fait à dessein.* He has done it on purpose.

b.

*Il est Français.* He is a Frenchman.

*Il fut fait ministre.* He was made minister.

*Nous lisons Athalie, tragédie de Racine.* We are reading Athalie, a tragedy by Racine.

c.

*Espérance, courage, c'est tout qu'il nous faut.* Hope, courage, that is all we need.

*Il n'a ni père ni mère.* He has neither father nor mother.

Nothing short of extensive observation can make the student familiar with the practice of omitting articles. The chief details of the rule, as stated above, are, however, given below.

[204.] Articles are omitted:

A. In many **set phrases** and **brief or elliptical expressions**, as:

1. Before certain abstract nouns governed by *avoir* (*avoir faim* etc. 'be hungry' etc., *avoir raison* 'be right,' *avoir soin* 'take care,' *avoir envie* 'have a mind, desire,' and so on), *faire* (*faire attention* 'pay attention,' *faire peur* 'scare,' *faire pitié* 'arouse pity,' etc.), *prendre* (*prendre garde* 'take care,' *prendre patience* 'have patience,' etc.), *rendre* (*rendre justice* 'do justice,' *rendre grâces* 'return thanks,' etc.), and some other verbs.

2. In many descriptive or qualifying phrases consisting of a preposition (especially *à, avec, de, en, sans, par*) and a noun: e.g. *à cheval* 'on horseback,' *à dessein* 'on purpose,' *à prétentions* (a man) 'with pretensions,' *avec plaisir* 'with pleasure,' *en homme de cœur* 'as a courageous man,' *sans peur* 'without fear,' *par an* 'by the year, a year,' and so on.

3. In **condensed phrases** generally, as in titles of books, addresses, advertisements, proverbial expressions, etc.: e.g. *chapitre second* 'second chapter'; *Contes d'un grand-père* 'Tales of a grand-father'; *Maison à louer* 'House for rent'; *Il loge rue Richelieu* 'He lives on R. street'; *Contentement passe richesse* 'Contentment is better than riches.'

B. Often before a **predicate** or **appositional noun**, viz.:

1. Before a predicate noun qualifying in a general way a personal subject or object, designating what it **is**, **becomes**, **looks like** (i.e. after *être*, *devenir*; *naître*, *mourir*; *paraître*, etc.), but never after *c'est*, *ce sont*, or when the noun is determined by other words. — Ex. *Il est Américain* 'He is an American.' *Ils sont anglais* 'They are English(men).' *Son frère est médecin* 'His brother is a physician.' *David devint roi d'Israël* 'David became king of Israel.' *Je le réputais homme d'honneur* 'I considered him a man of honor.' *Il mourut chrétien* 'He died a Christian.' *Il veut se faire soldat* 'He wishes to turn soldier.' — But *C'est un Américain* 'It is an American.' *Ce sont des Anglais* 'They are Englishmen.' *Ces messieurs sont des marchands qui vont à la foire* 'These gentlemen are merchants going to the fair' (but *sont marchands* 'are merchants.').

2. Before an appositional noun, when used simply to describe or point out what may not be known. — Ex. *Horace, poète célèbre* 'H., a celebrated poet.' But: *Horace, le célèbre poète* 'H., (the well known) celebrated poet' or 'H., the poet (as distinguished from the painter).'

3. Before nouns enumerated in rapid **succession**, or used **antithetically**, or preceded by *sans*, *ni*, *soit*, when the article is omitted also in English, or by *jamais* 'never a.' — Ex. *Soldats, officiers, citoyens, tous le suivirent.* — *Œil pour œil. Jour et nuit.* — *Il est sans argent. La nature ne fait ni princes ni seigneurs. Soit paresse, soit faiblesse, il n'apprend rien. — Jamais roi ne fut plus aimé.*

#### EXERCISE IV.

## XII.

## NOUNS.

[205. HISTORY. — As the Latin case-forms gradually disappeared in French, the use of prepositions to denote all individual relations of the noun in the sentence became more and more frequent, and this use forms an important part of the French Syntax. It may be noticed here that the actual use of prepositions in several instances varies from that adhered to even in the 17th century: e.g. *La foi du* (for *au*) *Messie et de ses merveilles* (Bossuet); *Se laisser flatter à* (for *par*) *une douce espérance* (id.); *Je me laissais séduire à* (for *par*) *cet aimable guide* (Racine); *Et le peuple inégal à l'endroit des* (for *à l'égard des*) *tyrans* (Corneille). Even yet some freedom of choice is in this respect allowed.]



**206. NOUNS WITHOUT PREPOSITION.** — As in English, the noun has no preposition, when it is a. **subject**, b. in **predicate**, c. **direct object**, and d. sometimes (not then always agreeing with the English) when it is used **adverbially**. — Ex.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| a. <i>Le père vient.</i>                         | The father comes.                            |
| b. <i>C'est mon père.</i>                        | It is my father.                             |
| c. <i>Je vois son père.</i>                      | I see his father.                            |
| d. <i>Il viendra ce soir.</i>                    | He will come this evening.                   |
| <i>Il m'a vendu ce cheval cinq cents francs.</i> | He has sold this horse to me for 500 francs. |

And cf. 184-5.

**207.** The predicate noun may refer either a. to the subject (**subject complement**), or b. to the object (**object complement**). The latter occurs after verbs of *making*, *electing* or *declaring*, *considering*, and the like.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| a. <i>C'est mon père.</i>                       | It is my father.                             |
| <i>Il est né poète.</i>                         | He is a born poet.                           |
| <i>Nous nous quittâmes bons amis.</i>           | We parted good friends.                      |
| b. <i>On le fit général.</i>                    | He was made general.                         |
| <i>Le roi l'a nommé ministre.</i>               | The king has appointed him to be a minister. |
| <i>Le sénat le déclara ennemi de la patrie.</i> | The senate declared him his country's enemy. |
| <i>Je l'estime mon ami.</i>                     | I consider him (to be) my friend.            |

NOTE. — After verbs of making, declaring, etc., *pour* or *comme* is often used before the predicate word. — Ex. *Ils le choisirent pour général* 'They chose him for general.' *Je le considérais (comme) mon ami* 'I considered him as a friend of mine.'

**208.** Transitive verbs admit two or more direct objects when these are coördinated. Otherwise **only one**. Indirect object-nouns are governed by a preposition, which can never be omitted (as sometimes 'to' in English). — Ex. *Il enseigne la géographie à mon enfant* 'He teaches my child geography.' *Je donne le livre à mon ami* 'I give my friend the book.'

NOTE 1. — When *faire* (sometimes also *laisser* and verbs of perception) is followed by a **transitive** infinitive, both are treated as if forming one verb requiring one **direct object** (the object of the infinitive) and one **indirect object** with *à* (the performer of the act expressed by the infinitive). — Ex.

<i>Je ferai prendre ce remède à l'enfant.</i>	I shall make the child take this remedy.
<i>Faites répéter sa leçon à ce garçon.</i>	Have this boy recite his lesson.
<i>Je lui ferai voir ce que j'ai fait.</i>	I shall show him (her) what I have done.
<i>Les Français ont fait adopter aux autres peuples la plupart de leurs usages.</i>	The French have caused other peoples to adopt most of their customs.
<i>J'ai fait (less comm'y laissé) voir à ces enfants mes livres.</i>	I have shown my books to these children.
<i>Les larmes que j'ai vu verser à cette fille m'ont touché.</i>	The tears which I have seen this girl shed have touched me.
<i>J'ai entendu dire à (or par) mon frère qu'il viendra.</i>	I have heard my brother say that he will come.

NOTE 2. — If the indirect object is a conjunctive personal pronoun, no preposition, of course, is used. — Ex. *Je le lui dirai. Je lui ferai voir mes livres. Je les lui ferai voir* (observe the position of both the object-pronouns before the first verb: 257).

---

#### EXERCISE V.

---

**209. NOUNS WITH A PREPOSITION.** — Since all relations of a noun not described in the preceding (206–8) must be expressed by the aid of prepositions, the right use of these is, of course, of much importance. A brief account of the principal laws for that use — to be supplemented by observation and the aid of a good dictionary — is given below.

**210. De.**—The original meaning of this preposition is ‘from,’ whence all its later uses. It forms with the noun either:—a. an **attributive phrase** (denoting *possession, quality, kind, name* of another noun, or *portion*), or — b. an **adverbial phrase** (denoting place or time *whence, origin, cause, means*, etc.). It generally corresponds to the English possessive ending ‘s or the preposition ‘of,’ ‘from,’ or ‘by’ (denoting condition rather than action, which, especially when physical, is expressed by *par*: cf. 215). — Ex.

a.

*Le livre de la fille.*  
*La bonté de ma mère.*

The girl’s book.  
My mother’s kindness (The kindness of my mother).

*Une table d’acajou.*  
*La ville de Paris.*  
*Le voyage du Rhin.*

A table of mahogany.  
The city of Paris.  
The journey on the Rhine (Rhine journey).  
A dozen eggs.

*Une douzaine d’œufs.*

b.

*Il vient de Paris.*  
*Un livre du quinzième siècle.*  
*Le fer de Suède est bon.*  
*Il est mort de faim.*  
*Il est bien aise de votre arrivée.*  
*Il est respecté de tous.*  
[But *Il fut trouvé par un chien.*

He comes from Paris.  
A book from the 15th century.  
Swedish iron is good (192, b).  
He has died of hunger.  
He is very glad of your arrival.  
He is respected by everybody.  
He was found by a dog.]

[211.] *De* is often used where English requires some other preposition than ‘of,’ ‘from,’ or ‘by,’ or no preposition at all. Thus it is used — a. Where, in relations similar to those described above, English has ‘for (on account of),’ ‘with,’ ‘in,’ ‘about,’ etc. — b. As a partitive sign (34–37). — c. To express the ‘by how much’ before names of measure of any kind,

or age; and before the name of a musical instrument after *jouer* 'play.' — d. After superlatives for English 'in.' — e. Often before terms of comparison that follow an interrogative verb and are connected by *ou*. — f. For 'as' after *servir*, *traiter*, *qualifier*. — g. After *abuser*, *proche* and *approcher* (or *s'approcher*, but also *approcher* without *de*, especially before names of persons), *changer* (when *son* etc. is omitted), *décider*, *jouer*, *juger*, *redoubler* (followed by an abstract noun), *user* 'use' (*user* 'wear,' without *de*), and several reflexive verbs that are rendered as transitives in English: e.g. *s'apercevoir* 'perceive,' *se défier* 'distrust,' *se douter* 'suspect,' etc. — Ex.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a. <i>Je le punis de sa faute.</i>   | I punish him for his fault.                             |
| <i>Je n'en puis plus de lassitude.</i>   | I can do nothing more for (on account of) weariness.    |
| <i>Il était armé d'un fusil.</i>   | He was armed with a gun.                                |
| <i>Il m'a comblé de bienfaits.</i>   | He has overwhelmed me with kindnesses.                  |
| <i>Il agit de bonne foi.</i>   | He acts in good faith.                                  |
| <i>Cela dépend de vous</i><br>(Lat. <i>de-pendere</i> 'hang from').  | That depends on you.                                    |
| b. <i>J'ai du pain.</i>  | I have some bread.                                      |
| <i>J'ai beaucoup d'argent.</i>   | I have much money.                                      |
| c. <i>Ce clocher est haut de deux cents</i><br><i>pieds; or</i><br><i>Ce clocher a deux cents pieds de</i><br><i>hauteur (or de haut).</i> | } This steeple is two hundred feet high.                |
| <i>Vous êtes plus grand que moi de</i><br><i>deux pouces.</i>  |   |
| <i>Il est âgé de trois ans.</i>  | He is three years old.                                  |
| <i>Le prix de ce livre est de cinq</i><br><i>dollars.</i>  | The price of this book is five dollars.                 |
| <i>Ma montre avance (retarde) de</i><br><i>quatre minutes.</i>   | My watch is four minutes fast (slow).                   |
| <i>J'ai un dollar de trop.</i>   | I have one dollar too much.                             |
| <i>Il joue du violon (cf. au billard :</i><br><i>213, a).</i>  | He plays (on, as if 'from') the violin.                 |
| d. <i>Elle est la plus belle fille de la</i><br><i>ville.</i>  | She is the finest girl in the city.                     |
| e. <i>Qui fut le plus grand homme,</i><br><i>d'Alexandre, de César ou de</i><br><i>Napoléon?</i>   | Who was the greatest man, Alexander, Cæsar or Napoleon? |

- f. *Il me servira de guide.* He shall serve me as guide.  
*Je l'ai traité de prince.* I treated him as (called him) prince.  
*[Je l'ai traité en prince.* I treated him like a prince.]  
g. *Il (s')approcha de la ville* He approached the city.  
*(Il approcha la ville).*  
*Il a changé d'opinion.* He has changed his mind.  
*Il faut changer d'habits.* We must change clothes.  
*Je jouis de sa faveur.* I enjoy his (her) favor.  
*Il redoubla d'efforts.* He redoubled his efforts.  
*Je me suis aperçu du piège que* I perceived the snare they had laid  
*l'on m'avait tendu.* for me.  
*Je me doutais de sa trahison.* I suspected his treason.

**212. À.**—The principal meaning of the preposition *à* is 'to,' or 'at,' whence its other uses. It forms with the noun either:—a. the **indirect** (personal or personified) **object** or—b. an **adverbial phrase** (denoting *direction, position, aim, purpose, addition*, etc.). Generally it corresponds to the English 'to,' 'till,' 'at,' or 'in' when equivalent to 'at' (i.e. generally before names of cities, towns, etc.).—Ex.

## a.

- Je donnerai ce livre à ma* I shall give this book *to* my  
*sœur.* sister.  
*Il a promis à sa mère de* He has promised (*to*) his mother  
*changer de conduite.* to change his conduct.  
*Il est enclin à l'ivrognerie.* He is inclined *to* drunkenness.

## b.

- Il ira demain à Paris.* He is going *to* Paris to-morrow.  
*Il est à Paris (à la maison).* He is *in* Paris (*at* home).  
*Cet homme aspire au pouvoir.* This man aspires *to* power.  
*Il sait allier la douceur à la* He knows how to combine  
*gravité.* gentleness *with* dignity.

[218.] *À* is often used where English requires other prepositions than 'to,' 'at,' 'in,' or no preposition at all. Thus—a. In **descriptive phrases**

denoting manner or instrument, purpose or (with *le*) ingredient, etc. —  
 b. After *mal* denoting 'pain.' — c. In the phrase *être à* 'belong to.' — d. To form with a noun the indirect object after certain verbs which, if resolved into a verb and a noun or adjective, would naturally be followed by *à* 'to,' or which in Latin usually take a dative object (e.g. *conseiller* 'advise' = 'give advice,' *promettre, répondre; nuire* 'harm' = 'do harm,' *plaire, satisfaire; obéir, renoncer, résister; penser, ressembler*; or whose meaning implies a separation of something from the indirect object (*acheter, arracher, enlever, ôter, ravir, soutirer, emprunter, demander, échapper* — all except *demander* also allowing, in certain uses, *de* instead of *à*). — e. Cf. 186, note 1. — Ex.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a. <i>Il vient à cheval.</i>                               | He comes on horseback.                            |
| <i>Il parle à haute voix.</i>                              | He speaks in a loud voice.                        |
| <i>Il pêche à la ligne.</i>                                | He fishes with a line (angles).                   |
| <i>Il joue au billard</i> (cf. <i>du violon</i> : 211, c). | He plays billiards.                               |
| <i>Il l'a fait à dessein.</i>                              | He has done it on purpose.                        |
| <i>Un homme à cheveux blancs.</i>                          | A man with white hair.                            |
| <i>Une chambre à coucher.</i>                              | A bedroom.  |
| <i>Une machine à vapeur.</i>                               | A steam-engine.                                   |
| <i>De la soupe au lait.</i>                                | Milk soup.  |
| b. <i>J'ai mal à la tête.</i>                              | I have the headache.                              |
| <i>Il a mal aux dents.</i>                                 | He has toothache.                                 |
| d. <i>Ce livre est à moi.</i>                              | This book belongs to me.                          |
| e. <i>Je pense à ma mère.</i>                              | I am thinking of my mother.                       |
| <i>J'obéirai à vos conseils.</i>                           | I shall obey your advice.                         |
| <i>Il a promis à son père de changer de conduite.</i>      | He has promised his father to change his conduct. |
| <i>J'ai acheté ce livre à mon frère.</i>                   | I have bought this book of my brother.            |
| <i>N'arrachez pas cet enfant à sa mère.</i>                | Do not tear this child from its mother.           |
| <i>J'ai emprunté mille francs à mon ami.</i>               | I have borrowed 1000 francs from my friend.       |

**214. Dans, en** 'in, into,' etc. — *Dans*, being always followed by a defined noun (i.e. a noun preceded by an article, pronoun, or numeral) denotes location more definitely than *en*, which is rarely followed by a defined noun, and which often introduces

an adverbial phrase of manner, means, form, etc. 'In the year (or month) of' is usually expressed by *en*. — Ex.

*Il est dans le (or au) magasin.* *Le blé est en magasin.* The  
He is in (or at) the store. wheat is stored.

*Dans la dernière guerre.* *En temps de guerre.* In time of  
the last war. war.

*Les poissons vivent dans la mer.* *Les vaisseaux sont en pleine mer.*  
Fishes live in the The ships are in open sea.  
ocean.

*Il demeure dans l'Allemagne méridionale.* *Il demeure en Allemagne.* He  
He lives in lives in Germany.  
Southern Germany (cf. 192).

*Dans l'hiver de 1880.* *En été; en juin.* In summer;  
In the in June. (But, by exception,  
winter of 1880. *au printemps* 'In spring.')

*Il est dans une situation dangereuse.* *Il n'agit pas en secret, il agit en*  
He is in a danger- *honnête homme.* He does not  
ous situation. act in secret, he acts like an  
honest man.

*Dans (or en) ce moment.* *En mil huit cent quinze.* In  
this moment. 1815.

NOTE 1. — With reference to location, *dans* 'in' points directly to the inside, à 'in, at' simply to the *where*, and *en* to a general situation or condition. — Cf.: *il est dans le magasin* 'he is in the store' (i.e. inside it somewhere); *il est au magasin* 'he is in the store,' or 'at the store,' or 'near the store'; *le blé est en magasin* 'the wheat is stored.' *Dans la ville* 'in the city,' *à la ville* 'in town' (as opposed to *à la campagne*); *en ville* 'in town' (= gone out).

NOTE 2. — With reference to time, *dans* means 'in = by the end of,' and *en* 'in = in the course of'; but they are sometimes used without much distinction. — Ex.

*Je pars dans deux heures.* I leave in two hours (from now).  
*J'ai fait le trajet en deux heures.* I have crossed over in two hours.  
*D'aujourd'hui en huit (en quinze).* A week (A fortnight) hence.

**215. *Par*** 'through, by, per.' — This preposition refers to motion, duration, or units of time; or, interchangeably with *de*, to manner or motive. After passive verbs, it is used, instead of *de*, especially when the verb expresses an external or physical action. — Ex.

<i>Il a passé par la ville.</i>	He has passed through the city.
<i>Venez par ici (par là).</i>	Come this way (that way).
<i>Elle a trois dollars par semaine.</i>	She gets three dollars a week.
<i>Il l'a fait par crainte.</i>	He has done it for fear.
<i>Il a obtenu cela par force ou par adresse.</i>	He has obtained that by force or skill.
<i>Il fut maltraité par les soldats.</i>	He was maltreated by the soldiers.
<i>L'Égypte est baignée par les eaux du Nil.</i>	Egypt is watered by the waters of the Nile.
<i>L'Amérique fut découverte par Christophe Colomb.</i>	America was discovered by Christopher Columbus.

**216.** With regard to the remaining prepositions it will be sufficient to notice here :

a. Of those which denote position *avant* refers almost exclusively to time alone, *après* to time or place, and the others (*devant, hors*, etc.) to place (or condition) alone.

b. *Avec* means 'with = in company with.'

c. *Chez* 'with, among, at the house of' often refers to one's home or country (e.g. *chez nous* 'at our house' or 'with us'; *chez les Romains* 'among the Romans,' etc.).

d. *Entre* usually refers to two objects (or to several when mutuality is expressed), *parmi* to several objects.

e. *À travers* denotes 'through' without implied resistance, but *au travers de*, 'through' with an implied resistance. This distinction is obsolescent.

f. *Vers* expresses physical, but *envers* moral direction or relation.

**217. REPETITION OF PREPOSITIONS.** — *De*, *à*, and *en* must be repeated before each noun whose relation in the sentence they determine; but the other prepositions may be repeated or omitted much as in English. — Ex.

<i>Il mourut couvert de gloire et de blessures.</i>	He died covered with glory and wounds.
---	--



<i>Il dut la vie à la clémence et à la magnanimité du vainqueur.</i>	He owed his life to the clemency and magnanimity of the conqueror.
<i>C'est un excellent travailleur en cuivre, en argent et en or.</i>	He is an excellent worker in copper, silver, and gold.
<i>Il a péri par les ruses et les artifices de ses ennemis.</i>	He was ruined by the strategy and artifice of his enemies.
<i>Il a péri par la haine de ses ennemis et par la lâcheté de ses amis.</i>	He perished through the hatred of his enemies and the cowardice of his friends.

---

EXERCISE VI.

---



---

XIII.

ADJECTIVES.

[218. HISTORY. — The construction of adjectives, like that of nouns, was not altogether the same two centuries ago that it is now. Thus, they were then generally made to agree with the last only of several nouns; *feu* and *nu* always agreed with the noun qualified (cf. 219 note 2); the complement of an adjective often took a different preposition from the one now required; the position of the adjective with reference to the noun was much freer than now: and so on.]

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

219. Adjectives qualifying **one word** agree with it in gender and number.

<i>Le bon garçon.</i>	The good boy.
<i>Les bonnes filles.</i>	The good girls.
<i>Le garçon est bon et les filles sont aussi bonnes.</i>	The boy is good, and the girls are also good.
<i>Je suis bon (or bonne : according to the gender of je).</i>	I am good.
<i>Vous êtes bon (or bonne, or bons, bonnes : 100, note 2).</i>	You are good.

*Des bas de soie blanche.*

Stockings of white silk.

*Des bas de soie blancs.*

White silk-stockings.

**220.** Adjectives preceded in English by **more than one word** are treated somewhat differently according as in French they precede or follow those words.

1. If they precede the words they qualify, they are repeated before each, agreeing with it in gender and number. — Ex.

*Le bon garçon et la bonne fille.* The good boy and girl.

2. If they follow the nouns (whether as attributes or predicates) they are subject to the following rules:

a. Adjectives qualifying nouns connected by **et** (or by **ou**, if equivalent to **et**) and denoting **distinct** objects, agree with them all collectively, being in the **plural**. Their gender is that of the nouns qualified. If these differ, the adjective is in the masculine (and then the masc. noun usually is placed nearest its adjective, when the latter has a distinct feminine form).

b. Adjectives qualifying **logically only one** of the preceding words (these being separated by **ou** 'or,' or being synonymous), or **by emphasis, the last one** of nouns placed in gradation, agree in gender and number with the nearest one of the words referred to.

Examples: —

a.

*Le père et la mère sont bons.* The father and the mother are good.

*J'étudie la langue et la littérature françaises.* I study the French language and literature.

*Une prudence et un courage* (better than *Un c. et une p.*) An astonishing prudence and courage.

*étonnants.*

*Ils se nourrissent de chair ou de poisson crus.* They live on raw flesh or fish (i.e. on both, **ou** = **et**).

b.

<i>Un courage ou une prudence étonnante.</i>	An astonishing prudence or courage.
<i>On ne sait pas encore si c'est un homme ou une femme noyée.</i>	It is not yet known if it is a man or woman drowned.
<i>Sa vie n'est qu'un travail et une occupation continue ; [or qu'un travail, (qu') une etc.]</i>	His life is but continual labor, continual occupation.
<i>Le fer, le bandeau, la flamme est toute prête (poetic).</i>	The sword, the bandage, the fire is all ready.

NOTE 1. — Expressions like 'The French and German languages' may be rendered either by *Les langues française et allemande*, or *La langue française et la langue allemande*.

NOTE 2. — *Ci-inclus* 'inclosed,' *ci-joint* 'annexed' are invariable, except when followed by the definite article; also *feu* 'defunct, late,' except when preceded by the definite article. — Ex.

<i>Ci-inclus vous trouverez la copie du contrat.</i>	Inclosed you will find a copy of the contract.
<i>Vous trouverez ci-inclus copie du contrat.</i>	You will find inclosed a copy of the contract.
<i>Je vous envoie ci-incluse la copie du contrat.</i>	I send you inclosed the copy of the contract.
<i>Feu la reine (or La feue reine).</i>	The late queen.

NOTE 3. — An adjective following *avoir l'air* 'have the aspect, look (like)' agrees with *air* (masc.) or with the noun-subject, according as it is applicable to the one or the other. — Ex.

<i>Cette peinture a l'air gai.</i>	This painting looks cheerful.
<i>Cette soupe a l'air bonne.</i>	This soup looks as if it were good.
<i>Elle a l'air content (or contente = d'être contente).</i>	She looks satisfied.

NOTE 4. — *Demi* 'half,' *nu* 'bare,' and the participial adjectives *attendu* 'considering,' *excepté* 'excepted,' *passé* 'past,' *supposé* 'supposed,' *vu* 'seen,' *y compris* 'inclusive' are inflected only when following their noun. Before the noun *demi* and *nu* are joined to it with a hyphen (53. B), the others are treated as if prepositions. — Compare :

## UNINFLECTED :

*Une demi-livre.* A half-pound.*Nu-tête et nu-pieds.* Bareheaded and barefoot.*Excepté les dames.* Except the ladies.*Attendu les événements.* Considering the events.

## INFLECTED :

*Une livre et demie.* A pound and a half.*Tête nue et pieds nus.* Bare head and bare feet.*Les dames exceptées.* The ladies excepted.*Des événements attendus.* Expected events.

NOTE 5. — Adjectives used as adverbial predicates (166) are invariable.  
 — Ex. *Que ces fleurs sentent bon !* 'How sweet these flowers smell !'

## EXERCISE VII.

## PLACE OF ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVES.

**221.** The place of the attributive adjective *before* or *after* its noun, though largely optional, is yet in the main determined : a. by the **emphasis** of the adjective ; b. by more or less **fixed usage** for certain adjectives. Thus :

a. The adjective **precedes** the noun when it attributes to the object denoted by that noun a quality which we naturally (by necessity, compliment, or general understanding) associate with it, and which as such is **unemphatic** : e.g. *la blanche neige* 'the white snow' (it could have no other color) ; *le cruel tyran* 'the cruel tyrant.' But it is placed **after** its noun when it attributes to the object denoted by that noun a quality which, as not belonging to it as a matter of course, is (so far) **emphatic** : e.g. *la rose blanche* 'the white rose' (it might be red etc.) ; *un homme cruel* 'a cruel man.'

b. Some adjectives by fixed usage ordinarily have a fixed position, either before or after their noun, viz. :

**before** their noun : 1. *beau, joli ; bon, meilleur ; mauvais, pire ; jeune, vieux* (may follow) ; *gros ; sot* ; — 2. some others in a certain sense, as described 122, list.

**after** their noun (chiefly in virtue of the main rule) : 1. ad-

jectives denoting shape or color (may follow), nationality, religion, title, or those derived from proper names (e.g. *français*, *catholique*, etc.); — 2. past participles (*aimé*, etc.); — 3. nouns used as adjectives (*trompeur*, etc.); — 4. cf. 122, list.

### Examples to 221:

#### THE ADJECTIVE BEFORE:

*Le vertueux* Caton. The virtuous Cato.

*Un doux* parfum. A sweet perfume.

*La puissante* main d'*Hercule*. The mighty hand of Hercules.

*Les fameuses* pyramides d'*Egypte*. The famous pyramids of E.

*Le malheureux* homme périt. The unhappy man (spoken of before) perished.

*Mon frère est un bon* garçon. My brother is a good boy.

*De beau* drap. Fine cloth.

*Je connais une jeune* fille. I know a young girl.

*Je vois un petit* ruisseau. I see a little brook.

*C'est un vieux* domestique. It is an old servant.

*Il est mon meilleur* ami. He is my best friend.

#### THE ADJECTIVE AFTER:

*Voilà un homme vertueux*. There you have a virtuous man.

*Une odeur douce*. A sweet odor.

*Une main puissante*. A powerful hand.

*C'était une place fameuse*. That was a famous place.

*C'est un homme malheureux*. He is an unhappy man.

*J'ai acheté une table ronde*. I have bought a round table.

*Du drap bleu*. Blue cloth.

*Je connais un marchand anglais*. I know an English merchant.

*J'étudie la langue française*. I study the French language.

*C'est un domestique âgé*. It is an aged servant.

*C'est une nation chrétienne*. It is a Christian nation.

NOTE 1. — Rule a. is often contravened by the requirements of euphony, long adjectives being preferably placed after short nouns, or short before. The educated taste alone can decide in each case.

NOTE 2.—In the speaker's mind, an adjective used in address or exclamation (*mon honoré confrère! Quel charmant enfant!*) attributes to its noun a quality which naturally belongs to it. Hence such adjectives usually precede their noun.

NOTE 3.—If the adjective is determined by other words than the monosyllabic adverbs *bien*, *fort*, *plus* (or *le plus*: i.e. the comparat. and superlat. signs), *très*, *trop*, or *si*, they always follow the noun.—Compare:

<i>Ce très savant homme.</i> This very learned man.	<i>Cet homme vraiment bon.</i> This truly good man.
<i>Le plus beau livre que j'ai vu.</i> The finest book I have seen.	<i>Ce sont des personnes dignes de foi.</i> They are trustworthy persons.
<i>Un si bon garçon,</i> or <i>Un garçon si bon.</i> So good a boy.	<i>Une très jeune fille,</i> or <i>une fille très jeune.</i> A very young girl.

[222.] Adjectives that can be used in a **literal** as well as **metaphorical** sense, generally precede the noun in the latter, because in the speaker's mind it attributes to that noun a quality naturally characteristic of it. Thus:

BEFORE:	AFTER:
<i>Un noir chagrin.</i> A dark grief.	<i>Un habit noir.</i> A black coat.
<i>Un aveugle amour.</i> A blind love.	<i>Un homme aveugle.</i> A blind man.
<i>Une étroite amitié.</i> A close friendship.	<i>Un chemin étroit.</i> A narrow road.

In virtue, chiefly, of this principle—disturbed in part—many adjectives have a more or less **varied sense**, according as they **precede or follow** their noun. Among those whose difference of meaning is not self-evident, the following may be mentioned here:

	BEFORE:	AFTER:
<i>ancien</i>	former	old (cf. note)
<i>brave</i>	honest (cf. note)	brave
<i>certain</i>	certain (indefinite)	sure
<i>cher</i>	beloved	expensive
<i>dernier</i>	last (cf. note)	just past
<i>différent</i> }	various	unlike
<i>divers</i> }		

	BEFORE :	AFTER :
<i>franc</i>	bold, thorough	free, frank
<i>galant (homme)</i>	gentleman	ladies' man
<i>grand</i>	great, grand	great (physically), tall
<i>grosse (femme)</i>	stout	pregnant
<i>honnête</i>	honest	polished
<i>malhonnête</i>	dishonest	rude
<i>méchant</i>	worthless	spiteful (cf. note)
<i>nouveau</i> <sup>1</sup>	new, another (cf. note)	new-fashioned
<i>pauvre</i>	pitiable	needy, poor (cf. note)
<i>petit</i>	small	mean
<i>plaisant</i>	silly, odd	humorous (cf. note)
<i>propre</i>	own (cf. note)	clean, peculiar
<i>pur</i>	mere	unsullied (cf. note)
<i>simple</i>	mere	simple

NOTE. — Even some of these adjectives may in one of their meanings be placed before or after the noun according as they attribute to it a quality which by general understanding belongs to it or not; e.g. *un brave guerrier* 'a brave warrior'; *ayez pitié de ces pauvres femmes* 'have pity on these poor (= indigent) women.'

**223. Two or more adjectives qualifying one noun** are arranged according to the preceding rules. It is to be observed only that such as may be connected by *et* follow the noun, if any one of them should have that position; and that of three adjectives rarely more than one precedes. — Ex.

<i>Une jolie petite fille.</i>	A pretty little girl.
<i>Un grand général anglais.</i>	A great English general.
<i>Une grande et belle maison.</i>	A large (and) beautiful house.
<i>Une action belle et courageuse.</i>	A fine, courageous action.
<i>Une grande maison antique et délabrée.</i>	A grand, old and dilapidated house.

#### EXERCISE VIII.

<sup>1</sup> *Un nouvel habit* 'another coat'; *un habit nouveau* 'a new-fashioned coat'; *un habit neuf* 'a coat fresh from the tailor.'

## COMPARISON.

**224. THE POSITIVE.** — ‘As (so) . . . as’ is in French rendered by *aussi* (in negative clauses usually *si*) . . . *que*, but ‘as’ alone, preceded by no other comparative particle, by *comme*. — Ex.

*Il est aussi riche que moi.* He is as rich as I.

*Il n'est pas si (aussi) riche que moi.* He is not so rich as I.

*Il est riche comme un Crésus.* He is rich as a Croesus.

**225. THE COMPARATIVE.** — The English ‘than’ is rendered by *que* whenever there is a real comparison (but by *de* before numerals when only a greater or smaller number is to be denoted). — Ex.

*Elle est plus belle que sa sœur.* She is prettier than her sister.

*Un glouton mange plus que trois hommes.* A glutton eats more than three men.

*Il a mangé plus de trois pommes.* He has eaten more than three apples.

[226.] The English ‘the more (or less) . . . the more (or less)’ is in French rendered by *plus (moins)* . . . *plus (moins)* placed at the head of each correlated proposition, while the adjective *follows* the verb. Sometimes the concluding proposition is introduced by *et plus (moins)*, especially if the prior proposition contains more than one clause. — Ex.

*Plus on est content, plus on est heureux.* The more contented one is, the happier one is.

*Plus l'écriture est noire, plus elle est lisible.* The blacker the writing, the more legible it is.

*Moins tu es diligent, moins tu sauras.* The less diligent you are, the less you will know.

*Plus on s'élève, plus l'horizon s'agrandit, et plus on s'aperçoit de son néant.* The higher we rise, the more our horizon widens, the more do we perceive our insignificance.

[227.] For the expletive use of *ne* in the second proposition of a comparative sentence, cf. negations.



[228.] *Davantage* 'more' is used, optionally instead of *plus*, at the end of a sentence, or before a noun which it does not directly determine. After *le*, *beaucoup*, *peu*, or *on ne peut*, however, *plus* must always be used. — Ex.

<i>Cela me plaît bien davantage</i> (or <i>bien plus</i> ).	That pleases me very much more.
<i>Cela me plaît beaucoup plus</i> (but not <i>davantage</i> ).	That pleases me much more.
<i>Il est content de l'encre, mais il l'est bien davantage</i> (or <i>plus</i> ) <i>du papier</i> .	He is satisfied with the ink, but he is much more so with the paper.

**229. THE SUPERLATIVE.** — If several superlatives qualify one noun they are repeated with **article** or **possessive** (as the case may be) when placed before their noun, but with the **article** alone when they follow it. — Ex.

<i>Il est le plus cher et le plus fidèle ami que je possède.</i>	He is <i>the</i> dearest and most faithful friend I have.
<i>Il est mon plus cher et mon plus fidèle ami.</i>	He is <i>my</i> dearest and most faithful friend.
<i>C'est l'homme le plus actif et le plus courageux du monde.</i>	He is <i>the</i> most active and courageous man in the world.
<i>C'est mon serviteur le plus fidèle et le plus actif.</i>	He is <i>my</i> most faithful and active servant.

NOTE 1. — After the expression *ce qui* (*que*) . . . *de*, the superlative has no definite article. — Ex. *Ce que j'ai vu de plus beau, c'est ce paysage* 'The finest thing I have seen is this landscape.'

NOTE 2. — The **absolute superlative** is in French for the most part expressed by an adverb (*très*, *fort*, *bien*, etc.), instead of *le plus* etc. (but cf. 230). — Ex. *Un fort (très) beau pays* 'A most beautiful country.'

[230.] When predicate superlatives qualify a noun compared with itself, *le plus* and *le moins* are in French adverbs, and as such **invariable**. Compare: a. Superlative of comparison, *Cette montagne est la plus haute* 'This mountain is the highest' (of the mountains with which it is compared). — b. Superlative absolute, *C'est ici que la montagne est le plus haute* 'It is here the mountain is highest' [i.e. 'high in the utmost degree': cf. *C'est ici que la ville est le mieux fortifiée* 'It is here the city is best (adv. = at the best) fortified'].]

**231. ADJECTIVES USED AS NOUNS.**—As in English, adjectives are often used as nouns to designate persons or things. They are then always accompanied by the definite article or some other determinant. — Ex.

*Maint ignorant se croit un génie.*

Many an ignorant person thinks he is a genius.

*Les riches doivent aider les pauvres et les malheureux.*

The rich should aid the poor and the unfortunate.

*Préférez l'utile à l'agréable.*

Prefer the useful to the agreeable.

*La vieille se leva.*

The old woman rose.

**NOTE.**—As neuter nouns are used (instead of adjectives) the adverbs *le moins* and *le plus*, and also *mieux* and *pis*, interchangeably with *meilleur* and *pire*. — Ex. *C'est le moins que vous puissiez faire* 'That is the least you can do.' *Il n'y a rien de mieux que cela* 'There is nothing better than that.' *Quand on n'a rien à dire, le mieux est de se taire* 'When one has nothing to say, the best thing is to be silent.'

---

#### EXERCISE IX.

---

#### XIV.

#### NUMERALS.

**[232. HISTORY.**—In the ancient language *et* was generally used to combine added parts of a complex numerical expression: e.g. *l'un trois cents et vingt et neuf*. The use of cardinals instead of ordinals (90) is a solecism, gradually introduced into the language since the 17th century by popular usage, brevity of form being the obvious motive. Compare English expressions like 'March 10' for 'March 10th,' etc.]

**233.** The use of cardinals instead of ordinals (from 'two' inclusive) to designate the day of the month, after names of sovereigns, and (optionally) in quoting chapters, etc., has been already noticed under 90.

**234.** Fractions of a year are usually designated by naming the number of months they contain. Thus: *Six mois* 'half a year.' *Un an et trois mois* 'A year and a quarter.'

235. 'A fortnight' is generally expressed by *quinze jours* 'fifteen days' (as 'a week' by *huit jours*), because the day before the first full day is included.

236. The time of day is expressed as the following examples will illustrate:

*deux heures* 'two o'clock,' *deux heures et quart* (or *et un quart*, or *un quart*) 'a quarter past two,' *deux heures et demi* (fem., agreeing with *heure*) 'half past two,' *deux heures et trois quarts* or *trois heures moins un quart* 'a quarter to three,' *deux heures et vingt minutes* 'twenty minutes past two,' *trois heures moins douze minutes* 'twelve minutes before three.' But *midi* 'twelve, noon' and *minuit* 'midnight.'

Observe also *vers les deux heures* 'towards two o'clock,' and, by analogy, *vers les unes heure* (better *vers une heure*) 'towards one o'clock.'

237. Observe also the following idioms: *Quel jour du mois* (or *Quel quantième*) *avons-nous* (or *sommes-nous*, or *est-ce*) *aujourd'hui*? 'What day of the month is it (to-day)?' *Nous avons* (or *nous sommes*, or *il est*) *le treize* 'It is the 13th.' *Quelle heure est-il*? 'What time (o'clock) is it?' *Quel âge avez-vous*? 'How old are you?' *J'ai douze ans* (*douze ans et demi*) 'I am twelve years (twelve years and a half) old.'

NOTE. — 'One' in such expressions as 'an other one,' 'that one,' 'a good one' is not rendered in French. The indef. pronoun 'one' is *on* (112).

---

#### EXERCISE X.

---



---

### XV.

### PRONOUNS.

[238. HISTORY. — Various rules for the use and construction of the pronouns observed now had not yet been formulated in the 16th and 17th centuries. Thus we find in the classical literature such peculiarities as the following:

The personal subject and object-pronoun were often omitted as in Latin (e.g. *Et tirant le bracelet, lui jeta*, for *il le lui jeta*: Amyot), a usage still surviving in the popular idiom (e.g. *Faut pas faire cela*, for *Il ne faut pas* etc.).—With a second affirmative imperative, *me* and *tu*, placed before the verb, were used instead of a suffixed *-moi*, *-toi*, even in the 18th century (e.g. *Quittez cette chimère et m'aimez*: Corneille. *Soldats, suivez leurs pas et me répondez d'eux*: Voltaire).—The subject-noun of an interrogative clause was not represented by a pronoun put after the verb (e.g. *À quel propos le soleil chasse la nuit?* for *chasse-t-il la nuit?* Malherbe).—*En* and *y* were freely used for persons, and *soi* was used where now *lui* is required (e.g. *Idoménée, revenant à soi*, for *à elle*: Malherbe).—A personal pronoun referring to an adjective was made to agree with it in gender (*vous êtes satisfaite, et je ne la suis pas*: Corneille).—The interrogative *qui*, and the relative *qui* after prepositions, could be used with reference to things, contrary to 272, 276, b (e.g. *Qui fait l'oiseau? c'est le plumage*: La Fontaine; *Un prix à qui tout cède*: Racine).—*Même* was placed indifferently before or after its noun (e.g. *Sais-tu que ce vieillard fut la même vertu?*).—And so on.]

**239.** Though the pronouns—as indicated by the name—generally represent nouns, they sometimes refer to adjectives, verbs, or whole sentences.—Ex. *Elle est belle, je ne le suis pas* ‘She is pretty, I am (it) not.’ *Il ne travaille pas comme il le faisait autrefois* ‘He does not work as he was wont.’ *Il est riche, je ne le savais pas* ‘He is rich, I did not know it.’ *C'est étonnant* ‘That is astonishing.’

*Il* in impersonal verbs is expletive.

## PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

(Review carefully 100-5.)

**240. USE OF CONJUNCTIVE OR DISJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.**—It has been already noticed that, owing to a difference of accent-stress, the personal pronouns have a different form, according as they are **conjunctive** (proclitic), or **disjunctive** (independent).

[241.] **The conjunctive form** is used:

a. Ordinarily when the pronoun is in immediate connection with the verb (for exceptions cf. 242, a): e.g. *je parle*; *parle-t-il?*

b. When it is separated from the verb only by another conjunctive pronoun or *ne*: e.g. *on me le dira, il ne parle pas; il ne le dit pas*.

[242.] **The disjunctive form** is used:

a. In immediate connection with the verb only when the pronoun is in **predicate** referring to a person (e.g. *c'est moi*); when it is in **apposition** (e.g. *je parle, moi* 'I speak'); when it is connected with a preceding word by a conjunction as *et, ou*, etc. (e.g. *elle et lui sont ici*); and *moi, toi* (instead of *me, te*) with an affirmative imperative, except before *en, y* (e.g. *écoutez-moi; dis-moi; donnez-m'en*).

b. When the pronoun is separated from the verb by any other word than a conjunctive pronoun or *ne* (e.g. *je pense à toi; lui et son frère sont ici*); and when the verb is understood (e.g. *Qui parle? Moi*; etc.).

Compare (241-242):

CONJUNCTIVE:	a.	DISJUNCTIVE:
<i>Il est venu.</i> He has come.	<i>C'est lui.</i> It is he.	<i>Ce sont eux.</i> It is they.
<i>Est-il venu?</i> Has he come?	<i>Il le fera, lui.</i> He will do it.	
<i>On me voit, mais on ne la voit pas.</i> They see me, but they do not see her.	<i>Elle et lui sont partis.</i> He and she have departed (gone).	
<i>Aimez-le.</i> Love him.	<i>Aimez-moi.</i> Love me.	
<i>Dites-le-moi.</i> Tell it to me.	<i>Dites-le-moi.</i> Tell it to me.	
	b.	
<i>Il ne viendra pas.</i> He will not come.	<i>Lui et son frère viendront.</i> He and his brother will come.	
<i>Je la vois.</i> I see her.	<i>Moi et lui, nous la voyons.</i> I and he see her.	

<b>Je le lui donnerai.</b> I shall give it to him.	<b>Je le donnerai à lui et à elle.</b> I shall give it to him and to her.
<b>Il ne te la montrera pas.</b> He will not show her (it) to you.	<b>On parle de nous. On court à eux (à elles).</b> They speak of us. They run to them.
<b>Je lui en parlerai.</b> I shall speak to him about it.	<b>Eux seuls seront exempts.</b> They alone will be exempt.
	<b>Qui vient ? Lui.</b> Who is coming? He.

NOTE.—When a subject-pronoun is emphasized, it is often repeated in its disjunctive form, as an appositive, before or after the verb. — Ex. *Moi je le ferai* or *Je le ferai, moi* ‘I shall do it.’

Sometimes, as in antithetical clauses, etc., the disjunctive form of the 3d person is used alone, by way of emphasis, instead of the conjunctive. — Ex. *Vous pensez ainsi, mais lui pense autrement* ‘You think so, but he thinks differently.’ *Lui n’y était pas* ‘He was not there.’

[243.] **THE DATIVE** (‘to’) **RELATION.**—The dative relation is expressed by the conjunctive form (*me, te*, etc.), or by *à* with the disjunctive form (*à moi, à toi*, etc.). French and English, though most often accordant in the use of the simple or the prepositional form, frequently differ (cf. *lui dire* ‘tell him’; *courir à lui* ‘hasten to him’: but *lui parler* ‘speak to him’; *lui appartenir* ‘belong to him’).

The general principle (modified in special cases by settled usage) is in French to use the prepositional form only when the **prepositional value** of *to*, as expressing a direction, is yet **felt** (e.g. *courir à* ‘hasten to’), or when the dative-pronoun is **emphasized** (e.g. *je le donne à lui, pas à elle* ‘I give it to him not to her;’ but *je le lui donne* ‘I give it to him,’ no distinction being involved).

Hence the following special rules :

The prepositional dative-form is used :

a. After verbs of motion and a few others (as *penser, songer; accoutumer*,

*renoncer*, etc.): e.g. *Il courut à moi* 'He hastened to me.' *Il pense (songe) à elle* 'He thinks (dreams) of her.'

NOTE 1. — Here belong also some phrases like *avoir recours*, *faire attention*, etc., in which the verb and its complement blend into one idea: e.g. *Il a recours à moi* 'He has recourse to me.' — Notice also the idiom *être à* 'belong to.'

NOTE 2. — *Venir* when not strictly a verb of motion takes the conjunctive form: e.g. *Il me vient une idée* 'An idea occurs to me.'

b. In all cases of emphatic distinction (even when only implied): e.g. *J'offre ce livre à elle (pas à lui)* 'I offer this book to her, not to him'; but *Je lui offre ce livre* 'I offer him (her) this book.'

c. When the direct object is *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, or *vous*, whether used reflexively or not: e.g. *Je vous présente à elle* 'I introduce you to her' (but *Je le lui présente* 'I introduce him to her'). *Je me fie à elle* 'I rely on her.'

d. As a matter of course (242, a) when two datives connected by a conjunction occur: e.g. *Je parle à lui et à elle* 'I speak to him and to her.'

### Compare :

#### CONJUNCT. DATIVE :

*Il lui envoie les livres.* He sends him (her) the books.

*Je vous le donnerai.* I shall give it to you.

*Je lui parle.* I speak to him (her).

*Je leur offre un livre.* I offer them a book.

*Ce livre lui appartient.* This book belongs to him.

*On lui dit qu'elle viendra.* They tell her (him) she is coming.

*Sa fortune lui venait de son père.* He (she) got his (her) fortune from his (her) father.

#### DISJUNCT. DATIVE :

*Il court droit à lui (à elle).* He hastens straight to him (her).

*J'aurai recours à vous.* I shall have recourse to you.

*Je pense à lui (à elle).* I think of him (her).

*Je songe à eux (à elles).* I think of them.

*Ce livre est à lui (a, note 1).* This book belongs to him.

*On fait attention à elle (à lui).* They notice her (him).

*Il vint droit à lui (à elle).* He came straight to him (to her).

*Il me donne de l'argent.* He gives me money.

*Il donne de l'argent à moi (pas à toi).* He gives money to me (not to you).

*Il m'obéit.* He obeys me.

*Il obéit à moi et à vous.* He obeys me and you.

*Je vous la présenterai.* I shall introduce her to you.

*Je me présenterai à vous.* I shall introduce myself to you.

*Il le lui a recommandé.* He has recommended him to him (her).

*Il nous a recommandé à lui.* He has recommended us to him.

*Je le lui présentai.* I introduced him to her.

*Il se présenta à elle.* He introduced himself to her.

*Je leur offrirai ce livre.* I shall present them with this book.

*Ce livre sera offert à eux (pas à elle).* This book will be presented to them and not to her.

**244. THE USE OF *en*, *y*, ETC.**—In applying above rules for the use of the personal pronouns, it must be remembered that the indirect cases of the 3d persons are often, especially when referring to things, supplanted by one of the particles *en* and *y* (101), or by an **adverb**. The rules are as follows:

a. The **conjunctives** *lui* and *leur* are preferably used for persons (or personified things), often also for animals and plants. In other relations they are regularly replaced by *y*: e.g. *J'ai le livre, la feuille y appartient* 'I have the book, the leaf belongs to it.'

b. The **disjunctives** with *de* or *à* can refer only to persons (or personified things), being replaced in other relations by *en* (= *de lui* etc.) and *y* (= *à lui* etc.). Where no ambiguity would arise, *en* and more rarely *y* may be used also for persons, especially plurals of an indeterminate sense, or to avoid repetition. — Ex. *Voilà des plumes, prenez-en* 'There are pens, take some (lit. take of them).' *J'ai votre parole, je m'y fie* 'I have your word, I rely on it.' *Combien avez-vous de frères? J'en ai trois* 'How many brothers have you? I have three.'



c. The **disjunctives** with **other** prepositions than *de* and *à*, though allowed to refer to any noun, are preferably used only for persons (or personified things), being replaced in other relations by some adverb [*sous* or *sur lui* by (*là-*)**dessous** or (*là-*)**dessus**; *après lui* by **derrière**, and so on], or by a repetition of the noun referred to, or by some other device: e.g. *Voilà la table, mets le livre là-dessus* 'There is the table, put the book on it.'

## Compare:

## REFERRING TO PERSONS:

a.

## REFERRING TO THINGS:

*Il a écrit, et je lui réponds.*

He has written, and I answer him.

*Voilà les enfants, donnez-leur vos soins.* There are the children, give them your care.

*Les filles ont soif, donnez-leur de l'eau.* The girls are thirsty, give them water.

*J'ai reçu sa lettre, et j'y réponds.*

I have received his letter, and I answer it.

*Voilà les documents, donnez-y votre attention* (or *examinez-les*). There are the documents, give them your attention.

*Les plantes sont sèches, donnez-leur* (or *donnez-y*) *de l'eau.* The plants are dry, give them water (also, *arrosez-les*).

b.

*Cet homme ne vaut rien, ne parlez pas de lui.* This man is good for nothing, do not speak of him.

*Il parle de sa mère, et il pense toujours à elle* (rarely *et il y pense toujours*). He speaks of his mother, and he always thinks of her.

*Laissez aller les garçons, j'ai besoin d'eux.* Let the boys go, I need them.

*Ce cheval ne vaut rien, n'en parlez pas.* This horse is worthless, do not speak of it.

*Il parle de sa maison, et il y pense toujours.* He speaks of his house, and he is always thinking of it.

*Laissez les livres, j'en ai besoin.* Leave the books, I need them.

*Il aime les enfants, et il en est aimé* (or *il est aimé d'eux*). He loves children (or the children), and he is loved by them.

*Plus on connaît son monde, plus on s'y entend.* The better we know people, the better we understand how to treat them.

c.

*Il tomba, et je tombai sous lui.* He fell, and I fell under him.

*C'est mon ami, et c'est avec lui que je suis venu.* It is my friend, and it is with him I have come.

*La table tomba, et je tombai dessous.* The table fell, and I fell under it.

*J'ai un canif, et c'est avec ce canif (avec lui) que je l'ai coupé.* I have a penknife, and it is with this penknife I have cut it.

Further remarks about the use of the personal pronouns :

245. *Je* is used for *moi* in the old-style expression *Je soussigné* (*sous-signée*) . . . 'I, the undersigned.'

246. *Nous* is often used for *je* in official documents, and by authors speaking of themselves. The verb is then, as after *vous* when referring to one person, put in the plural, but modifying words in the singular. — Ex. *Nous soussigné(e)* . . . , *nous avons ordonné et ordonnons* . . . *Nous sommes content(e)*.

247. *Tu* (*toi*) and *vous*. — A stranger or an acquaintance is addressed by *vous* in French, as by 'you' in English. *Tu* is used in addressing an intimate friend or near relation; and also often, especially by Protestants and in poetry or exalted prose, in addressing the Almighty.

[248.] *Tu* is sometimes used to express superiority, contempt, or anger. Observe the verb *tutoyer* equivalent to the old English 'to thou,' i.e. to call a person *thou*, whether in familiarity or contempt.

[249.] *Vous* always requires the verb to be in the plural. But the number as well as the gender of its modifiers depends on its implied number and gender. — Ex. *Vous êtes bon* (or *bonne*; — *bons* or *bonnes*) 'You are good.'

**250. THE 3D PERSONS** (*il, elle*, etc.). — For the use of the pronouns of the 3d person the following should be observed:

a. **The declinable** forms can represent only determinate nouns (or adjectives used as nouns), with which they agree in gender and number: e.g. *Voyez-vous le garçon (la fille, les arbres)? Oui, je le (la, les) vois?*

NOTE. — A construction peculiar to French is the use of the object-forms *le, la, les* as **conjunctive predicates** after *être* to represent definite nouns: e.g. *Êtes-vous sa mère? Je la suis* 'Are you his mother? I am (*lit.* her = his mother, that person).' If, however, the noun is referred to rather as connoting a certain quality or condition than as naming a definite person or thing, the invariable *le* is used: e.g. *Êtes-vous mère? Je le suis* 'Are you a mother? I am (*lit.* it = a mother).'

b. **The invariable le**, often equivalent to English 'so' or an expletive 'it,' represents adjectives (or nouns: note above), participles, verb-phrases (like *rendre grâces* etc.), and sentences: e.g. *Elle est bonne, il l'est aussi* 'She is good, he also (is good).' *Il viendra, s'il me le dit* 'He will come, if he tells me so.'

c. **En** ('some') is used for partitive nouns in a partitive sense, but *le, la, les* in a definite sense: e.g. *Il a des livres, il m'en (il me les) enverra* 'He has books, he will send me some (he will send them to me).'

## Compare :

(le, la, les) :

*Connaissez-vous cette fille ? Je la connais.* Do you know this girl ? I know her.

*Êtes-vous la reine de ce peuple ? Je la suis.* Are you the queen of this people ? I am.

*Sont-ce là vos livres ? Oui, ce les sont.* Are those your books ? Yes, they are.

*Je vous donne la plume, quoique vous ne me la demandiez pas.* I give you the pen, although you do not ask me for it.

*L'enfant m'a demandé les (ses, ces) livres, et je les lui ai donnés.* The child has asked me for the (his, these) books, and I have given them to him.

*Quand vous aurez des nouvelles, faites-les-moi savoir.* When you shall have news, let me know them.

*Il a trouvé une femme comme il la (referring to femme) désirait.* He found a woman of the kind he desired.

(le invar., en) :

*Est-elle bonne ? Elle l'est (l' for le).* Is she good ? She is.

*Êtes-vous reine ? Oui, je le suis ?* Are you a queen ? Yes, I am (i.e. I have the qualities implied by the word queen).

*Sont-ils malades ? Oui, ils le sont.* Are they sick ? Yes, they are (so).

*Je vous donne la plume, quoique vous ne le demandiez pas.* I give you the pen, although you do not ask me to do so.

*L'enfant m'a demandé des livres, et je lui en ai donné.* The child has asked me for books, and I have given some to him.

*Il est plus fort que je ne le suis.* He is stronger than I am.

*Il a trouvé une femme comme il le (referring to the preceding clause) désirait.* He has found a woman, as he desired (to do).

NOTE. — As seen above, the objective form of the 3d person is in French expressed, whether the English equivalents ('it,' 'so,' etc.) are used or not.

[251.] // as impersonal subject occurs: — a. As in English, with impersonal verbs (*il tonne* etc.). — b. By way of anticipation (as in English the expletive ‘there, it’), to allow the logical subject to follow the verb (e.g. *Il me vient une idée* ‘There occurs to me an idea.’ *Il se peut qu’il vienne* ‘It is possible that he may come.’ *Il y aura un bal* ‘There will be a ball.’) — c. With *être* cf. 252.

**252. // OR *ce* WITH *être*.** — // ‘it’ anticipates impersonally a **following subject** consisting of an infinitive or a *que*-clause grammatically dependent on some other word than a predicate noun or pronoun: e.g. *il est bon d’étudier*; *il est certain qu’il viendra*; or also of a word denoting time: e.g. *il est midi*.

***Ce*** ‘that, it’ refers demonstratively to a **preceding subject**-(clause), expressed or understood: e.g. *elle parle, c’est bien*; *c’est magnifique*; or to a **following subject**-(clause) when *il* would not be used: e.g. *c’est certain, il viendra*; *c’est dommage qu’il vienne*; *c’est elle qui le dit*.

#### Compare:

<i>il</i> :	<i>ce</i> :
<i>Il est bon de savoir se taire.</i> It is good to be able to be silent.	<i>Il sait se taire, c’est bon.</i> He knows how to be silent, that is good.
<i>Il sera agréable de passer les vacances ici.</i> It will be pleasant to spend our holidays here.	<i>C’est magnifique, mais ce n’est pas la guerre.</i> It is magnificent, but is not war.
<i>Il est d’importance de bien parler.</i> It is of importance (= important) to speak well.	<i>C’est une affaire importante.</i> It is an important business.
<i>Il est d’un bon père de bien élever ses enfants.</i> It belongs to a good father to bring up his children well.	<i>C’est mon bon père qui a élevé ces enfants.</i> It is my good father who has educated these children.

- Il est à désirer qu'il vienne. C'est un pesant fardeau (que)*  
 It is desirable that he      *d'avoir un grand mérite.*  
 should come.      It is a heavy burden to have  
    a great distinction.
- Il est à propos qu'elle fasse C'est elle qui fera cette com-*  
*cette commission.* It is      *mission.* It is she that will  
 proper that she should do      do this errand.  
 this errand.
- Il est huit heures, il est tard. Il est huit heures, c'est trop*  
 It is eight o'clock, it is      *tard.* It is eight o'clock;  
 late.      that (= 8 o'cl.) is too late.
- Il était temps de partir. It C'est dix heures qui viennent*  
 was time for departing.      *de sonner.* It is ten o'clock  
    that has just struck.

NOTE 1.— Usage requires *il est besoin*; *c'a été, c'eût été, sera-ce, fut-ce, fût-ce, si ce n'est*. Parenthetically both *il est vrai* and *c'est vrai* occur (the latter being more emphatic).

NOTE 2.— In popular usage *c'est* occurs freely before adjectives, where *il* should be used; and even in literary style *c'est* is used before words of emotion (*heureux, triste, étonnant*, etc.): e.g. *C'est bien triste de ne voir que le ciel et l'eau. C'était à craindre que la Californie ne devînt pays chinois.*

**253. THE REFLEXIVES *se* AND *soi*.**—*Se* is used reflexively as accusative and dative, any gender or number.—*Soi* is rarely used except in the singular and with reference to persons or things spoken of in an indefinite or general way, *lui (elle) eux (elles)*, with or without *même*, being usually substituted for it when other objects are intended.—Ex.

- Il se (acc.) frappe.*      He strikes himself.  
*Il se (dat.) le promet.*      He promises it to himself.  
*On doit rarement parler de*      One should rarely speak of  
*soi.*      himself.  
*Chacun pense à soi.*      Every one thinks of himself.  
*Le vice est odieux de soi.*      Vice is odious in itself.

<i>Un bienfait porte sa récompense en soi.</i>	A kindness brings its own reward with it.
<i>Mon frère a de l'argent sur lui.</i>	My brother has money.
<i>Tes frères ne font point de réflexions sur eux (-mêmes).</i>	Your brothers do not reflect about themselves.
<i>Les choses ne sont en elles-mêmes ni pures ni impures.</i>	Things are neither pure nor impure in themselves.

**254. POSITION OF THE CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.**—The chief rules for the position of the conjunctive pronouns, where it is peculiar to French, have been given already under rule 102, to which the learner is referred.

Farther details are given below.

**255.** The position of the **subject-pronoun** is for the most part the same as in English; i.e. it precedes the verb (*// parle*), except in the following cases:

a. In interrogative sentences, unless introduced by *est-ce que*: e.g. *Parle-t-il ?* or *Est-ce qu'il parle ?*

b. In interjected phrases like *dit-il*, and the like, if preceded by all or part of the words quoted: e.g. "*Je viendrai*," *dit-il*.

c. After an immediate subjunctive of desire not introduced by *que*: e.g. *Puisse-t-il venir*.

d. More or less optionally when the sentence is introduced by certain adverbs or adverbial phrases (cf. 416, b): e.g. *Aussi se regardait-il sans pareil. À peine fut-il entré. En vain l'a-t-il essayé. Peut-être pourrai-je vous être utile.*

**256.** The **object-pronoun** must not be placed before any other verb than the one on which it depends. Hence *Je viens la demander* (not *Je la v. d.*). *L'occasion est favorable, il faut savoir en profiter* (not *il en faut*, nor *il faut en s. p.*). And compare *Il lui faut parler* 'He must speak' (*lit.* 'It is necessary for him to speak'); but *Il faut lui parler* 'It is necessary to speak to him.'

NOTE 1. — Usually object-pronouns precede the **first** of two successive verbs (the second an infinitive) when it is **transitive** (esp'y *faire, laisser, entendre, ouvrir, voir, sentir*): e.g. *Je le ferai venir* 'I shall make him come.' *Je les lui ai laissé voir* 'I have allowed him (her) to see them.' If it is an affirmative imperative, the pronoun, of course, follows: *Faites-le venir* 'send for him.' Only when the second verb is a reflexive, each verb is preceded by a pronoun: *Je le vois se lever* 'I see him rise.'

NOTE 2. — Forms like *je le viens demander* (instead of *je viens le d.*) are very common in the earlier language.

---

EXERCISE XI.

---

POSSESSIVES.

(Review carefully 106.)

**257.** The Possessives agree in gender and number with the object possessed.

<i>Il aime son fils et sa fille.</i>	He loves his son and his daughter.
<i>Mon fils et le sien, ma fille et la sienne.</i>	My son and his (hers), my daughter and his (hers).
<i>L'arbre a perdu ses feuilles.</i>	The tree has lost its leaves.

NOTE. — That the possessive adjective may be replaced by the definite article where no misunderstanding can arise (as in *Elle a perdu la mémoire; Fermez la bouche*, etc.) has already been noticed: 182-4.

**258. USE OF *lui* ETC. FOR *son* ETC.** — The possessive adjective is often replaced by an **indirect object-pronoun** put before the verb, especially in speaking of parts of the body. — Ex.

<i>Je me suis coupé le doigt.</i>	I have cut <i>my</i> finger.
<i>Il s'est cassé le bras.</i>	He has broken <i>his</i> arm.
<i>L'éclat des grandeurs leur a tourné la tête.</i>	The splendor of the grand things turned their head.



**259. USE OF *en* FOR *son*, *leur*.** — *En* 'thereof' = 'its, their' is ordinarily used for *son*, *leur* with a **direct object** (less regularly also with a **subject of *être***) with reference to a **noun of a preceding clause** denoting a thing or, rarely, a being. *En* is then placed before the verb, and its noun has the definite article (as it would in English if 'thereof' were used).

## Compare:

*en*:*son (leur)*:

*Quand on est dans un pays, il faut **en** suivre l'usage.*

When we are in a country, we must follow its customs.

*J'aime cette fleur (ces fleurs), l'odeur **en** est très bonne.*

I like this flower, its (their) odor is very good.

*Charles-Quint passa ses dernières années parmi les moines, mais sans **en** embrasser la vie.* Charles V passed his last years among the monks, but without embracing their mode of life.

*Cette terre est magnifique, j'admire la fertilité **de son** sol.*

This land is magnificent, I admire the fertility of its soil.

*Vous rappelez-vous cette ville? **Ses** promenades sont admirables.* Do you remember that city? Its public walks are admirable.

*Ma vie est rude, et **ses** aspérités (not subj. of *être*) me blessent.* My life is hard, and its bitterness wounds me.

**260.** After *chacun* referring to a word in the plural, *son* and *leur* may be used indifferently, though *leur* is more common with a direct object and *son* after a preposition. — Ex. *Ils gagnèrent chacun **leur** place. Ils parlèrent chacun de **son** malheur.*

**261.** The possessive adjectives are **repeated** (like the definite article: 202) before each noun or adjective denoting a different object, and always before superlatives (cf. 229). — Ex.

*J'aime mon père et ma mère.* I love my father and (my) mother.

*Mes chers et bons parents.* My dear good parents.

262. *Mon* (*ma, mes*) is in French commonly used in address, especially before names of near relatives: e.g. *Bonjour, mon père (mes enfants)*. *Oui, mon général*. Hence also the words *monsieur (mon-sieur)*, *madame (ma-d.)*, *mademoiselle (ma-d.)*, which, unless farther defined, do not take the definite article (e.g. *Monsieur est sorti. Madame est malade*).

263. *Le mien, le tien*, etc. are used for 'mine,' 'thine,' etc. But in phrases like 'is mine,' meaning 'belongs to me,' *à moi, à toi*, etc. are commonly used instead. — Ex. *Son livre et le mien* 'His book and mine.' *À qui est ce livre, est-il à vous?* *Oui, il est à moi* 'Whose is this book, is it yours? Yes, it is mine.'

NOTE 1. — The English phrase 'a friend of mine' has no literal rendering in French; use *un de mes amis* (or cf. note 2).

NOTE 2. — *Mien* etc. are exceptionally used in predicate without the article (e.g. *Ce livre est mien*: but usually *est à moi*) or as an attribute (e.g. in familiar or jocular style *Un mien ami*: usually *un de mes amis*, cf. note 1).

### DEMONSTRATIVES.

(Review carefully 107.)

264. The adjective form *ce* (*cette, ces*) is the one generally used before a noun, to which *-ci* or *-là* may be affixed, according to 107. — Ex.

*Ce garçon n'est pas diligent.* This boy is not diligent.  
*Je ne parle pas de ce garçon-ci,* I do not speak of this boy, but  
*mais de cette fille-là.* of that girl.

265. The pronominal form *ce*, referring impersonally to something explained by what follows or already stated, is used:—a. With a relative pronoun or the conjunction *que*

(*ce qui, que* 'that which,' 'what,' *ce dont* 'that of or about which'; *ce que* 'the fact that'). — b. With *être* in its various tenses, unless *il* be required (252). — Ex.

a

*Ce qui est vrai est beau.* That which (what) is true is beautiful.

*Voilà ce qui m'étonne.* That is what astonishes me.

*Ce que vous dites est vrai.* What you say is true.

*C'était bien là ce dont nous étions convenus.* That was the very thing about which we were agreed.

*Cela vient de ce que vous travaillez trop.* That comes from your working too much.

b

*C'est une affaire importante.* It is an important business.

Etc., cf. ex. under 252.

NOTE. — About the use of *ce sont*, etc., for *c'est*, etc., cf. 300.

[266.] *Ce* is in French often used with *être* when there is no pronoun in English, viz. :

a. When for emphasis the logical subject (then preceded by an expletive *que*) is placed after *être* (cf. 360). — Ex.

*C'est une belle ville que Paris* Paris is a beautiful city.

(Gallicism, for the less emphatic *Paris est une belle ville*).

*C'est une charmante chose qu'une femme.* A woman is a charming thing.

b. When the predicate complement precedes and the subject follows *être*; or simply to repeat a preceding subject. — Ex.

*La première qualité d'un monarque c'est la fermeté.* The first quality of a monarch is firmness.

*Ce qui importe à l'homme c'est de remplir ses devoirs.* What is of consequence to man is to fulfil his duties.

*Ce qui l'afflige, c'est que vous lui en voulez.* What grieves him is your being angry with him.

*Le temps, c'est de l'argent.* Time is money.

Etc., cf. ex. under 252.

NOTE. — In elliptical expressions the expletive *que* of a. is used even when *c'est* (etc.) is omitted: e.g. *Un singulier homme que ce roi* 'A singular man, this king!'

[267.] Exceptionally, *ce* is used with *sembler* (in *ce me semble*), *devoir* or *pouvoir* followed by *être*, *dire*, *venir*, and after a preposition. — Ex. *C'est lui, ce me semble. Ce doit être lui. Ce pourrait bien être lui. Sur ce, je suis votre serviteur.*

[268.] *Ceci* and *cela* (or *ça*) are used with reference to something pointed to by the speaker, or to a sentence or idea. In a question, with *être*, they are divided into *-ce ci* and *-ce là*. — Ex.

*Ceci est pour vous; cela est pour moi.* This is for you; that is for me.

*Cela ne me plaît pas.* That does not please me.

*Cela m'est impossible.* That is impossible to me.

*Qui a dit cela?* Who has said that?

*Est-ce là votre opinion?* Is that your opinion?

*Sont-ce ci vos livres?* Are these your books?

269. *Celui* (*celle, ceux, celles*) 'that one' (often = 'he') is the **dependent** pronoun, necessarily determined by an immediately following (a) *relative clause* or (b) *prepositional* (especially a possessive) *phrase*. — Ex.

a

*Celui qui est content est heureux.* He who is content is happy.

*Ceux qui vivront verront.* Those who live shall see.

*Celle dont nous pleurons la mort.* She whose death we mourn.

*Il n'y a pas de vérité plus sûre que celle que tous les hommes doivent mourir.* There is no truth more certain than that all men must die.

b

<i>Mon fils et celui de mon frère,</i>	My son and my brother's,
<i>ma fille et celle de mon frère.</i>	daughter and my brother's.
<i>La robe de satin et celle de</i>	The satin dress and the velvet
<i>velours.</i>	one.
<i>Voilà vos lettres et celles pour</i>	There are your letters and your
<i>votre sœur.</i>	sister's.
<i>Je n'ai qu'un seul désir, celui</i>	I have only one desire, that of
<i>d'être heureux.</i>	being happy.

NOTE 1. — If the relative clause is parenthetic in value *celui-ci*, *celui-là* are used for *celui* (270): e.g. *Celui-ci, qui coûte peu de chose, est excellent* 'This one, which costs but a trifle, is excellent.'

NOTE 2. — *Celui* is also used, though less frequently (and not elegantly), before adjective expressions that could be changed into a relative clause: e.g. *Ces livres sont meilleurs que ceux donnés à M. A. Cette histoire, ainsi que celles purement morales, est bonne à lire.*

NOTE 3. — Sometimes *celui* etc., may be omitted. — Ex. *Ces sentiments sont (ceux) d'un bon père.*

**270.** *Celui-ci* and *celui-là* are the independent pronouns, being used: — a. to point out distinct objects as near (*celui-ci*) or more remote (*celui-là*); or to refer back to two things as 'the latter' (*celui-ci*), 'the former' (*celui-là*); — b. as antecedent to a relative which does not immediately follow (269. 1). — Ex.

a

<i>Ce sont deux beaux tableaux;</i>	Those are two beautiful paint-
<i>celui-ci est par Raphaël,</i>	ings; this one is by Raphael,
<i>celui-là est par Murillo.</i>	that (one is) by Murillo.
<i>Voulez-vous ceux-ci ou ceux-</i>	Will you have these or those?
<i>là ?</i>	
<i>Le sommeil est doux après le</i>	Sweet is sleep after labor; the
<i>travail; celui-ci épuise nos</i>	latter exhausts our strength,
<i>forces, celui-là les répare.</i>	the former repairs it.

b

<i>Celui-là est heureux qui est</i>	He is happy who is content.
<i>content.</i>	

[But *Celui qui est content est heureux*: cf. 269. He who is content is happy.]

---

EXERCISE XII.

---

INTERROGATIVES.

(Review 108.)

**271.** The adjective *quel* (which may be separated from its noun by *être*) and the pronoun *lequel* are, as the English interrogatives, used in both direct and indirect questions. *Lequel* (like Engl. 'which?') always limits the question to one or certain ones of several objects referred to. — Ex.

<i>Quel livre avez-vous ?</i>	Which (what) book do you have?
<i>Je ne sais quels livres il a.</i>	I do not know which books he has.
<i>À quelle heure viendrez-vous ?</i>	At what hour shall you come ?
<i>Quel est votre avis ?</i>	What is your opinion ?

<i>Lequel de ces tableaux vous plaît le mieux ?</i>	Which of these paintings pleases you most ?
---	---

<i>Examinons lequel de vos élèves a fait le plus de progrès.</i>	Let us find out who of your pupils has made the greatest progress.
--	--

<i>Laquelle de ces fleurs est à vous ?</i>	Which of these flowers is yours ?
--	-----------------------------------

<i>Lesquels avez-vous choisis ?</i>	Which ones have you chosen ?
-------------------------------------	------------------------------

<i>Duquel de ces garçons parlez-vous ?</i>	Which of these boys do you speak of ?
--	---------------------------------------

<i>Auxquelles de ces fleurs donnez-vous la préférence ?</i>	Which of these flowers do you prefer ?
---	--

NOTE. — *Quel* also corresponds to the exclamatory 'what (a)': *Quel beau tableau !* 'What a beautiful picture!' *Quelle bonté !* 'What goodness!'

**272.** *Qui* is used in both direct and indirect questions, with reference to **persons**, as subject or object. Instead of *qui*, the

redundant phrase *qui est-ce qui* (subject) or *qui est-ce que* (object) is often used, especially when no noun follows the verb. — Ex.

*Qui* (or *Qui est-ce qui*) *a fait cela ?* Who has done that?

*Qui* *cherchez-vous ?* (or *Qui est-ce que vous cherchez ?*) Whom do you seek?

*Qui est ce garçon ?* Who is this boy?

*À qui* *pensez-vous ?* Of whom do you think?

*Je ne sais qui a dit cela.* I do not know who has said that.

**273.** *Que* 'what,' a conjunctive, is used only in direct questions. Instead of *que*, the redundant phrase *qu'est-ce qui* (subject) or *qu'est-ce que* (object or predicate) is often used, the former regularly when the interrogative (Eng. *what?*) is the subject of other than impersonal verbs. — Ex.

*Que* *dites-vous ?* (or *Qu'est-ce que vous dites ?*) What do you say?

*Qu'est ce ?* (or usually *Qu'est-ce que c'est ?*) What is it (that)?

*Qu'est-ce qui vous étonne ?* What astonishes you?

NOTE 1. — In colloquial language, *qu'est-ce qui* (or *que*) is often farther extended to *qu'est-ce que c'est qui* (or *que* with or without verb). — Ex. *Qu'est-ce que c'est qui vous étonne ?* What astonishes you? *Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'il veut ?* What does he wish? *Qu'est que c'est que l'avenir ?* What is the future? *Qu'est-ce que c'est que cela (or ça) ?* What is that?

NOTE 2. — In indirect questions 'what' is expressed by *ce qui* or *ce que* (265). — Ex. *Je ne sais pas ce qui l'afflige* 'I do not know what astonishes you.'

**274.** *Quoi* 'what,' a disjunctive, is used after prepositions. Without preposition it can occur only in exclamation or interrogation, when the verb is omitted; and after *savoir*. — Ex.

*À quoi* *pensez-vous ?* What are you thinking of?

*De quoi* *parlez-vous ?* What are you talking of?

*Quoi de plus beau ?* What more beautiful?

*Il cherche quelque chose. Quoi* He is looking for something.  
*donc ?* What is it ?

*Il cherche, je ne sais quoi.* He is seeking, I don't know what.

275. About *quel*, *qui*, or *quoi* forming indefinites with *que* cf. 287.

### RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

(Review 109-11.)

**276. USE OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS.** — The use of the different relative pronouns is subject to the following rules :

a. **Without preposition** *qui* and *que* are always used when no ambiguity can arise, i.e. generally with reference to an immediately preceding noun. *Lequel* (*laquelle*, etc.) simply serves to avoid ambiguity by distinguishing gender, or referring to the more remote antecedent noun. — Ex.

*L'enfant qui est malade, et que* The child who is sick, and whom  
*j'ai vu.* I have seen.

*Les villes qui ont été pillées.* The cities that have been plundered.

*Elle a un ruban de soie qui* She has a silk-ribbon that is  
*est bien beau.* very pretty.

*La sœur du curé laquelle* The vicar's daughter, who is  
*demeure ici près, est malade.* living near by, is ill.

*Le fils du médecin, lequel j'ai* The physician's son whom I  
*vu hier.* saw yesterday.

b. **After a preposition** *qui* can refer to persons only, but *lequel* to both persons and things. The prepositional phrases *de qui*, *duquel*, and *auquel* (*dans lequel* etc.) are often replaced by *dont* and *où* (cf. 111, and c. below) — by *où* less often in ordinary style than in classical writers. — Ex.

*C'est un ami de qui* (or *du-* It is a friend of whom I speak.  
*quel*) *je parle.*

*Voilà l'ami dont* (or *duquel* There is the friend of whom I  
 or *de qui je parle*.) speak.



<i>La maison dans laquelle</i> (or <i>où</i> ) <i>je demeure.</i>	The house in which (or where) I live.
<i>Sa mère pour qui</i> (or <i>pour laquelle</i> ) <i>il travaille, est vieille et infirme.</i>	His mother for whom he works is old and infirm.
<i>Les honneurs où</i> (or, more commonly, <i>auxquels</i> ) <i>vous aspirez.</i>	The honors to which you aspire.
<i>La douleur où je suis plongé.</i>	The grief into which I am plunged.
<i>La maison d'où il sort.</i>	The house from which he comes.
But <i>La maison dont il sort.</i>	The house (= family) from which he descends.

c. 'Whose (of which)' is rendered by *dont*; or, after a preposition, by *duquel* (*de laquelle* etc.). The construction is in either case what it would be in English if 'whose' were rendered by 'of whom (which),' observing always that *dont* heads the relative clause, and thus, unlike 'whose,' is often separated from its governing noun. — Ex.

<i>L'homme dont le frère est mort, est ici.</i>	The man whose brother is dead is here.
<i>Je voudrais voir l'homme dont vous vantez tant la probité.</i>	I should like to see the man whose honesty you praise so much.
<i>Je vais trouver l'agent dont vous m'avez donné l'adresse.</i>	I am going to find the agent whose address you gave me.
<i>L'ennui est un mal dont le travail est le remède.</i>	Ennui is an evil whose cure is work.
<i>L'homme à l'enfant duquel vous parlez.</i>	The man to whose child you speak.
<i>La femme avec le fils de laquelle je suis venu.</i>	The woman with whose son I have come.
<i>Les lois à la protection desquelles nous confions notre bonheur.</i>	The laws to whose protection we intrust our happiness.

[277.] Elliptically *qui* is used as an indefinite pronoun in the sense of 'whoever, (any) one who,' or instead of *ce qui*, and it is then invariable. — Ex.

*Qui ne dit rien consent.*

He who says nothing consents.

*Qui (or Celui que) j'aime, je l'aime bien.*

Whom I love, I love well.

*On ne peut rien exiger de qui n'a rien.*

Nothing can be exacted from one who has nothing.

*Voilà qui (or ce qui) n'arrivera jamais.*

That shall never happen (*lit.* Behold what shall never happen).

[278.] *Lequel* is exceptionally used as a pronominal adjective. — Ex.  
*J'ai reçu cent dollars, de laquelle somme je vous paierai ma dette.*

**279.** *Quoi* is an indefinite relative referring to some such antecedent as *ce*, *rien*, *chose*, *voilà*, *voici*, and is used only with a preposition. — Ex.

*Il n'y a rien sur quoi l'on ait plus écrit.*

There is nothing on which more has been written.

*Voilà de quoi il s'agit.*

That is what the question is about.

*Je peux deviner (ce) à quoi il pense.*

I can guess what he is thinking of.

*Nous avons de quoi vivre* (and so on with an infinitive to express means or cause).

We have the means of living (We have our means of subsistence).

**280.** The English 'what' (= 'that which') is in French rendered by *ce* and a relative pronoun (265). — Ex.

*Ce qui est vrai est beau.*

What is true is beautiful.

*Ce que vous dites est vrai.*

What you say is true.

*Ce dont je me plains, c'est votre inattention.*

What I complain of is your inattention.

*Les biens de la fortune sont ce à quoi il faut le moins se fier.*

The gifts of fortune are what we must least of all rely upon.

**281.** The Relative pronoun should follow its antecedent as nearly as the construction of the sentence permits, and it cannot be omitted, as in English. — **Ex.**

*J'ai sur ma table un livre qui* I have a book on my table which  
*est à toi* (not *J'ai un livre* is thine.  
*sur ma table qui est à toi*).

*Où est le papier que j'ai* Where is the paper (which) I  
*acheté ?* bought ?

*Voilà le livre dont je parle.* There is the book I speak of.

---

EXERCISE XIII.

---

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

(Review carefully 112. Rules there given, not repeated.)

**282.** *Quelque* (*quelques*) 'some' is more restrictive than the partitive sign (45), and may often be rendered 'a little, a few.'

*Avez-vous quelqu'argent ?* *Avez-vous de l'argent ?* Have  
 Have you (some) a little you any money?  
 money ?

*Avez-vous quelques plumes ?* *Avez-vous des plumes ?* Have  
 Have you a few (some) you pens ?  
 pens ?

*Quelques hommes et des femmes* A few men, and some women  
*se montrent sur le mur.* show themselves on the wall.

**NOTE.** — With a word of quantity (especially a numeral) *quelque* 'some, about' is invariable. — **Ex.** *Quelque cinquante ans* 'Some fifty years.' *Quelque peu* 'Some little.'

**283.** *Quelque* . . . (*qui* or) *que* form pronominal phrases meaning 'whatever' or 'however.' If the intervening word is a noun or noun-phrase, *quelque* is an adjective and variable, the meaning being then 'whatever;' otherwise it is an adverb and invariable, the meaning being then 'however.' — **Ex.**

- Quelque malheur qui m'attend.**<sup>1</sup> Whatever misfortune may await me.
- Quelques richesses qu'il possède.** Whatever riches he may possess.
- Quelques beaux talents qu'il ait.** Whatever fine talents he may have.
- Quelque riches qu'ils soient.** However rich they may be.
- Quelque fort qu'on se défende.** However stoutly one may resist.

284. *Quelque chose* 'something' is masculine, but *chose* 'thing' is feminine (even in *quelque chose que* 'whatever'). — Ex. *Quelque chose de beau* 'Something beautiful.' *Quelque chose qu'il ait faite* (f.) 'Whatever he may have done.' *Une belle chose* 'A beautiful thing.'

285. *Quelconque* 'whatever,' which is used for both persons and things, follows the noun it qualifies. With *ne* it is rarely used in the plural. — Ex. *Donnez-moi un livre quelconque* (*des livres quelconques*) 'Give me some sort (any kind) of a book.' *Il n'y a raison quelconque qui puisse vous y obliger* 'There is no reason whatever that can oblige you to it.'

286. *Quiconque* 'whoever' is rarely used except for persons and in the singular. — Ex. *Quiconque est riche doit être bienfaisant* 'Whoever is rich ought to be beneficent.' *Quiconque ment sera puni* 'Whoever lies shall be punished.'

287. The relatives *qui*, *quel*, *quoi*, *où* form with a following *que* indefinite pronominal phrases. *Qui que* 'whoever,' *quel que* 'whatever,' and *quoi que* 'whatever' (with reference to no definite object) are then used as predicate complements with *être*. *Où que* means 'wherever.' — Ex.

- Qui que vous soyez, quelle que soit votre réputation, et quoi que vous fassiez.** Whoever you may be, whatever may be your reputation, and whatever you do.
- Quoi qu'il en soit.** Whatever the case may be.
- Où que vous soyez, vous êtes mort pour moi.** Wherever you be you are dead for me.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Quelque* . . . *qui* or *que*, unlike *tout* . . . *que*, always requires the subjunctive (330).

**NOTE.** — The same phrases are also used with *ce soit* in the sense of ‘any one soever,’ ‘anything whatever,’ and the like. — Ex. *Il n’y avait qui que ce soit* ‘There was not any one soever (anybody at all).’ *Il ne s’occupe de quoi que ce soit* ‘He does not busy himself with anything whatever.’

**288.** *On* (about which cf. 112. 3) may apply to a particular person or to a distinct body of persons, and a following adjective then agrees in gender and number with the noun referred to; but the verb is invariably in the singular. — *On* must be repeated before each verb whose subject it is. — Ex.

*À votre âge, ma fille, on est curieuse* At your age, my daughter, one is  
(f.). inquisitive.

*Ici l’on est égaux*, pl. (colloquial). Here people are equal.

*On est heureux quand on est content.* One is happy when he is contented.

**289.** *Autrui*, which can refer only to persons, is rarely used except after prepositions (it being supplied, as subject and direct object, by *un autre*, pl. *les autres*, *d’autres* ‘others’).

*Ne vous moquez pas d’autrui.* Do not make fun of other people.

*D’autres le feront.* Others will do that.

**290.** *Personne*, *rien*, and *aucun* are the negative correlatives to *quelqu’un*, *quelque chose*, and *quelque*, being used whenever the action of the verb (expressed or understood) is in some manner denied, forbidden, or uncertain. — Ex.

*Je ne connais personne.* I do not know any one (I know no one).

*Rien n’est impossible à Dieu.* Nothing is impossible for God.

*Je ne désire aucun de vos livres.* I do not wish any of your books.

*Je doute que personne vienne.* I doubt whether anybody comes.

*Je lui défends de rien dire.* I forbid him to say anything.

*Y a-t-il aucun (personne) qui le croie ?* Is there anybody who believes it?

*Il est parti sans payer personne (sans rien payer).* He left without paying anybody (without paying anything).

*Je le sais mieux que personne (ne le sait understood).* I know it better than anybody.

*Qui le sait ? Personne.*

Who knows it? Nobody.

*À quoi pensez-vous ? À rien.*

What are you thinking of? Of nothing.

*Je ne veux rien dire.*

I will say nothing (or I do not mean anything).

Notice that *personne*, like all the other uninflected pronouns, is masculine singular, while the noun *personne* 'person' is feminine.

**291. *Nul*.** — The adjective is inflected in masculine and feminine, but it is rarely used as an indirect object or in the plural. The pronoun *nul* is always masculine singular. Although itself negative (Lat. *nullus*) its verb is by analogy construed with *ne*. — Ex.

*Nul n'est revenu.*

No one has returned.

*Je n'en ai nulle connaissance.*

I have no knowledge of it.

**292. *Tout* (*toute*; pl. *tous*, *toutes*).** — a. The adjective *tout* is distributive (sing. 'every, any,' pl. 'all = all kinds of') when accompanied by no article or pronoun. With an article or pronoun it is collective ('the whole, all the'). — b. The pronoun *tout* means 'everything, all.' — Ex.

#### CONJUNCTIVE :

Directly preceding :

Followed by an article or pronoun :

*Tout homme doit aimer son pays.* Every man should love his country.

*Toute la maison fut brûlée.* The whole house was burnt.

*Toute chose a son temps.* Everything has its time.

*J'y resterai toute une année.* I shall remain there a whole year.

*Toutes vérités ne sont pas bonnes à dire.* It is not well to tell all truths.

*Tous les hommes sont mortels.* All men are mortal.

*Tout enfant aime le jeu.* Every child likes playing.

*Tous mes (ces) enfants aiment le jeu.* All my (these) children like playing.

## DISJUNCTIVE :

*Tout dépend de l'éducation.* Everything depends on education.

*Je les connais tous* (*s = ss*). I know them all.

*J'ai tout dit.* I have said all.

NOTE 1. — *Tout* before the name of a city means 'all.' — Ex. *Tout Paris en parle* 'All Paris speaks of it.'

NOTE 2. — *Tout* as adverb means 'wholly, entirely, quite.' By an anomaly (to preserve the utterance of *t* as before vowels) it is inflected *toute* (*toutes*) before a feminine adjective beginning with a consonant (cf. *tout étonnée*, f.: *toute bonne*, f. — Ex.

*Elle en fut tout étonnée* (or *toute surprise*). She was quite astonished at it.

*Elles sont tout inconsolables* (or *toutes désolées*). They are quite disconsolate.

*Il parlait tout fièrement.* He spoke quite proudly.

*Elle est tout à son devoir.* She is wholly devoted to her duty.

*Je suis tout à vous.* I am wholly yours.

NOTE 3. — *Tout . . . que* means 'however,' *tout* being here an adverb, treated as above. — Ex. *Tout bon qu'il est*<sup>1</sup> (but *Toute bonne qu'elle est*) 'However good he (or she) is.' *Toute femme* (used as adj.) *qu'elle est* 'However much of a woman she is.'

293. *Tel* 'such' takes the indefinite article before it, instead of *after*, as in English, and it does not prevent the use of the partitive *de*. It may mean 'so-and-so,' 'such-and-such,' being used instead of a word not specified; or it may mean 'many a one,' and *Tel . . . tel* corresponds to 'one . . . another' or 'as . . . so.'

*Tel est son devoir.* Such is his duty.

*Une telle conduite me plaît.* Such conduct pleases me.

*De tels amis sont rares.* Such friends are rare.

*Il me doit telle somme.* He owes me such-and-such a sum.

*Monsieur un tel.* Mr. such a one.

*Tel rit aujourd'hui qui pleurera demain.* Many a one laughs to-day who will cry to-morrow.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Tout . . . que* (unlike *quelque . . . que*: 330) does not generally require the subjunctive.

*Tel rit, tel pleure.*  
*Tel maître, tel valet.*

One laughs, another cries.  
 As the master, so the servant (Like  
 master, like man).

**294. *L'un l'autre*** (requiring *se* before the verb) 'each other,' refer to antecedent objects, expressed or understood, with which they agree in gender and number. — Ex.

*Ces deux filles s'aiment l'une l'autre.* These two girls love each other.

*Les chrétiens doivent s'aimer les uns les autres.* Christians should love one another.

In the same way are used also: *l'un de* (à etc.) *l'autre* 'of (to etc.) each other,' *l'un et l'autre* 'both,' *l'un ou l'autre* 'either the one or the other,' *ni l'un ni l'autre* 'neither the one nor the other.' After *l'un et l'autre* the noun is in the singular, but the verb usually in the plural; after *ni l'un ni l'autre* the verb is in the singular or plural according as the predicate is applicable to only one or both of the objects referred to. — Ex.

*Ils parlent l'un de l'autre.* They speak of one another.

*On se doit des égards les uns aux autres.* We should be considerate towards one another.

*L'un et l'autre garçon le suivaient.* Both boys followed him.

*L'un et l'autre se sont trompés.* Both are mistaken.

*Lucretia et Cléopâtre se sont tuées l'une et l'autre, mais elles ne se sont pas tuées l'une l'autre.* Lucretia and Cleopatra both killed themselves, but they did not kill each other.

*L'une ou l'autre le fera.* Either the one or the other shall (will) do it.

*Ni l'une ni l'autre n'est ma mère.* Neither is my mother.

*Ni l'un ni l'autre ne viendront.* Neither will come.

---

EXERCISE XIV.

---



## XVI.

## VERBS.

[295. HISTORY. — The construction of the verb has been subject to some variation in past centuries. Thus, in the 16th and beginning of the 17th century, the verb was allowed to agree with the last only of two or more coördinated subjects (e.g. *Leurs maisons et leur ville va être déserte.* Bossuet); in the 17th, *être* usually agrees with a preceding *ce* and not with its predicate (e.g. *C'est eux qui en demeurent d'accord.* M<sup>me</sup> de Sévigné); in the 17th and 18th, exceptionally even yet, a verb referring to two nouns is put in the plural, even when the second noun is subordinated to the first (e.g. *Le comte Piper avec quelques officiers étaient sortis du camp.* Voltaire). — In the 17th century, the conditional is found used after *si*, and a dependent future after a leading future even when not logically required (*Si d'un sang trop vil ta main serait trempée.* Racine). (*Je reviendrai voir sur le soir en quel état elle sera.* Molière). The distinction of mode has undergone many changes (cf. further under the subjunctive: 319), and the infinitive, originally supplying both the Latin infinitive and gerund or gerundive, was once much more freely used than it is now.]

## AGREEMENT OF VERB AND SUBJECT.

296. A verb agrees in **number** and **person** with its subject, or with its subjects collectively (if thus considered). — Ex.

*Mon frère viendra.*

My brother will come.

*Mes frères viendront.*

My brothers will come.

*Nous viendrons.*

We shall come.

*Mon frère et ma sœur viendront.*

My brother and sister will come.

NOTE. — After *l'un et l'autre* the predicate may be in the singular: e.g. *L'un et l'autre est bon*, or *sont bons*.

[297.] AGREEMENT WITH ONE ALONE OF SEVERAL SUBJECTS. — The verb agrees in French — in the main as also in

English — with one alone of several subjects, a. when its action really affects **only one** of them, or b. when it affects **one** of them more **emphatically** than the others. Thus,

a. It agrees with one of several subjects (the nearest), when they are connected by *ou* 'or' or *ni* 'neither,' provided the verbal action cannot affect all the subjects alike. — Ex. *Mon frère ou ma sœur viendra* 'My brother or my sister (not both) will come.' *Ni l'un ni l'autre n'est mon père* 'Neither is my father' (only one could be). — But *Le vice ou la vertu font des révolutions* 'Vice or virtue (both) cause revolutions.' *Ni mon frère ni ma sœur ne viendront* 'Neither my brother nor my sister will come' (i.e. both will stay away: hence usually plural after nouns combined by *ni*).

NOTE. — The above principle is not so strictly observed, but that occasional deviations occur. As a general rule, the singular is preferred after *ou* and the plural after *ni*. Observe the somewhat different usage in English, when the verb is in the singular after 'or,' 'either — or,' 'neither — nor,' unless one of the subjects is a plural or a collective noun.

b. The verb agrees with one only of several subjects (the nearest, except when that is of subordinate value): 1. when they are placed in **gradation** (*ma parole, mon honneur le demande*, 'My word, my honor demands it'); 2. when they are **synonymous** (*Mon maître et protecteur viendra* 'My master and protector will come'); 3. when they are connected by a particle like *comme, ainsi que, aussi bien que*, etc. **subordinating** the following noun or nouns under the preceding (*Mon frère, aussi bien que ma sœur, viendra* 'My brother, as well as my sister, will come').

#### Farther Examples to 297:

a.

*Le vice ou la vertu triomphera.* Vice or virtue must triumph.  
*L'un ou l'autre écrira.* One or the other will write.

- Le bonheur ou la témérité ont pu faire des héros.* Luck or rashness may have made heroes.  
*Ni l'un ni l'autre ne l'épousera.* Neither will marry her.  
*Ni mon père ni ma mère ne viendront.* Neither my father nor my mother will come.

b.

- Une seule parole, un sourire, un regard suffit.* A single word, a smile, a look is sufficient.  
*Son courage, son intrépidité nous étonne.* His courage, his intrepidity astonishes us.  
*Le temps, le bien, la vie, tout est à la patrie.* Time, property, life, *everything* belongs to one's country.  
*Cette bataille, comme tant d'autres, ne décida rien.* This battle, like so many others, decided nothing.  
*La vertu, ainsi que (or de même que) le savoir, a son prix.* Virtue, as well as knowledge, has its value.

[298.] Should the subjects be of different persons (1st, 2d, 3d), they are either summed up by one personal pronoun, with which the verb then agrees; or the verb is construed as if they were. — Ex.

- Ma sœur et moi (nous) viendrons vous voir.* My sister and I will come to see you.  
*Vous et lui êtes contents.* You and he are satisfied.  
*Ni toi ni lui, vous n'êtes venus.* Neither he nor you came.  
*Vous ou lui viendrez.* You or he will come.

[299.] AGREEMENT WITH COLLECTIVES. — a. After a collective noun in the singular, determined by a plural noun, expressed or understood, the verb is treated in French, in the main, as in English, being in the singular if the **unity** of the collection is had in view, otherwise in the plural. — Ex.

The verb in the singular: —

<i>La foule d'enfants <b>était</b></i>	The crowd of children was
<i>grande.</i>	great.
<i>L'armée des infidèles <b>fut</b></i>	The army of infidels was de-
<i>détruite.</i>	stroyed.
<i>La moitié des troupes <b>périt</b></i>	One half of the troops perished
<i>de misère.</i>	of want.
<i>Une nuée de traits <b>obscurcit</b></i>	A cloud of arrows darkened the
<i>l'air.</i>	air.

The verb in the plural: —

<i>Une foule d'enfants <b>y</b></i>	A crowd of children were there.
<i><b>étaient.</b></i>	
<i>Un grand nombre de soldats</i>	A great number of soldiers per-
<i><b>périront</b> de misère, un petit</i>	ished of want, a small num-
<i>nombre (de soldats under-</i>	ber escaped.
<i>stood) <b>se sauvèrent.</b></i>	
<i>Cette espèce de chiens <b>ne</b></i>	This species of dogs live only
<i><b>vivent</b> que dix ans.</i>	ten years.

b. Adverbs of Quantity (*beaucoup, la plupart, etc.*) followed by a genitive plural must, as also in English, have a plural verb. — Ex.

<i>Beaucoup d'hommes <b>y sont.</b></i>	Many persons are there.
<i>La plupart des hommes <b>sont</b></i>	Most men are selfish.
<i>intéressés.</i>	
<i>La plupart <b>le croient.</b></i>	Most people believe it.
<i>Le sénat était partagé, la plu-</i>	The senate <i>were</i> (note sing. in
<i><b>part étaient</b> en faveur du</i>	Fr.) divided; a majority were
<i>projet.</i>	in favor of the bill.

**300.** After *ce* as impersonal subject of *être*, this verb agrees with the following predicate (expressed or understood), if it is of the 3d person. — Ex.

<i>Ce sont mes enfants.</i>	It is my children.
<i>Ce sont eux.</i>	It is they.
<i>Sont-ce là vos pommes?</i>	Are those your apples?
<i>Il faut que ce soient les miennes.</i>	They must be mine.

But:—

<i>C'est moi; c'est nous; c'est vous.</i>	It is I; it is we; it is you.
---	-------------------------------

NOTE.—When the predicate is followed by the relative *que*, *c'est* is preferred to *ce sont*.—Ex. *Est-ce les Anglais que vous aimez?*

301. After the relative *qui* the verb agrees with the immediate antecedent of *qui*.—Ex.

<i>C'est moi qui l'ai dit.</i>	It is I who has said it.
<i>C'est nous qui souffrons.</i>	It is we that suffer.
<i>Vous êtes le seul qui le sache.</i>	You are the only one that knows it.
<i>Je crois que je suis le premier qui ait parlé de cela.</i>	I believe I am the first that spoke of it.

302. After *nous*, *vous*, and *on*, the verb is construed according to the grammatical value of these words, but the predicate noun or adjective according to their implied sense.—Ex.

<i>Vous êtes bonne, ma mère.</i>	You are good, my mother.
<i>On se touchait la main, et l'on était amis pour la vie.</i>	They grasped each others hands and were friends for life.

---

EXERCISE XV.

---

USE OF MODES AND TENSES.

303. INDICATIVE.—The indicative mode is not in French of so universal use as in English, being often supplied by the subjunctive as described farther on (320 etc.). In the use of indicative tenses, French and English, though for the most

part agreeing, also not unfrequently differ. Special rules are given below.

**304. THE SIMPLE PRESENT.** — This tense is used :

a. As in English, to express purely present state or action ; and it represents the indefinite as well as the progressive and emphatic forms of the English present (e.g. *j'aime* 'I love, am loving, do love'). — Ex.

*La superstition cause mille accidents.* Superstition causes a thousand calamities.

*Il écrit une lettre.* He is writing (writes) a letter.

b. Unlike the present in English, to express present state or action continued from the past (cf. *Depuis combien de temps êtes-vous en Amérique?* 'How long have you been in America?' when the person asked is yet there ; but *Combien de temps avez-vous été en A. ?* when he is no longer there). — Ex.

*Il est ici depuis une semaine* He has been here for a week.  
(or *Il y a une semaine qu'il est ici*).

*Depuis quand l'aimiez-vous?* How long have you loved her?

*Combien de temps y a-t-il qu'elle est en France?* How long has she been in France?

*Depuis trente hivers il languit.* He has languished these thirty years.

c. To express future state or action after *si* 'if' (not after *si* 'whether': cf. 311), as also in English. — Ex.

*S'il vient, je lui parlerai.* If he comes, I shall speak to him.

d. As also often in English, rhetorically, to express past state or action as present. — Ex.

*La nuit approche, l'instant arrive,* Night draws nigh, the moment comes,  
*César se présente.* Cæsar presents himself (narration of past events).

e. Exceptionally (as also in English) for a future in main clauses to express certainty or immediateness. — Ex.

*Je pars dans une heure.*

I depart in an hour.

*Je suis de retour dans un moment.*

I shall be back in a moment.

**305. THE COMPOUND PRESENT (= Perfect).** — This tense is regularly used: — a. Where the action of the verb is completed within a division of time **not yet past** (as this hour, this day, this year, this century, etc.); — b. Where the state or action of the verb, though completed in a past period, is spoken of in a **general way**, without reference to attending circumstances, or with an implied reference to its consequence in the present.

In familiar discourse the compound present is used quite freely without any reference to a present past, especially with the 1st and 2d persons.

a.

*Mon frère a écrit aujourd'hui.*

My brother has written to-day.

*Il est arrivé ce matin.*

He came this morning.

*Je lui ai parlé (cette semaine),  
et il a promis de venir.*

I have spoken to him (this week), and he promised to come.

b.

*Dieu a créé le monde.*

God created the world.

*Colomb a découvert l'Amérique.*

Columbus discovered America.

*La Grèce a été la mère des  
beaux arts.*

Greece was the mother of the  
fine arts.

*Je l'ai vu il y a un an.*

I saw him a year ago.

*J'ai reçu hier la lettre que  
vous m'avez écrite la semaine  
dernière.*

I received yesterday the letter  
which you wrote me last  
week.

NOTE. — Exceptionally the compound present is used for the compound future (cf. 304. e). — Ex. *Attendez, j'ai fini dans un moment* 'Wait, I (shall) have finished in a moment.'

**306. THE SIMPLE and COMPOUND IMPERFECT and PRETERIT.**—These are both past tenses. The imperfect describes a past state or action as **unfinished** (i.e. as existing, continuous, habitual, or going on when something else occurs) **at the time thought of**. The preterit relates a past occurrence as complete in itself, and without reference to the condition arising from it.

**Imperfect:—**

<i>Il était négociant pendant dix ans.</i>	He was a merchant during ten years.
<i>Des flambeaux éclairaient la salle, mais ils étaient presque tous placés à l'extrémité, où s'élevait l'estrade des juges.</i>	Torches lighted the hall, but they were nearly all placed at the other end, where the judges' bench was erected.
<i>Lorsque j'étais à Paris, je soupais souvent chez M. B.</i>	When I was in Paris, I often took my supper at Mr. B's.
<i>Je pensais à elle lorsqu'elle arriva.</i>	I was thinking of her when she arrived.
<i>J'avais déjeuné quand vous entrâtes.</i>	I had breakfasted when you entered.
<i>Il était parti quand je suis arrivé.</i>	He left when I arrived.

**Preterit:—**

<i>Le roi quitta son vaisseau et monta une frégate plus légère.</i>	The king left his vessel and went on board of a smaller craft (frigate).
<i>Louvet descendit de la tribune, et Robespierre y monta.</i>	Louvet descended from the tribune, and Robespierre mounted it.
<i>Dès qu'il fut entré, on ferma la porte.</i>	As soon as he had entered, the door was closed.
<i>À peine me fus-je levé qu'il entra.</i>	Scarcely had I risen when he entered.



Both imperfect and preterit: —

<i>Nous étions (assis) à table lorsqu'il arriva.</i>	We were (seated) at table when he arrived.
<i>Mon ami était bien jeune quand il perdit sa mère.</i>	My friend was very young when he lost his mother.
<i>Le vaisseau qu'il monta était de cent vingt pièces de canon.</i>	The vessel which he boarded had 120 cannon.
<i>Les accusés avaient des défenseurs, ils n'en eurent plus. On les jugeait individuellement, on les jugea en masse.</i>	The accused had been having counsels; they no longer received any. They had been sentenced one by one, they (now) were sentenced <i>en masse</i> .

[307.] The distinction between the imperfect and the preterit is not so absolute but that a certain degree of option is allowed. Especially in compound tenses, the tendency is in favor of the imperfect form. Thus, *J'avais déjeuné lorsqu'il entra* 'I had had my breakfast (or I had just breakfasted) when he entered.'

[308.] After *si* 'if' (not after *si* 'whether'), introducing an unreal or improbable condition, the imperfect is regularly used in French where the conditional or past would be used in English. — Ex.

<i>Si vous me trompiez, je deviendrais bien malheureux.</i>	If you should deceive (or deceived) me, I should be very unhappy.
<i>Si je venais, viendriez-vous ?</i>	If I should come (or came), would you come ?
<i>Il m'a demandé si j'y consentirais.</i>	He asked me whether I would consent.

NOTE 1. — Even in main clauses, the imperfect may be used for the conditional when in energetic writing attention is called to the certainty of the result. — Ex.

<i>S'il ne l'avait pas jait, l'autre était mort.</i>	If he had not done it, the other would be dead.
--	---

NOTE 2.—About the use of the compound imperfect subjunctive, instead of the conditional, cf. 338.

[309.] As the present may express a state or action continued from the past (304. b) so the imperfect may also (contrary to English usage) denote a state or action continued from a previous time. — Ex.

*Il y était depuis longtemps.* He had been there for a long time.

**310. THE SIMPLE AND COMPOUND FUTURE.**—These tenses correspond to the same tenses in English, observing only that French is more strict than English in using the future where logically required, especially in temporal clauses. — Ex.

<i>Je partirai demain.</i>	I shall depart to-morrow.
<i>J'aurai fini avant vous.</i>	I shall have finished before you.
<i>Je le verrai aussitôt qu'il viendra.</i>	I shall see him as soon as he comes.
<i>Je partirai quand j'aurai fini mes affaires.</i>	I shall leave when I have finished my business.
<i>Vous direz ce qu'il vous plaira.</i>	You will say what you please.

[311.] After *si* the future is used only in the sense of 'whether' (cf. 304. d). — Ex. *Je ne sais s'il viendra* 'I know not whether he will come.' *Si vous venez, je vous le dirai* 'If you (will) come, I will tell you it.' *Je partirai s'il vient* 'I shall be off if he comes.'

[312.] About the use of the present for the future to denote immediate action, etc., cf. 304. e.

[313.] The compound future sometimes expresses that an act has probably taken place. — Ex.

<i>Il lui aura tout dit.<sup>1</sup></i>	He has probably told him all.
<i>Il sera parti hier.</i>	He must have started yesterday.
<i>Il se sera égaré, sans cela il serait ici.</i>	He has probably lost his way, otherwise he would be here.

---

<sup>1</sup> Cf. German : *Er wird ihm alles gesagt haben.*

**314. THE SIMPLE AND COMPOUND CONDITIONAL.**—

These tenses correspond to the same tenses in English, except (a.) that they cannot be used after *si* 'if,' which requires the imperfect (cf. 308); and (b.) that they are more strictly used in subordinate clauses where logically required. — Ex.

<i>Je viendrais si je pouvais.</i>	I should come if I could.
<i>Je l'aurais fait si j'avais pu.</i>	I should have done it, had I been able.
<i>Si vous me trompiez, je deviendrais bien malheureux.</i>	If you should (or were to) deceive me, I should be very unhappy.
<i>Si je retournais à Londres, je le verrais.</i>	If I should return to London, I should see him.
<i>Je vous suivrais partout où vous iriez.</i>	I should follow you wherever you went.

[315.] After *quand, quand même* 'though, even though,' the French conditional may in English be rendered by 'were to (love, etc.).' — Ex.

<i>Quand vous me haïriez, je ne m'en plaindrais pas.</i>	Even if you were to hate me, I should not complain.
--	---

[316.] For the conditional of *devoir* etc., cf. 317. b.

**317. *Devoir, pouvoir, ne savoir.***—The rendering of these verbs in English needs some special explanations. Thus:

a. As 'can' and 'ought' have no participle in English, the compound tenses of *pouvoir* and *devoir* are there rendered by another turn of the expression: *j'ai pu* 'I could' (or 'I may have,' or 'I have been able'); *j'ai dû* 'I ought to have': etc. — Ex.

<i>Je n'ai pu le faire.</i>	I could not do it (I was unable to do it).
<i>Il aurait dû le faire.</i>	He ought to have done it.
<i>Ces hommes ont (or auront) pu périr.</i>	These men may have perished.
<i>Il aurait dû m'écrire (cf. b).</i>	He ought to have written me.

b. *Devoir, pouvoir, and ne savoir* are used, before an infinitive, in the **simple conditional** to denote respectively 'ought,'

'could' ('*might*'), and 'can not'; and *devoir, pouvoir* likewise in the **compound conditional** for 'should (ought to) have,' 'could (might) have.' — Ex.

*Je devrais le faire* (*Je dois* I ought to do it.  
with ref. to immediate duty).

*Je pourrais l'essayer.* I could (might) try it.

*Pourriez-vous me dire ?* Could you tell me ?

*Je ne saurais* (*ne puis* more I cannot do it.  
definite) *le faire.*

*J'aurais dû le faire.* I ought to have done it.

*Vous auriez dû venir.* You should (ought to) have come.

*Il n'aurait pu le faire.* He could not have done it.

NOTE. — In part this usage of the conditional seems idiomatic only because English has fused two originally independent forms into one. Cf. *Si j'étais invité, je ne pourrais y aller; J'étais invité, mais je ne pus y aller* 'If I were invited I could not go there: I was invited, but I could not go there.'

c. *Devoir* may be used in any tense (cf. b) to state things as due [*doit* 'ought, should, is (destined or intended) to']. — Ex.

*Les enfants doivent obéir à leurs parents.* Children should obey their parents.

*Cela devait arriver.* That was (destined) to happen.

*Il devait mourir* (cf. 308. 1). He ought to have died.

*Elle a dû être belle dans sa jeunesse.* She must have been beautiful in her youth.

*Selon le testament il devait avoir la maison.* According to the will, he should (was to) have the house.

**318. *Aller*** in auxiliary use. — To denote immediate futurity, *je vais* etc. are used as in English 'I am going (I am about)' etc. — Ex.

*Il va partir.* He is going (is about) to leave.

*J'allais lui écrire.* I was about to write to him.

---

EXERCISE XVI.

---

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

[319. HISTORY.—The use of the subjunctive in French has grown out of the use of the same mode in Latin. Yet the connection between the two has been much disturbed by various restrictions as well as extensions in French. In both languages, the subjunctive is used chiefly :

A. When the idea involved in the verb-expression is not referred to as fulfilled or certain of being fulfilled [e.g. Lat. *Opto ut veniat* = Fr. *Je désire qu'il vienne* ; Lat. *Necesse est ut veniat* = Fr. *Il faut (Il est nécessaire) qu'il vienne* ; Lat. *Legatos qui consulerent Apollinem misere* = Fr. *Ils envoyèrent des députés qui consultassent Apollon*];

B. When the idea involved in the verb-expression is not the thing affirmed, as especially (in French almost exclusively) when it is accepted with some surprise or reserve [e.g. Lat. *Miratur quod veniat* = Fr. *Elle est surprise qu'il vienne* ; Lat. *Unus est qui possit* = Fr. *Il est le seul qui le puisse* ; *Quamvis boni sint* = Fr. *Quoiqu'ils soient bons*].

Still, by a process of differentiation which has been going on throughout the whole history of the French language, some discrepancies of a comprehensive nature—such as the loss of the subjunctive of indirect discourse, the development of a conditional mood, in part assuming the office of the Latin subjunctive, the greatly increased use of the subjunctive of surprise (after any expression of emotion), etc.—and many of a more restricted nature, now exist between that language and the Latin. The quite uneven tendency of the French has been, on the whole, towards a restriction of the use of the subjunctive both in independent and subordinate clauses, but especially in the former. Even yet that tendency is at work, and the choice of mode depends, in a measure, on the style used, whether rhetorical or colloquial.

In the 17th and 18th centuries the use of the subjunctive was not always the same as now. Thus we often in classical authors find the subjunctive, where we should expect the indicative instead: e.g. *Je crois qu'il soit fou* (Malherbe); *Je crois que ce soit l'autre* (Corneille); *On dirait que les temples fussent autant d'hôtels* (Racine); *Je pensais qu'il fallût pleurer* (Molière). And, vice versa, we also sometimes find the indicative where we should expect the subjunctive: e.g. *J'apprends qu'il sera plus difficile* (Balzac); *Il semble qu'il est en vie* (Molière); *Quoiqu'il n'y aurait rien de surprenant* (Bossuet).]

### 320. THE SUBJUNCTIVE is used, as described below,

I. In SUBORDINATE CLAUSES to qualify the notion of their verb-phrase, with reference to some preceding expression, as

a. **not realized** (but simply willed, feared, doubted, etc.); b. as realized with some **emotion** (surprise, joy, sorrow, etc.); c. as stated with some **mental reserve** (either as being of a sweeping and exclusive nature, or as simply admitted without special affirmation.

II. In **PRINCIPAL CLAUSES** chiefly to qualify the notion of the verb-phrase as **willed**.

### I. SUBJUNCTIVE IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

**321.** The subjunctive is used in subordinate clauses introduced by the conjunction **que**, or a **conjunction-phrase** ending with **que**, or a **relative** pronoun or particle, for mainly three purposes, viz. :—

A. To denote that the idea expressed by the subordinate verb-phrase is **not** put forth as **realized** or **certain of being so**, but simply with reference :—a. to its willed or intended completion or non-completion [e.g. *Je désire (ordonne, défends, etc.), qu'il vienne* 'I desire (order, forbid, etc.) that he come'];—or b. to its contingent completion [e.g. *En cas qu'il vienne* 'In case he should come'];—or c. its doubtfulness, or uncertainty [e.g. *Je doute (ne crois pas, ne dis pas, etc.) qu'il vienne* 'I doubt (do not believe, do not say, etc.) that he comes'].

B. To denote that it is realized with some **emotion**, as of surprise, joy, sorrow, etc., expressed in the leading clause : *Je m'étonne qu'il l'ait dit* 'I am surprised that he has said it'; *Je suis fâché qu'il le sache* 'I am sorry that he knows it.'

C. To denote that it is stated with some **mental reserve**, whether :—a. as involving a sweeping assertion that may be erroneous [e.g. *Il est le seul qui puisse le faire* 'He is the only one that can do it'],—or c. a concession made in favor of a more emphatic statement and as such admitted without positive assertion [e.g. *Bien qu'il soit pauvre, il est honnête homme* 'Though he be poor, yet he is an honest man'].

[322.] These general principles are more fully specified in the following scheme, presenting in a synoptical form all the chief rules for the use of the subjunctive in subordinate clauses.

## [323.] SUBJUNCTIVE IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES :

## A. SUBJUNCTIVE OF UNREALIZED OR UNCERTAIN COMPLETION

a. With the conjunction *que* (or a relative word) **after verbs or phrases** implying that the act expressed by the dependent verb is viewed with reference to its **willed or intended completion**, or the **reverse**:—i.e. after verbs and phrases denoting command, exhortation, desire, expectation (*espérer* and verbs of believing, unless referable to b., excepted), permission, fitness, necessity, etc., or their opposites (forbid, fear, apprehend, etc.).—Cf. 325.

NOTE.—After a relative (*qui, lequel, dont, où*) only if the idea of purpose is implied.

b. **After conjunctive phrases** such as *afin que* 'in order that,' *en cas que* 'in case,' *pourvu que* 'provided,' etc., denoting a **contingent completion** of the act expressed by the dependent verb;—and after *que*, if used for such phrases or for *si* (403. b). Cf. 326.

c. With the conjunction *que* (or a relative) **after verbs or phrases** describing the act expressed by the dependent verb as **not certain, or probable, or possible**, as after *il n'est pas certain* (*probable, possible*), *douter*, and so on, and after negative, interrogative, or conditional statements.—Cf. 327.

NOTE.—*Espérer* 'hope' and verbs of believing or thinking must be used negatively, interrogatively or with *si*, to be followed by the subjunctive, while verbs of doubt and fear always require that mode.

B. SUBJ. OF MENTAL RESERVE  
C. SUBJ. OF EMOTION

With *que* after verbs or phrases expressing an inner **emotion**, such as surprise, disappointment, joy, sorrow, shame, rage (all rarely allowing the indic., when no surprise is involved).—Instead of *que* with the subjunctive, *de ce que* with the indicative may be used to emphasize the reality of the verbal action.—Cf. 328.

a. In relative clauses to soften a **sweeping assertion** (introduced in the main clause by some exclusive word or phrase, as especially a superlative, *seul, nul*, etc.), when there may be room for a possible mistake.—Cf. 329.

b. After **concessive or hypothetical conjunction-phrases**, such as *bien que* 'although,' *si . . . que* 'however' (not after *si* alone), *quoique* (the only one written in one word) 'although,' etc.; and after indefinite pronoun-phrases, such as *qui que, quel que, quelque que* (but rarely *tout que*), etc.—Cf. 330.

Examples (determining words are spaced, and the subjunctives in **bold type**):—

A. Subj. of unrealized or uncertain completion (323. A):

	a
<i>J'ordonne que vous le <b>fassiez</b>.</i> <sup>1</sup>	I order you to do it.
<i>Dis-leur qu'ils <b>soient</b> prêts.</i>	Tell (= Order) them to be ready.
<i>Je défends qu'ils <b>viennent</b> jamais.</i>	I forbid them ever to come.
<i>Le maître exige que vous <b>soyez</b> attentif.</i>	The teacher requires you to be attentive.
<i>Je désire (souhaite) que vous <b>soyez</b> toujours heureux.</i>	I desire (wish) that you may always be happy.
<i>Permettez (souffrez) que je vous <b>dise</b> la vérité.</i>	Allow me to tell you the truth.
<i>J'empêcherai qu'il ne le <b>fasse</b>.</i>	I shall prevent him from doing it.
<i>Je prendrai garde qu'il ne le <b>fasse</b>.</i>	I shall take care that he does not do it.
<i>J'attends que vous me <b>teniez</b> parole.</i>	I expect you to keep your word.
<i>J'approuve que vous <b>preniez</b> vos précautions.</i>	I approve of your taking your precautions.
<i>Il faut qu'il <b>vienne</b> tout de suite.</i>	He must come immediately.
<i>Il importe qu'il le <b>sache</b>.</i>	It is important that he should know it.
<i>Il est juste (de toute justice) que vous lui <b>écriviez</b>.</i>	It is only fair that you should write him.
<i>Il était temps que tu <b>vinsses</b>.</i>	It was time that you should come.

<sup>1</sup> French often (cf. 331) allows a subjunctive or an infinitive construction, where in English only the latter can be used. Here *Je vous ordonne de le faire* would also be correct.



- Je cherche un maître qui sache m'enseigner le français.* I. am trying to find a teacher who can teach me French.
- Lisez des livres qui puissent former votre goût (cf. a. note).* Read books that will form your taste.
- Ils envoyèrent des députés qui consultassent Apollon.* They sent deputies who were to consult Apollo.
- Choisissez une place où vous soyez à votre aise.* Choose a place where you will be comfortable.
- Je crains que ma mère ne (383) soit malade.* I fear my mother is (may be) ill.
- Je ne crains pas que ma mère soit malade.* I am not afraid that my mother is sick.
- J'ai peur qu'il n'arrive pas à temps.* I am afraid he may not arrive in time.
- Approchez afin que (or simply que) je vous dise cela.* <sup>b</sup> Approach that I may tell it to you.
- Je le ferai, pourvu qu'il le fasse.* I shall do it, provided he does it.
- Conduisez-vous de manière que vous soyez estimé.* Behave in such a manner as to be esteemed.
- [But *Il s'est conduit de manière qu'il est estimé.*] [He has behaved in such a manner as to be esteemed.]
- A moins que vous ne soyez diligent et que (for à moins que) vous ne preniez de la peine, vous ne réussirez pas.* Unless you be diligent, and (unless you) take trouble, you will not succeed.
- Je ne le ferai pas que je ne l'aie vu (for sans que je l'aie vu).* I will not do it until I have seen him.
- Si je ne suis pas de retour à midi, et que (for si) quelqu'un vienne me demander, retenez-le.* If I am not back at noon, and any one calls for me, retain him.

c

<i>Je doute que cela soit vrai.</i>	I doubt if that be true.
<i>Je ne doute pas que cela ne (383) soit vrai.</i>	I have no doubt that is true.
<i>Il est douteux (possible, impossible) qu'il l'ait fait.</i>	It is doubtful (possible, or impossible) whether he has done it.
<i>Je ne crois pas qu'il le fasse.</i>	I do not believe that he will do it.
<i>Croyez-vous qu'il le fasse?</i>	Do you believe he will do it?
<i>Si vous croyez qu'il le fasse, je n'irai point.</i>	If you believe he will do it, I shall not go.
<i>Espérez-vous qu'elle revienne? J'espère qu'elle reviendra.</i>	Do you hope she will return? I hope she will return.
<i>Je ne savais pas (J'ignorais) qu'il fût permis.</i>	I did not know that it was permitted.
<i>Je ne dis pas (Je dénie) qu'il ait tort.</i>	I do not say (I deny) that he is wrong.
<i>Il n'est pas sûr (certain) qu'il soit coupable.</i>	It is not certain that he is guilty.
<i>Est-il prouvé (sûr, certain) qu'il l'ait fait?</i>	Is it proved (certain) that he has done it?
<i>Y a-t-il un homme qui puisse dire qu'il est toujours heureux?</i>	Is there a man who can say that he is always happy?

B. Subj. of emotion (323. B):

b

<i>Je m'étonne qu'il ait pu le faire.</i>	I am astonished that he has been able to do it.
<i>Je suis fâché qu'il soit malade.</i>	I am sorry that he is sick.
<i>Il se plaint que vous lui donniez si rarement de vos nouvelles.</i>	He complains that you so seldom send him any news (write to him).

- C'est dommage qu'il l'ait fait.* It is a pity that he has done it.  
*Je suis bien aise qu'il soit de retour.* I am very glad that he has returned.  
*Il enrageait qu'un ennemi presque barbare lui opposât une résistance invincible.* It angered him that an almost barbarous enemy should offer an invincible resistance.

C. Subj. of mental reserve (323. C) :

a

- C'est l'unique espoir qui me soit resté.* This is the only hope that remains to me.  
*Vous êtes le seul ami à qui je puisse me fier.* You are the only friend on whom I can rely.  
*C'est le mieux que vous puissiez faire.* It is the best you can do.  
*L'Evangile est le plus beau présent que Dieu ait fait aux hommes.* The Gospel is the best gift which God has given to men.  
*Il y a peu d'hommes qui sachent supporter l'adversité.* There are few men that can bear adversity.

c

- Bien qu'il soit (Quoiqu'il soit) pauvre, il est honnête homme.* Although he be poor he is honest.  
*Si mince qu'il soit un cheveu fait de l'ombre.* However small it be, a hair causes a shadow.  
*Quoiqu'il (En dépit qu'il, Qu'il, etc.) soit brave guerrier, je lui rabattrai cet orgueil.* Though he be a brave warrior, I shall humble that pride of his.  
*Qui que vous soyez, entrez.* Whoever you be, come in.  
*Quelques richesses que vous possédiez, ne méprisez pas les pauvres.* Whatever riches you possess, do not despise the poor.

About the use of negations with subjunctive after verbs of fear, doubt, denial, etc., cf. 384.

**324. ALPHABETICAL REFERENCE-LISTS OF WORDS FOLLOWED BY THE SUBJUNCTIVE.**—For convenience of reference, all the more common words and phrases causing the use of the subjunctive (unless, indeed, the infinitive be preferred: 331) are enumerated alphabetically below under headings corresponding to those in the tabular statement above (323).

**A. SUBJUNCTIVE OF UNREALIZED OR UNCERTAIN COMPLETION (323. A):**

a

[325.] Verbs and verb-phrases of contingent result followed by *que* and the subjunctive: — *abhorrer, admettre, agréer, aimer, aimer mieux, appréhender, approuver, arrêter* (cf. note), *attendre* (when expectation, not positive conviction, is implied: cf. also c), *avoir besoin* (*crainte, envie, peur, soin*); *blâmer, brûler* ('desire ardently'); *commander, conjurer, consentir, convenir* (*il convient*); *craindre, décider, décréter, défendre, demander, désapprouver, désespérer, désirer, dire* (= 'order'); *empêcher, entendre* ('intend, expect'); — *être* (*à désirer, à propos, assez, bon, bien, convenable, d'avis, difficile, digne, d'opinion, essentiel, facile, faux, important, indispensable, injuste, juste, naturel, nécessaire, peu, rare, temps, urgent*, etc.); — *éviter, exiger; falloir* (*il faut*: cf. also c); *garder; importer* (*il importe*); *louer; mériter; ordonner* (cf. note); *s'opposer* (*à ce que*), *permettre, plaire, préférer, prendre garde* (*prendre soin*), *prétendre* (= 'require'); *prier, redouter; répondre* (introducing a command), *souffrir* (= 'allow'), *souhaiter, suffire* (*il suffit*), *supplier, supposer; tâcher, tarder* (*il me tarde*), *tenir à ce que, trembler* (= 'fear'), *trouver bon* (*mal, mauvais, injuste, juste, naturel*, etc. cf. *être*); *valoir bien or mieux* (impers.), *veiller, vouloir*.

NOTE.—Verbs denoting an authoritative (official) decision or decree are frequently followed by the future indicative, or the conditional, the result being looked upon as certain.—Ex. *Œdipe ordonna que chacun régnerait son année* (Racine). *Il fut décidé qu'on ne recevrait plus de commissaires* (Guizot).

b

[326.] Conjunctive phrases of contingent result or condition followed by the subjunctive: — *à condition que* (when the proviso is not yet accepted), *afin que, à moins que, au cas que, avant que, dans la crainte que, de crainte que, de façon que or de manière que* (if denoting purpose, not result), *de peur que, de sorte que* (if denoting purpose, not result), *en attendant que, en cas que, en sorte que* (if denoting purpose, not result), *jusqu'à ce que* (not referring to an accomplished fact); — (here or with 330) *posé que, pourvu que, sans que, si ce n'est que, soit que, supposé que*.

The relative words *qui, dont, and ou* are followed by the subjunctive whenever the state or action denoted by the verb of the relative clause is simply intended or conceived as possible, not real or sure to become so.

Cf. *Ils envoyèrent des députés qui consultassent* ('who should consult,' but *qui consultèrent* 'who consulted') *Apollon. Montrez-moi un chemin qui conduise* (but *le chemin qui conduit*) à *N. Prêtez-moi un livre dont vous n'avez pas besoin* (but *ce livre dont vous n'avez pas besoin*). *Choisissez une place où vous soyez bien* (but *Ne quittez pas une place où vous êtes si bien*).

## c

[327.] Verbs and verb-phrases of denial and doubt or uncertainty followed by *que* and the subjunctive (those marked with asterisk requiring to be used negatively, interrogatively, or with a conditional *si*, in order to be followed by the subjunctive): — \**admettre*, \**affirmer*, \**s'apercevoir*, \**apprendre*, \**arriver* (*il arrive*), \**assurer*, \**s'attendre* (cf. also 325), \**avouer*, \**comprendre* (always when = 'find reasonable'), \**concevoir* (always when = 'find reasonable'), \**connaître*, *contester*, \**conclure*, *convenir*, \**croire*, \**déclarer*, *démentir*, *désespérer*, \**deviner*, \**dire* ('say, tell': cf. also 325), *disconvenir*, *dissimuler* (but *ne pas dissimuler* with indic. or subj.), *douter*, *se douter*, \**s'ensuivre*, \**entendre* (cf. also 325), \**entendre dire*, \**espérer*, *être* (*in il est dangereux, douteux, impossible, possible, rare, etc.*), \**être certain* (*clair, démontré, évident, probable, sûr, vrai, vraisemblable, etc.*); \**se flatter*, *falloir* (*beaucoup s'en faut, peut s'en faut, tant s'en faut*: cf. also a.), \**gager*, *ignorer* (but *ne pas ignorer* with indic.), (s')*imaginer*, \**juger*, \**jurer*, *nier*, \**oublier*, \**parier*, \**penser*, *pouvoir* (*il se peut, il peut se fuire*), \**prédire*, \**prétendre* (cf. 326), \**présumer*, *prévoir*, \**promettre*, \**se rappeler*, \**remarquer*, \**répondre* (cf. 325), \**reconnaître*, \**résulter* (*il résulte*), \**savoir*, *sembler* (*il semble, but \*il me semble*), \**sentir*, \**soupçonner*, \**soutenir*, *se souvenir*, \**supposer*, *tenir* (*il tient à*), \**trouver*, \**voir*.

Conjunctive phrases followed by the subjunctive: — *ce n'est pas que, loin que, non pas que, non que*.

## B. SUBJUNCTIVE OF EMOTION (323. B):

[328.] Verbs and verb-phrases of emotion followed by *que* and the subjunctive: — *admirer*, *s'affliger*, *approuver*, *avoir honte* (*regret*), *blâmer*, *déplorer*, *s'enrager*, *s'étonner*; — *être affligé* (*dommage, chagriné, charmé, choqué, curieux, enchanté, étonné, étonnant, étrange, fâché, fâcheux, flatté, heureux, honteux, indigné, jaloux, malheureux, mécontent, mortifié, pitié, regrettable, surprenant, surpris, au désespoir, dans l'étonnement, une honte, un malheur, etc.*); — *se fâcher*, *gémir*, *s'indigner*, *se plaindre*, *plaire* (*il plaît*), *regretter*, *se réjouir*, *répugner* (*il répugne*), *trouver bon* (*étrange*), *voir à regret*.

## C. SUBJUNCTIVE OF MENTAL RESERVE (323. B):

## a

[329.] Words of an excessive or sweeping sense followed by a relative pronoun or particle and the subjunctive: — *le dernier, le premier, le seul,*

*l'unique*, and **superlatives** generally; *ne . . . aucun* (*pas un, pas de, personne, nul, point, point de, que, rien* — followed or not by a noun), *peu de* (with a noun); and in questions of appeal, cf. 378.

[330.] Conjunctions and pronominal phrases denoting concession, etc., followed by the subjunctive: — *bien que, combien que, encore que, en dépit que, malgré que, nonobstant que, où que, pour que, que* (= *quoique*), *quel que, quel . . . que, quelque que, quelque . . . que, quelque . . . qui, qui que, qui . . . que, qui que ce soit* + a relat., *qui que, quoi que, quoique, quoi qui, sans que, si . . . que, tant . . . que, tout . . . que* (for the most part, however, denoting a fact and followed by the indicative).

☞ It should be noted that the above classification of words requiring the subjunctive is not so absolute, but that some of them may not in different uses be referred to different classes.

**331. INFINITIVE FOR SUBJUNCTIVE.** — It is of importance to observe that when the **subject** of the dependent clause is actually or impliedly **identical** with the **subject** or **object** (direct or with *à*) of the leading clause, the infinitive is usually preferred (in some cases required) to the subjunctive, provided the sense is not thereby obscured. The student can often, but not always, be guided, in this respect, by testing whether an infinitive would be allowed in English. — Special cases are:

a. Generally an infinitive would be preferred after verbs or phrases of willing, necessity, and feeling. — Ex.

*Je désire avoir un cheval.* I wish (to have) I had a horse.

*Je crains de ne pas le trouver chez lui.* I fear I shall not find him at home.

*Il faut le faire ce soir.* It must be done this evening (if it is clear who is to do it; otherwise subj.).

*Dites-leur de s'en aller.* Tell them to be gone.

*Je suis bien fâché d'être déçu.* I am very sorry to be deceived.

NOTE. — We say *Il faut qu'il vienne* or *Il lui faut venir* 'He must come'; but only *Il faut que mon frère vienne* 'My brother must come.' That is, two constructions are allowed when the subject is a pronoun, but only one when it is a noun.

b. Instead of *afin que*, *pour que*, *de manière que*, *en sorte que*, *avant que* with a subjunctive, *afin de*, *pour*, *de manière à*, *en sorte de*, *avant de* with an infinitive is frequently used. — Ex.

*Je consens à me perdre afin de la sauver.* I consent to destroy myself in order to save her.

*Il le fait pour se sauver.* He does it to save himself.

*Fermez la porte avant de sortir.* Close the door before you go out (always inf., no uncertainty being implied).

*Tuez le cheval avant de le perdre* (or subj.). Kill the horse before you lose him.

#### SPECIAL CASES OF SUBJUNCTIVE USAGE.

**332.** *Si* 'if' is regularly followed by indicative. Yet the **imperfect subjunctive** (simple or compound) is sometimes used, especially in rhetorical style, instead of the simple or (usually) compound imperfect after *si*, or without *si*, with inversion of verb and pronoun-subject. — Ex. *Si j'eusse* (or *j'avais*) *eu de l'argent, je vous aurais payé.* *Eût-il voulu prendre ce parti, Pierre n'y eût* (338) *pas consenti.* *Fût-il à cent lieues d'ici, j'irais le chercher.* *Fût-il la valeur même.*

Note also *Dussè-je mourir, je le ferai* 'Though I should die, I shall do it.'

**333.** *Que* followed by *ne*, and used in the sense of 'without,' 'unless,' 'until,' requires the subjunctive. — Ex. *Il ne joue jamais qu'il ne perde* (= *sans qu'il perde*).

**334.** When no uncertainty or mental reservation of any kind is present in the mind of the speaker, words that usually govern the subjunctive require the indicative (observing 323. B); and, vice versa, words that are commonly followed by the indicative may, in special uses, be followed by the subjunctive. Compare :

## INDICATIVE :

*Il se plaint de ce que vous l'avez trompé.* He complains about your deceiving him.

*Pensez-vous que sa protection m'est nécessaire !* Do you think I need his protection ! (= I certainly do not).

*Si vous croyez qu'il est coupable, pourquoi ne le punissez-vous pas ?* If you believe him guilty (as you do), why do you not punish him ?

*J'entends que vous voulez (327) rester.* I hear that you wish to remain.

*Il suffit que tu l'as voulu une fois.* It is sufficient that you have wished it once.

*Je ne crois pas que Dieu est cruel.* I do not believe that God is cruel (which he cannot be).

*Il s'est comporté de telle manière qu'il a mérité l'estime des gens de bien.* He has behaved in such a manner that he has deserved the esteem of honest people.

*J'y restai jusqu'à ce que mon père arriva.* I remained there until my father arrived.

## SUBJUNCTIVE :

*Il se plaint que vous l'ayez trompé.* He complains that you have deceived him.

*Pensez-vous que sa protection, me soit nécessaire ?* Do you think I need his protection ?

*Si vous croyez qu'il soit coupable, pourquoi ne l'examinez-vous pas ?* If you think he may be guilty, why do you not examine him ?

*J'entends que vous restiez (325) avec moi.* I expect you to remain with me.

*Il suffit que vous le disiez (325) pour que je le croie.* For me to believe it, it is enough that you say it.

*Je ne crois pas que cet homme soit (325) cruel.* I do not believe that this man is cruel (though he may be).

*Comportez-vous de telle sorte que vous méritiez (326) l'estime des gens de bien.* Behave in such a manner as to deserve the esteem of honest people.

*J'y resterai jusqu'à ce que je sois (326) guéri.* I shall remain there until I get well.



[335.] Exceptionally, both the indicative and the subjunctive are found after the same verb, according as the sense requires one or the other.—  
*Ex. Dis-lui que je suis empêché, et qu'il vienne. Les soldats criaient qu'on les menât au combat; qu'ils voulaient venger la mort de leur général; qu'on les laissât faire; qu'ils étaient furieux.*

#### USE OF TENSE IN THE SUBORDINATE SUBJUNCTIVE.

**336.** The tense of the subjunctive in a subordinate clause usually (cf. 337) depends on that of the principal clause. It is **present** (simple or compound), if the leading verb is in the *present* or *future* (simple or compound); in other cases it is **imperfect** (simple or compound).

As for the choice of simple or compound tenses, the former are used to express present or future time, and the latter past time relatively to the time of the principal verb.

#### Examples:—

<i>Je permets qu'il sorte.</i>	I permit him to go out.
<i>J'ai permis qu'il sorte.</i>	I have allowed him to go out.
<i>Je permettrai qu'il sorte.</i>	I shall permit him to go out.
<i>Je doute qu'il ait fait son devoir.</i>	I doubt whether he has done his duty.
<i>Je n'ai point dit qu'il parle (ait parlé) mieux que vous.</i>	I have not said that he speaks (has spoken) better than you.
<i>Je permis qu'il sortit.</i>	I permitted him to go out.
<i>J'avais permis qu'il sortît.</i>	I had permitted him to go out.
<i>Je permettrais qu'il sortît.</i>	I should permit him to go out.
<i>Je doutai(s) que vous l'eussiez fait (le fissiez).</i>	I doubted whether you had done it (would do it).
<i>Nous aurions souhaité que l'affaire eût été terminée à l'amiable.</i>	We should have wished that the matter had been settled in a friendly way.
<i>Je le lui ai dit afin qu'il le sache.</i>	I have told him about it, that he might know it.

[337.] The chief exceptions to this rule are those determined by the relation of thought, all formal rules for the sequence of tenses being subject to that principle. Thus:

a. In some cases (as especially in those coming under 330), the difference in the time referred to by the main and the subordinate verb may require the latter to be construed independently. — Ex.

*Bien qu'il soit fort il fut vaincu.* Although he is strong, he was vanquished.

*Supposons que notre histoire fût à composer.* Let us suppose that our history were yet to be composed.

*Je n'en connais pas un qui voulût me servir.* I do not know one who would be willing to serve me.

b. The present subjunctive is used independently of the governing verb to denote a general truth, and always after *on dirait*, *on croirait* (both = *il semble*), and *je ne saurais* (= *je ne puis*). — Ex.

*La raison nous fut donnée pour que nous puissions nous conduire avec sagesse.* Reason was bestowed on us that we might conduct ourselves with wisdom.

*C'était une des plus belles fêtes qu'on puisse voir.* It was one of the finest festivities that one can see.

c. The imperfect conjunctive is commonly used after a compound present, when this is equivalent to a preterit. — Ex.

*J'ai empêché qu'il ne sortît.* I prevented him from going out.

*Je l'ai payé avant qu'il partît.* I paid him before he left.

d. When the subjunctive clause is followed by a conditional clause, the tense of its verb is determined by that of the latter. — Ex.

*Je doute qu'il jouât s'il avait de l'argent.* I doubt if he would play, if he had money.

*Je ne crois pas qu'il en fût venu à bout, quand même je l'aurais aidé.* I do not believe he would have succeeded, even had I helped him.

---

#### EXERCISE XVII.

---

### II. SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT CLAUSES.

**338.** In independent clauses, the subjunctive is used:

A. To denote, in an imperative or exclamatory way, that the act expressed by the verb is in some manner **willed** (i.e. desired, commanded, etc.)—some governing word, such as *désirer* etc., being readily supplied.

B. Frequently, instead of a compound **conditional**, to express a hypothetical conclusion.

Examples :

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| A. <i>Vive le roi !</i>  | Long live the king !   |
| <i>Ainsi soit-il !</i>   | Thus may it be !   |
| <i>Dieu soit loué !</i>  | God be praised !   |
| <i>Plût à Dieu qu'il en fût ainsi.</i>                                   | Would to God it were so.   |
| <i>Puissiez-vous réussir.</i>  | May you (be able to) succeed.  |
| <i>Qu'il dise la vérité.</i>   | Let him (May he) tell the truth.   |
| <i>Qu'il parte tout de suite.</i>  | Let him (He must) depart immediately.  |
| <i>Qu'il fasse ce qu'il lui plaira.</i>                                  | Let him do what he likes.  |
| B. <i>Qui l'eût (l'aurait) cru ?</i>                                     | Who would have believed it ?   |
| <i>Il eût voulu suivre les théâtres.</i>                                 | He would fain have frequented the theatres.                                    |
| <i>J'eusse adouci votre sort, si j'eusse (332) connu votre misère.</i>   | I would (might) have lightened your lot, had I known your misery.              |
| <i>Eût-il (332) voulu prendre ce parti, Pierre n'y eût pas consenti.</i> | Even if he had been willing to take this step, Peter would not have consented. |

NOTE 1. — The independent subjunctive with *que* is thus habitually used to supply the imperative for the 3d persons (Engl. 'let him' etc.; cf. example 6 etc. above; *Qu'il vienne* 'let him come': etc.).

NOTE 2. — The sentinel's challenge *Qui vive* 'Who comes there?' originally meant 'Who (do you wish) may live? On which side are you?' But the force of the expression is no longer felt, as shown by the answer: 'ami.'

339. To soften an assertion, the subjunctive form *sache* (of *savoir* 'know') may be used negatively, in the first person, or after *que*. — Ex. *Je ne sache rien de plus beau* 'I know nothing more beautiful.' *Il ne viendra pas que je sache* (cf. Lat. *quod sciam*) 'He will not come so far as I

know.' *Etait-elle jolie, que vous sachiez?* 'Do you know whether she was pretty?'

---

EXERCISE XVIII.

---

THE INFINITIVE.

[340. HISTORY.—The French infinitive, replaced the Latin infinitive and gerund both. Unlike the Latin infinitive, it is frequently construed with *de* or *à* (the 'infinitive sign'), even when used as subject or direct object: cf. Lat. *Turpe est mentiri* = Fr. *Il est honteux de mentir*. The use of *de* is due to the fact that in early times the subject-infinitive—as also often the subject-noun—was looked upon as expressing the source or origin of the predicative statement (e.g. 'Shame is *from* lying': so also '*Bonne chose est de paix* 'Peace is a good thing': Joinville). Gradually this *de* losing its significance came to be used as a mere neutral infinitive sign, even where not logically explainable. So also *à*, at first used to denote aim or purpose, came to be a mere neutral sign. *De* and *à* are now far more frequently used than no preposition.

The infinitive was once used much more freely than now. Even in the writers of the 17th century, the infinitive is frequently found used where some other turn of expression would now be required; and it is often construed with a preposition that would not now be allowed. E.g. *Ma guérison dépend de parler à Mélie* (Corneille). *Jusqu'à avoir parlé* (Sévigné). *Dieu nous donne cet exemple à nous fortifier* (= *pour qu'il nous fortifie*): Molière.]

**341. THE INFINITIVE** is in French, as in English, a **verbal noun** representing the action of the verb without designating person or time.

It is of importance, however, to remember that the French infinitive (e.g. *aimer*) may in English be rendered by the **infinitive proper** ('love'), or by the **gerund** (= participial noun in **-ing**), by the latter chiefly after any preposition not equal to 'to.'—Ex. *Il aime à parler* 'He loves to talk (or talking).' *Il s'abstient de parler* 'He abstains from talking.'

NOTE 1.—As will be seen below, the French infinitive cannot always be translated into idiomatic English by an English infinitive.

NOTE 2.—French never uses *parlant* 'speaking' etc. as a verbal noun, except after *en* (370).

Like any other noun, the infinitive may be the **subject**, **predicate noun**, or **object** (direct or prepositional) of a verb. Unlike nouns, however, it is often preceded by a neutral *de* or *à* (the 'infinitive-sign' = English 'to,' cf. 340) as a nominative or accusative. — Ex. *C'est à vous de parler* 'It is for you to speak' (i.e. 'speaking belongs to you'). *Il aime à parler* 'He loves talking' (or 'to talk').

**342. THE INFINITIVE ALONE OR WITH A PREPOSITION.** — The infinitive may stand alone, or be governed by one of the prepositions *de*, *à*, *par*, *pour*, *sans*, *après*, *entre*, or by a prepositional phrase ending in *de* or *à* (*avant de*, *à force de*, etc.).

The main principles determining the construction of the infinitive are pointed out below. Instead of expanding these principles by detailed rules (too intricate to be of real practical value), alphabetical reference-lists of all the more common verbs requiring the infinitive alone or with *de* or *à* (the cases that offer any serious difficulties) are added under each general rule.

**343. INFINITIVE ALONE.** — The infinitive is used without preposition:

a. As **subject**, except usually when by inversion it follows the verb (cf. 346. a), or as **predicate-nominative** after *c'est*, *sembler*, *paraître*. — Ex.

<i>Médiser est une infamie.</i>	To calumniate (calumniation) is shameful.
<i>Promettre et tenir sont deux.</i>	To promise and to keep are different things.
<i>N'être bon qu'à soi c'est n'être bon à rien.</i>	To be good to nobody but one's self is to be good for nothing.
<i>Te voir c'est t'aimer.</i>	To see thee is to love thee.
<i>À quoi bon en parler ?</i>	Why speak of it?
<i>Il semble vous aimer.</i>	He seems to love you.
<i>Il me semble l'avoir vu.</i>	Methinks I saw it (him).

b. As **object** (direct or prepositional) after most verbs of causation or duty, or of thinking, willing, speaking, and motion. — Ex.

<i>Je ferai bâtir une maison.</i>	I shall cause a house to be built.
<i>Je dois partir ce soir.</i>	I am to set out this evening.
<i>Un homme d'honneur doit tenir sa parole.</i>	A man of honor should keep his word.
<i>Je croyais (voulais, désirais, espérais, etc.) lui rendre un service.</i>	I thought (wished, desired, hoped, etc.) I did (to do) him a service.
<i>Il affirme (assure, prétend, confesse, etc.) l'avoir vu.</i>	He asserts (protests, pretends, admits, etc.) that he has seen it.
<i>Je cours lui apprendre cette nouvelle.</i>	I hasten to tell him this news.
<i>Venez nous voir ce soir.</i>	Come to see us this evening.

[344.] REFERENCE-LIST of verbs taking the direct infinitive :

<i>accourir</i>	<i>déclarer</i>	<i>mener</i>	<i>rentrer</i>
<i>affirmer</i>	<i>désirer</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>nier</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>retourner</i>
<i>aimer autant</i>	<i>devoir</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>observer</i>	<i>revenir</i>
<i>(mieux)</i> <sup>3</sup>	<i>écouter</i>	<i>oser</i>	<i>savoir</i>
<i>aller</i>	<i>entendre</i>	<i>ouïr</i>	<i>sembler</i>
<i>apercevoir</i>	<i>entrevoir</i>	<i>paraître</i>	<i>sentir</i>
<i>assurer</i>	<i>envoyer</i>	<i>pouvoir</i>	<i>souhaiter</i> <sup>1</sup>
<i>avoir beau</i>	<i>espérer</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>préférer</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>soutenir</i>
<i>avouer</i>	<i>être censé</i>	<i>pressentir</i>	<i>témoigner</i>
<i>compter</i>	<i>faillir</i>	<i>prétendre</i>	<i>se trouver</i>
<i>confesser</i>	<i>faire</i>	<i>prévoir</i>	<i>valoir autant</i>
<i>considérer</i>	<i>il fait beau</i>	<i>protester</i>	<i>(mieux)</i> <sup>3</sup>
<i>convenir</i>	<i>il fait bon</i>	<i>raconter</i>	<i>voir</i>
<i>courir</i>	<i>falloir</i>	<i>reconnaître</i>	<i>voler</i>
<i>croire</i>	<i>se figurer</i>	<i>regarder</i>	<i>vouloir</i>
<i>daigner</i>	<i>s'imaginer</i>		

<sup>1</sup> Also, though rarely, with *de*.

<sup>2</sup> *de* when construed with a dative.

<sup>3</sup> Direct infinit. in first, and infinit. with *de* in second term (cf. 348).

[345.] In exclamations and questions of appeal, where the governing verb is understood, the infinitive is also used directly. — Ex. *Moi, vous payer! Pourquoi toujours parler d'un pareil scélérat? Quel parti prendre?*

NOTE. — Observe also these elliptical infinitives of direction: *S'adresser au concierge* 'Apply to the porter.' *Voir page 3* 'See page 3.' *Savoir* 'namely, viz.'

**346. INFINITIVE WITH *de*.** — The infinitive with *de* is used:

a. Generally as inverted **subject** or as **predicate-nominative**, except after a few verb-expressions [the impersonals *il faut*, *il fait* (beau etc.), *il semble*, *il vaut* (mieux, autant); and *c'est*, *sembler*, *paraître*], which require a direct infinitive.

b. As **object** (direct or prepositional) usually after verbs logically implying a separation ('from, of') or a means or concern ('with, by, about, to'); and some others.

Examples:

a.

<i>Le plus grand art est de cacher l'art.</i>	The greatest art is to conceal art.
<i>C'est à vous de parler.</i>	It is for you to speak.
<i>Il me plaît d'obliger un ami.</i>	It pleases me to oblige a friend.
<i>Son premier commandement est d'aimer Dieu.</i> (but)	His first commandment is to love God.
<i>Il faut venir.</i>	It is necessary to come.

b.

<i>Je vous conseille de partir.</i>	I advise you to set out.
<i>Ne différez pas plus longtemps de partir.</i>	Do not delay any longer your departure.
<i>Il évite avec soin de me rencontrer.</i>	He avoids carefully to meet me.
<i>Il s'abstient de boire.</i>	He abstains from drinking.
<i>Il commande au soleil d'animer la nature.</i>	He commands the sun to give life to nature.
<i>Je me réjouis d'être venu.</i>	I am glad that I came.
<i>Je crains de vous déplaire.</i>	I am afraid to displease you.

[847.] REFERENCE-LIST of verbs taking infinitive with *de* :

<i>s'absoudre</i>	<i>dégouter</i>	<i>se glorifier</i>	<i>prier</i>
<i>s'absenter</i>	<i>se défaire</i>	<i>gronder</i>	<i>projeter</i>
<i>accorder</i> (refl. with <i>à</i> )	<i>défendre</i>	<i>hasarder</i>	<i>promettre</i>
<i>accuser</i>	<i>se dépêcher</i>	<i>se hasarder</i>	<i>proposer</i>
<i>achever</i>	<i>désaccoutumer</i>	<i>haïr</i>	<i>se proposer</i>
<i>admirer</i>	<i>désespérer</i>	<i>se hâter</i>	<i>protester</i>
<i>affecter</i>	<i>déshabituer</i>	<i>s'indigner</i>	<i>punir</i>
<i>s'affliger</i>	<i>détester</i>	<i>s'inquiéter</i>	<i>se rappeler</i>
<i>il s'agit</i>	<i>différer</i>	<i>inspirer</i>	<i>recommander</i>
<i>ambitionner</i>	<i>dire</i> (bid)	<i>jurer</i> (promise with an oath)	<i>refuser</i> (refl. with <i>à</i> )
<i>s'apercevoir</i>	<i>discontinuer</i>	<i>louer</i>	<i>regretter</i>
<i>appartenir</i>	<i>disconvenir</i>	<i>mander</i>	<i>se réjouir</i>
<i>s'applaudir</i>	<i>dispenser</i>	<i>méditer</i>	<i>remercier</i>
<i>appréhender</i>	<i>dissuader</i>	<i>se mêler</i>	<i>rendre grâce</i>
<i>s'attrister</i>	<i>douter</i> (hesitate)	<i>menacer</i>	<i>se repentir</i>
<i>avertir</i>	<i>écrire</i>	<i>mériter</i>	<i>reprocher</i>
<i>s'aviser</i>	<i>empêcher</i>	<i>mourir</i>	<i>résoudre</i> (refl. with <i>à</i> )
<i>n'avoir garde</i>	<i>enjoindre</i>	<i>négliger</i>	<i>rire</i>
<i>avoir peur</i>	<i>s'enorgueillir</i>	<i>nier</i>	<i>risquer</i>
<i>blâmer</i>	<i>enrager</i>	<i>offrir</i> (refl. with <i>à</i> )	<i>rougir</i>
<i>briguer</i>	<i>entreprendre</i>	<i>omettre</i>	<i>il sied</i>
<i>brûler</i> (yearn)	<i>s'étonner</i>	<i>ordonner</i>	<i>sommer</i>
<i>cesser</i>	<i>éviter</i>	<i>pardonner</i>	<i>se soucier</i>
<i>charger</i>	<i>s'excuser</i>	<i>parler</i>	<i>souffrir</i>
<i>choisir</i>	<i>exempter</i>	<i>parier</i>	<i>souhaiter</i>
<i>commander</i>	<i>faire bien</i>	<i>permettre</i>	<i>soupçonner</i>
<i>conjuré</i>	<i>faire mieux</i>	<i>persuader</i>	<i>se souvenir</i>
<i>conseiller</i>	<i>faire semblant</i>	<i>se piquer</i>	<i>suffire</i> (impers.)
<i>se consoler</i>	<i>feindre</i>	<i>plaindre</i>	<i>suggérer</i>
<i>se contenter</i>	<i>féliciter</i>	<i>se plaindre</i>	<i>supplier</i>
<i>convenir</i> (agree)	<i>se féliciter</i>	<i>préférer</i>	<i>tarder</i> (impers.)
<i>il convient</i>	<i>flatter</i>	<i>prendre soin</i>	<i>tenter</i>
<i>coûter</i> (impers.)	<i>se flatter</i>	<i>prescrire</i>	<i>trembler</i>
<i>craindre</i>	<i>frémir</i>	<i>presser</i>	<i>trouver bon</i>
<i>crier</i>	<i>gager</i>	<i>présumer</i>	<i>se vanter</i>
<i>dédaigner</i>	<i>se garder</i>		
	<i>gémir</i>		



[348.] Aftc.      comparative, 'than' is always rendered by *que de*. —  
Ex.

*Il aime mieux périr que de se plaindre.* He would rather die than complain.  
*J'aime autant rester ici que de sortir.* I like just as much to stay here as to go out.

[349.] HISTORICAL INFINITIVE. — The French infinitive with *de* is sometimes used (like the Latin historical infinitive) instead of the indicative in lively narration. — Ex. *Ainsi dit le renard, et flatteurs d'applaudir* (*La Fontaine*).

**350. INFINITIVE WITH *à*.** — The infinitive with *à* is used:

a. As **direct object** after *avoir*, *aimer* (yet, after *aimerais*, the cond., no preposition), *haïr*, *chercher*, *trouver*, *appréhender*, *enseigner*, *montrer*. — Ex.

<i>J'ai à vous parler.</i>	I have something to speak to you about.
<i>Il aime (Il hait) à se lever de bon matin.</i>	He likes (dislikes) to rise early.
<i>Il cherche à m'éviter.</i>	He tries to avoid me.
<i>Il m'enseigne (me montre) à dessiner.</i>	He teaches me drawing.

b. As **indirect object** usually after verbs implying direction towards ('to, at, in, in reference to'), and some others. — Ex.

<i>Il s'applique à faire son devoir.</i>	He tries to do his duty.
<i>On m'a invité à faire une promenade.</i>	I have been invited to take a walk.
<i>Il aspire à se faire un nom.</i>	He is ambitious to make a name.
<i>Habituez vos enfants à prier Dieu.</i>	Accustom your children to pray to God.
<i>Notre bonheur consiste à vivre suivant la nature.</i>	Our happiness consists in living according to nature.
<i>Elle se plaît à travailler.</i>	She takes pleasure in working.
<i>Il n'y a pas à hésiter.</i>	There is no room for hesitation.
<i>Elle s'amuse à lire.</i>	She diverts herself by reading.

[351.] REFERENCE-LIST of verbs taking infinitive with *à* :

<i>s'abaisser</i>	<i>balancer</i>	<i>s'évertuer</i>	<i>persister</i>
<i>aboutir</i>	<i>se borner</i>	<i>exceller</i>	<i>se plaire</i>
<i>s'abuser</i>	<i>chercher</i>	<i>exciter</i>	<i>se plier</i>
<i>s'accorder</i> (cf. 347)	<i>se complaire</i>	<i>exercer</i>	<i>porter</i> (induce)
<i>s'accoutumer</i>	<i>concourir</i>	<i>exhorter</i>	<i>pousser</i>
<i>s'acharner</i>	<i>condamner</i>	<i>exposer</i>	<i>préparer</i>
<i>admettre</i>	<i>consentir</i>	<i>se fatiguer</i>	<i>prétendre</i>
<i>s'aguerrir</i>	<i>consister</i>	<i>former</i>	<i>provoquer</i>
<i>aider</i>	<i>conspirer</i>	<i>gagner</i>	<i>recommencer</i>
<i>aimer</i> (or <i>de</i> )	<i>se consumer</i>	<i>s'habituer</i>	<i>se refuser</i> (cf. 347)
<i>amener</i>	<i>contraindre</i>	<i>se hasarder</i>	<i>réduire</i>
<i>amuser</i>	<i>contribuer</i>	<i>hésiter</i>	<i>renoncer</i>
<i>animer</i>	<i>convier</i>	<i>incliner</i>	<i>répugner</i>
<i>appeler</i>	<i>coûter</i>	<i>instruire</i>	<i>se résigner</i>
<i>s'appliquer</i>	<i>destiner</i>	<i>s'intéresser</i>	<i>se résoudre</i> (cf. 347)
<i>apprendre</i>	<i>dévouer</i>	<i>inviter</i>	<i>se résoudre</i>
<i>s'apprêter</i>	<i>disposer</i>	<i>se mettre</i>	<i>réussir</i>
<i>aspirer</i>	<i>se disposer</i>	<i>montrer</i>	<i>servir</i>
<i>assigner</i>	<i>divertir</i>	<i>nécessiter</i>	<i>songer</i>
<i>assujettir</i>	<i>donner</i>	<i>s'obstiner</i>	<i>suffire</i> (pers.)
<i>s'attacher</i>	<i>employer</i>	<i>s'offrir</i> (cf. 347)	<i>tarder</i> (pers.)
<i>attendre</i>	<i>encourager</i>	<i>parvenir</i>	<i>tendre</i>
<i>s'attendre</i>	<i>engager</i>	<i>passer</i> (le temps)	<i>tenir</i>
<i>autoriser</i>	<i>enhardir</i>	<i>pencher</i>	<i>travailler</i>
<i>s'avilir</i>	<i>enseigner</i>	<i>penser</i>	<i>trouver</i>
<i>avoir</i> (have to)	<i>s'entendre</i>	<i>perdre</i>	<i>viser</i>
<i>avoir peine</i>	<i>s'étudier</i>	<i>persévérer</i>	<i>vouer</i>

[352.] After *être* the active infinitive with *à* is in French often used where in English the passive infinitive (= Lat. participle in *-dus*) is required. — Ex. *Ce thème est à refaire* 'This theme must be done again (i.e. is for correcting).' *Il restait à sauver deux cents hommes* 'There remained to be saved (not It remained to save) 200 men.'

**353. INFINITIVE ALONE OR WITH *de* OR *à* AFTER THE SAME VERBS.** — After some verbs the infinitive is used variously without preposition or with *de* or *à*, according to certain distinctions, or in part optionally, as described below.

*commencer, continuer, contraindre* : optionally *de* or *à*.

*décider* : *de*, intr. 'decide, make up one's mind' (*J'ai décidé de partir*); —

*à*, tr. 'cause to decide, i.e. induce'; refl. 'decide' (*Je l'ai décidé à partir*).

*défier* : *de*, 'defy' (*Je le défie d'y aller*); — *à*, 'challenge' (*Je te défie à jouer au billard*).

*demander* : *de*, 'ask' somebody else (*Je demande d'observer* 'I ask that one observe'); — *à*, 'ask' for one's self (*Je demande à observer* 'I ask the permission to remark').

*déterminer* : *de* or *à* like *décider*.

*dire* : no preposition, 'say, assert'; with *de* 'tell, order.' — Ex.

*Il dit l'avoir vu.* He says he has seen it. *Il lui dit de s'en aller.* He tells (told) him to go away.

*s'empreser, s'ennuyer, essayer* : *de* or *à* (*essayer us'ly de*).

*être* usually takes *à*. But *c'est* followed by a predicate infinitive (346. a) or in the expression *c'est à* 'it belongs to or is the office of' requires *de*. —

Ex. *C'est à lui de venir* 'It is for him to come.'

*finir, forcer* : *de* or *à* (*finir us'ly de*).

*jurer* 'attest by oath,' no preposition; *de*, 'promise': *Il jure l'avoir vu* 'He swears he has seen it.' *Il jure de le faire* 'He swears to do it.'

*laisser* : no preposition, 'let, cause'; — *de*, in negative clauses 'leave off, cease'; with *à*, 'leave.' — Ex.

*Il me laisse partir.*

He lets me depart.

*Il ne laisse pas de se plaindre.*

He does not cease complaining.

*Il me laisse à y penser.*

He leaves me to think about it.

*manquer* : *de*, 'fail, omit'; 'all but do' (*Il a manqué de tomber* 'He came near falling'); — *à*, 'omit, fail in' (one's duty) (*Il a manqué à remplir ses devoirs*).

*obliger* : *de* or *à*.

*s'occuper* : *de*, 'be busy' physically; — *à*, 'be busy' mentally, 'think of.'

*oublier* : *de*, 'forget to'; — *à*, 'forget how to.'

*penser* : no preposition 'intend'; with *à*, 'think.'

*prendre garde* : *de*, (*de faire*) 'take care (not to do)'; — *à* (*à ne pas faire*) 'take care' (not to do).

*résoudre* : *de*, 'resolve' intr.; — *à*, 'induce,' tr.; determine, refl.

*tâcher* : *de*, 'try' generally; — *à*, 'try; purpose.'

*tarder* : *de*, *il me tarde de* 'I long'; — *à*, 'delay.'

*venir* : no preposition 'come and,' or 'come to = in order to' (in this sense also with *pour*); — *venir de* 'come from = have just (done a thing)'; — *venir à* 'happen.' — Ex.

*Il vint me le dire.* He came and told me about it.

*Je viens (pour) lui parler.* I come to speak to him.

*Je viens de lui parler.* I have just spoken to him.

*S'il venait à mourir.* If he should happen to die.

Observe also a few verbs (*accorder, offrir, etc.*) used with *de* when transitive, but with *à* when reflexive: 347, 351.

**354. *Par*** with the infinitive rarely occurs after verbs of beginning and ending (chiefly *commencer, continuer, finir*). — Ex. *Il commença par nous injurier* 'He began by insulting us.'

**355. *Pour*** is common before an infinitive in the sense of 'for, (in order) to'; also of 'to' after *assez, trop, etc.*; and now more rarely in the sense of 'for = because of.' — Ex.

*Il est ici pour me voir.* He is here in order to see me.

*Il est trop franc pour vous tromper.* He is too candid to deceive you.

*Il est puni pour avoir menti.* He is punished for having lied.

**356. *Sans*** is common with an infinitive: *Il parle sans penser.*

**357. *Après*** is used only before the compound infinitive (being supplied by *après de* before the simple). — Ex. *Après avoir fini* 'after having finished.'

**358. *Entre*** is rare: *Il balance entre aller et rester* 'He wavers between going and staying.'

**359.** After *en* not the infinitive, but the gerundial participle (in *-ant*) is used in French, as in English (367).

**360.** The inverted subject infinitive after *c'est* is often preceded by an expletive *que* (266). — Ex. *C'est un tourment que de haïr* 'It is a torment to hate.' *C'est un besoin de l'âme que d'aimer* 'It is the soul's need to love.' *C'est se moquer des gens (que) de parler ainsi* 'To speak thus is to ridicule people.'

**361. INFINITIVE AFTER NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.** — The construction of the infinitive with nouns and adjectives is like that of a noun: e.g. *le désir de parler* 'the desire of speaking'; *être prêt à parler* 'be ready to speak (for speaking),' etc.

It must be observed only that certain adjectives (*facile, difficile, utile*, etc.) denoting ease or adaptiveness require *de* when the infinitive is the **logical subject** of the sentence, in which case they are preceded by an impersonal verb (*il est, il semble*, etc.); but otherwise *à*. — Examples :

<i>de.</i>	<i>à.</i>
<i>Il est difficile de résoudre ce problème.</i> It is difficult to solve this problem.	<i>Ce problème est difficile à résoudre.</i> This problem is hard to solve.
<i>Il est bon de savoir se taire.</i> It is well to know to be silent.	<i>C'est bon à savoir.</i> That is well to know.
<i>Voilà une émotion qu'il serait difficile d'exprimer.</i> There is an emotion it would be difficult to express.	<i>Il éprouva une émotion difficile à exprimer.</i> He experienced an emotion difficult to express.

**362.** A frequent use of the infinitive is a characteristic of French writing. Especially, as deviating from English usage, should be observed its use after verbs of believing, declaring, etc., and after imperatives, when the **subject** of the dependent clause is identical with the **subject or object** (direct or with *à*) of the leading clause (331). — Ex. *Elle croit être aimée* 'She believes she is loved.' *Il assure la connaître fort bien* 'He insists that he knows her very well.' *Je lui pardonne de m'avoir oublié* 'I pardon him for having forgotten me.' *Venez les prendre!* 'Come and take them!' etc. cf. 331.

---

EXERCISE XIX.

---

## PARTICIPLES.

[363. HISTORY. — The PRESENT PARTICIPLE in French usually comes from the Latin present participle (*aimant* from *amant-em*); but in some instances, as especially after *en*, it answers to the Latin ablative gerund in *-ndo* (*en aimant* = *in amando*), and is then often called a **gerund** or **gerundial participle**. — The gerund was, naturally enough, left uninflected in French, but the real participle, whether construed as a verb or a qualifying adjective, was inflected, agreeing in number (during the 16th century also in gender) with its noun. This principle, prevailing yet in the 17th century, allowed such constructions as *Cent fois suppliants* (Racine); *Les petits . . . voletants* (La Fontaine), etc. But in the same century was fixed the present rule, requiring the participle to be uninflected when used as such, but to agree with its noun when used as an adjective. Traces of the old construction are yet found in a few expressions like *les allants et venants*; *les ayants droit*; etc.

THE PAST PARTICIPLE is really an adjunct of the predicate qualifying as an adjective its subject or object (notice 'I have *bought* the book' = 'I possess the book, being *bought*': etc.). As such it was once in French, as in Latin, always made to agree in gender and number with the word qualified. Gradually, however, the feeling of its real nature was dimmed; and after some discordant usage, characteristic even of the classical period of the language (17th cent.), the rules now adhered to were fixed.]

364. THE FRENCH PARTICIPLES are in part **inflected** like **adjectives**, and in part remain **invariable**. Special rules are given below.

365. PRESENT PARTICIPLE. — The present participle is treated as an **adjective** when it simply qualifies a noun expressed or understood; but as an **invariable verb-form** when it is used to denote action or condition. — Ex.

## USED AS ADJ.

*Les mères caressantes gâtent leurs enfants.* Caressing mothers spoil their children.  
*Une femme mourante.* A dying woman.

## USED AS PARTIC.

*J'ai vu cette mère caressant ses enfants.* I have seen this mother caressing her children.  
*Une femme mourant de faim.* A woman dying of hunger.

*Ces hommes prévoyants ont su éviter le danger.* Those prudent men knew how to avoid the danger. *Ces hommes, prévoyant le danger, ont su l'éviter.* These men, foreseeing the danger, knew how to avoid it.

NOTE 1. — Sometimes usage and good taste alone can decide whether the present participle should be considered as a pure adjective or not.

[366.] Several adjectives, like *charmant* 'charming,' *intéressant* 'interesting,' etc., are by origin present participles. Sometimes such adjectives, usually preserving the more original spelling, exist at the side of the somewhat differently spelled participial forms. E.g. *différent* 'different': *différant* 'differing'; *fatigant* 'tiresome': *fatiguant* 'fatiguing'; *négligent* 'negligent': *négligeant* 'neglecting'; *vacant* 'vacant': *vaquant* 'vacating.'

[367.] **PRESENT PARTICIPLE WITH *en*.** — The present (i.e. gerundial: 363) participle with *en* corresponds to an English gerundial participle with 'in' expressing contemporaneity, 'while, although,' or 'by.' — Ex.

*Il périt en voyant périr ses espérances.* He perished (in) seeing his hopes perish.

*Forcé à faire la guerre en désirant la paix, il la fit.* Driven to make war while (although) desiring peace, he made it.

*On hasarde en voulant trop gagner.* One risks by wishing to gain too much.

NOTE 1. — For emphasis *tout en* is often used: *tout en parlant* 'in the very act (or even while) speaking.'

NOTE 2. — The subject of the participle with *en* must be the same as that of the verb of the sentence; Cf. *Je le rencontrai en allant à l'église* 'I met him while I was going to church'; but *Je le rencontrai allant à l'église* 'I met him going (= on his way to) church.' — Occasional deviations from this rule, where no mistake can result, are met with.

**368. PAST PARTICIPLE.** — The general principle which has determined the treatment of the past participle now adhered to, is that it should agree in gender and number with the word it determines, provided that word is already mentioned, and as

such present in the mind of the speaker. — Hence the slightly modified rule, which is :

a. **Without auxiliary** the past participle agrees with the **noun qualified** : e.g. *Une fille aimée*.

b. With ***être*** in **passive** and **neuter** construction, it agrees with the preceding **subject** : e.g. *Elle est aimée* ; and also with a following subject, unless the verb is impersonal, when it is invariable (cf. ex. below).

c. With ***avoir***, or ***être*** in **reflexive** constructions, it agrees with a preceding direct **object** (being uninflected when no such object precedes) : e.g. *Je l'ai aimée* (*l'* for *la*). *Ils se sont aimés*. But *J'ai aimé cette fille*. *Ils se sont blessé la main* (se dat.).

Farther examples :

a. Without auxiliary :

<i>Ma mère aimée.</i>	My beloved mother.
<i>Les récompenses accordées au mérite ne doivent jamais être le prix de l'intrigue.</i>	Rewards granted to merit should never be the prize of intrigue.

b. With ***être*** (except in reflexives) :

<i>Cette nouvelle a été reçue.</i>	This news is received.
<i>La ville fut prise.</i>	The city was taken.
<i>Nous sommes aimés de nos parents.</i>	We are loved by our parents.
<i>De grands malheurs sont arrivés</i> (but <i>Il est arrivé de grands malheurs</i> ).	Great misfortunes have happened.
<i>Que bénie</i> (though subj. follows) <i>soit la main qui m'a sauvé.</i>	Blessed be the hand that has saved me (m.).

c. With ***avoir*** (or ***être*** in reflexives) :

(Partic. inflected) :

(Partic. uninflected) :

<i>Je l'ai vue</i> (or <i>vu</i> ).	I have	<i>Avez-vous vu ma mère.</i>	Have
seen her (or him).		you seen my mother ?	



- La lettre que j'ai lue.* The letter which I have read.  
*Les tragédies qu'il a écrites.* The tragedies which he has written.  
*Les fruits que nous avons eus se sont gâtés.* The fruits we had have been spoiled.  
*On fait des choses qu'on a cru longtemps impossibles.* Things long considered impossible are done to-day.  
*Quelle réponse vous a-t-on faite ?* What answer has one given you ?  
*La langue qu'a parlée Cicéron.* The language that Cicero spoke.  
*Elle s'est (se acc.) lavée.* She has washed herself.  
*Elle s'est (se acc.) repentie de ses fautes.* She has repented of her faults.  
*Ils se (acc.) sont emparés de la ville.* They have taken possession (made themselves masters) of the city.  
*L'amitié qu'elles (que acc.) se sont témoignées.* The friendship they have shown each other.
- J'ai lu cette lettre.* I have read this letter.  
*Il a écrit des tragédies.* He has written tragedies.  
*Nous avons eu beaucoup de fruit cette année.* We have had plenty of fruit this year.  
*On a cru longtemps ces choses-là impossibles.* Those things have long been thought impossible.  
*Quelle nuit a-t-on dansé ?* What night did they dance ? (no object).  
*L'affaire dont (not direct obj.) ils ont parlé.* The affair of which they spoke.  
*Elle s'est (se dat.) lavé les mains (acc.).* She has washed her hands.  
*Elle s'est (se dat.) rappelé ces faits (acc.).* She remembered these facts.  
*Ils se (dat.) sont arrogé de grands avantages.* They have arrogated for themselves great advantages.  
*Elles se (dat.) sont témoigné une grande amitié.* They have shown each other great friendship.

[369.] *Attendu, excepté, passé, supposé, vu, y (or non) compris* are invariable before a noun (cf. 219. 4).

[370.] When after an adverb of quantity no noun is expressed, the past participle nevertheless agrees with the noun that is understood. — *Beaucoup se sont enfuis, mais peu se sont sauvés* 'Many fled, but few were saved.'

[371.] In accordance with the main rule, the past participle with *avoir* (or *être* in reflexives) is invariable whenever there is no preceding direct object. The following distinctions need be specially observed :

a. *Que* 'that' referring to time or measure, or to the pronominal particle *en* 'of it, some' are not direct objects. — *Les deux heures que* (= *pendant lesquelles*) *j'ai dormi* 'The two hours I have slept.' *Il a des fleurs, et il m'en a donné* 'He has flowers, and he has given me some.'

b. If a preceding pronoun is the object of an infinitive following the participle, the latter is invariable (its real object being the infinitive). — Compare :

a. preced'g pronoun object:  
*Les soldats que j'ai vus ensevelir leur camarade.* The soldiers whom I have seen burying their comrade.

*La fille que j'ai entendue chanter.* The girl I have heard singing.

*Je l'ai vue peindre ces tableaux.* I have seen her paint these pictures.

*Je les ai laissés partir.* I let them go.

b. infinitive object:  
*Les soldats que j'ai vu ensevelir.* The soldiers whom I have seen buried (*lit.* the burying whom I have seen).

*La chanson que j'ai entendu chanter.* The song I have heard sung.

*Ces tableaux je les ai vu peindre.* I have seen these pictures painted.

*Ils se sont laissé surprendre.* They allowed themselves to be surprised.

NOTE 1. — *Fait* before an infinitive is always invariable, the two together forming one causative. — *Je les ai fait sortir* 'I let them go out.'

NOTE 2. — When after *dû, pu, voulu* an infinitive is understood, they are invariable. — *Nous lui avons donné tous les secours que nous avons pu* (*viz. lui donner*) 'We have given him all the help we could.'

NOTE 3. — *As été* can be preceded only by *avoir*, it is always invariable.

---

#### EXERCISE XX.

---

## XVII.

## INDECLINABLES.

## A. NEGATIONS.

[372. HISTORY. — Latin *non*, which in popular usage often supplanted *ne*, has in French become *non* or *ne* (older *nen*) — French *ne* is always used with verbs, though rarely alone. Latin, like other languages, frequently emphasized a negation by adding to the negative particle a word of comparison (e.g. *non . . . gutta* ‘not a drop,’ instead of simply *non*). This was done also in French, and expressions like ‘not move a *step*’ (*pas* = Lat. *passum*), ‘not see a *point*’ (*point* = Lat. *punctum*) becoming stereotype, *pas* and *point* — unless, indeed, supplanted by some other word such as *guère* ‘much,’ *goutte* ‘drop,’ *personne*, *rien*, etc. —, gradually, though slowly, came to be the regular complement of *ne* in purely negative expressions (cf. Engl. *not* = *nd wiht* ‘not a whit’; Germ. *nicht* = *ni wiht*). They even assumed, themselves, a negative value, being now often used alone as negative particles with other words than verbs (in the 17th century also with verbs, especially when interrogative, and yet, in popular usage, without distinction). The use of *ne* alone as full negative, once common in the 17th century, is now confined to a few definite cases described below (375 etc.).

On the other hand, *ne* now enters **expletively** in many expressions, as of fear, negated doubt, prevention, and in the second proposition of a comparison, etc. (381 etc.).

This use of *ne* — often corresponding to the use in English of ‘lest’ (*quominus*) or ‘from’ — was in its origin, in most cases, perfectly logical. The Latin *timeo ne veniat* really meant ‘I fear: may he *not* come’; so likewise *impedio* (from *in* and *pes*) *ne veniat* originally meant ‘I check him that he may *not* come.’ This Latin use of *ne* was inherited into French (cf. *timeo ne veniat* = *je crains qu’il ne vienne*; *impedio ne* (or *quominus*) *veniat* = *j’empêche qu’il ne vienne*). But the development of that use in French is often anomalous and even inconsistent, and the force of the original negation is no longer felt. The expletive use of *ne*, however, is being more and more neglected in popular usage.]

**373. *Non* (or *non pas*), *pas*.** — Except in connection with verbs, the purely negative particle is in French *non* (or, with

adversative emphasis, *non pas*, *non point*). Exceptionally *pas* (or *point*) is used, chiefly in answers for 'not,' followed by another word. — Ex.

*Viendrez-vous ? Non.*

Shall you come ? No.

*Vous viendrez, n'est-ce pas ?*

You will come, will you not ?

*Non pas.*

No (I will not).

*Sage ou non.*

Wise or not.

*Sa cruauté et non (or non pas, non point) son orgueil.*

His cruelty and not his pride.

*A-t-il des livres ? Pas un (pas beaucoup, pas du tout).*

Has he books ? Not one (not many, none at all).

NOTE 1. — *Non* is often preceded by *que* (*que non*, elliptically for a whole clause introduced by *que*, and translatable by 'no,' or 'not,' or a whole phrase). — Ex. *Je dis que non* 'I say no.' *Je crois que non* 'I believe not.' *Je gage que non* 'I wager that it is not so.'

NOTE 2. — In popular usage *pas* alone is often the negative even with verbs; rarely in literary style: *Craignez-vous pas le fer ?* (V. Hugo).

**374. *Ne . . . pas* (or *point*).** — With verbs 'not' is in French usually expressed by two words, viz. the negative *ne* (*n'*) 'not' and the adverb *pas* or (optionally, though rather more emphatically) *point*.

These words are placed one on each side of the personal verb-form — *ne* before it (preceding its object-pronoun, if there be one), and *pas*, *point* after it. Usually both precede a simple infinitive. An object-pronoun is then placed after or (less often) between them. — Ex.

*Je ne parle pas (or point).*

I do not speak.

*Je ne lui parle pas (or point).*

I do not speak to him.

*Je ne le lui dis pas.*

I do not tell him about it.

*Je n'ai pas parlé.*

I have not spoken.

*Je ne lui ai point parlé.* I have not spoken to him.  
*Il faut ne pas lui* (or *ne lui pas*) *parler.* It is necessary *not* to (You must not) speak to him.

NOTE 1. — If a personal verb is followed by an infinitive, the negatives are arranged with the verb they actually determine. — Ex. *Je ne puis (pas) le faire* 'I cannot do it.' *Je puis ne pas le faire* 'I am capable of not doing it.'

NOTE 2. — In questions *pas* is used only when an affirmative reply is expected, but *point* without distinction. — Ex. *C'est vous, n'est-ce pas?*

**375. *Ne* USED ALONE.** — 'Not' is expressed by *ne* alone, without any complement-word, in several cases, as explained below.

A. — *Ne* is used alone in independent clauses:

[376.] More or less optionally, with *pouvoir* 'be able,' *savoir* 'know,' *cesser* 'cease,' *oser* 'dare,' *bouger* 'budge.' Regularly with *savoir* in sense of 'can'; and in a few set phrases like *n'importe* 'no matter,' *ne vous en déplaît* 'may it not displease you,' *à Dieu ne plaise* 'God forbid,' *n'avoir garde* 'not have the inclination (not care, not wish, be far from).'

 — Ex.

*Je ne puis* (or *Je ne peux pas*) *le croire.* I cannot believe it.  
*Il ne peut (pas) tarder.* He cannot delay.  
*Je ne sais (pas) qu'en penser* I don't know what to think of it.  
*Je ne sais* (or *saurais*) *m'exprimer autrement.* I cannot express myself differently.  
*Je ne saurais vous le dire.* I can (could) not tell you.  
*Il n'ose (pas) revenir.* He dares not return.  
*Il n'a garde de tromper, il est trop honnête homme.* He is too honest a man to think of cheating.

NOTE. — Ordinarily *pas* is omitted with *pouvoir* etc. when the negation is unemphatic and followed by an infinitive. In popular usage the omission is always rare (e.g. *Je ne puis* more classical than *Je ne peux pas*).

[In *n'importe*, *ne (dé) plaise*, *ne* represents the Lat. *ne*, not *non*.]

[377.] After *que* and (optionally) *qui* introducing rhetorical questions or exclamations. — Ex.

*Que n'êtes vous arrivé plus tôt ?* Why have you not come before?

*Ah, que n'étais-je là !* Ah, why was I not there !

*Qui de nous n'a (pas) ses défauts ?* Who of us has not his faults ?

*Qui ne l'aimerait ?* Who would not love her ?

B. — *Ne* is used alone in dependent clauses :

[378.] Usually when the leading verb is itself **negative** or **impliedly so** (as with *sans*, *peu*, *impossible*, etc., or in questions of appeal). The dependent verb (always in the subjunctive : 327, 329) can then often in English be construed affirmatively with 'but,' 'but that.' — Ex.

*Il est impossible qu'il ne vienne.* It is impossible that he should not come (= He cannot but come).

*Il n'y a personne qui ne le sache.* There is nobody that does not know it (= There is none but knows it).

*Je ne connais personne qui ne fasse quelquefois des fautes.* I know no one who does not sometimes make a mistake.

*J'ai peu d'amis qui ne soient les vôtres.* I have few (= not many) friends that are not yours.

*Y a-t-il personne dont elle ne médise ?* Is there anybody whom she does not slander ?

*Avez-vous un ami qui ne soit aussi le mien ?* Have you a friend who is not mine also ? (= but that he is mine also ?)

*Il ne tient pas à moi que cela ne se fasse.* It is not my fault if that does not happen.

[379.] After a leading clause expressing a **care** or **effort** (that something may 'not' take place). — Ex.

*Je prendrai garde qu'il ne tombe.* I shall take care that he does not fall.

*Soyez attentif qu'il ne se blesse.* See to it that he does not wound himself.

[380.] Usually in the expression *si . . . ne* 'if not, unless'; and when by inversion *si* is omitted (as in *n'était* 'were it not for': etc.). — Ex.

*Il serait tombé si je ne l'avais (or l'eusse: 332) retenu.* He would have fallen, had I not supported him.

*N'espérez pas obtenir l'estime des gens de bien si vous ne remplissez vos devoirs.* Do not hope to gain the esteem of honest people, if you do not (unless you) fulfil your duties.

*Je serais riche, n'étaient les impôts.* I should be rich were it not for the taxes.

*N'eût été la crainte de surprise, je n'aurais pas quitté cet endroit.* Had it not been for (But for) fear of surprise, I should not have left this place.

**381. *Ne* USED EXPLETIVELY.** — In dependent clauses introduced by the conjunction *que* (or a conjunction-phrase in *que*), French often has *ne* where English has no negation. *Que . . . ne* is then variously rendered ('that,' 'lest,' 'from,' or 'than,' etc.), as illustrated by the various sentences below, 382-7.

Usage is not consistent with regard to this expletive use of *ne*. In the following cases, however, the expletive *ne* is generally introduced:

[382.] After *empêcher* 'prevent' and *éviter* 'avoid' before a personal verb-form (always a subjunctive: 325). — Ex.

*J'empêcherai qu'il ne vienne* I shall prevent his coming. (I (but *Je l'empêcherai de* shall prevent him from coming). *venir*).

*Évitez qu'il ne vous parle.* Avoid his speaking to you.

**NOTE.** — Both are exceptionally construed without *ne* (*empêcher* chiefly when negative or interrogative).

[383.] After expressions of **fear**, **doubt**, or **denial** when the action of the dependent verb (then in the subjunctive: 325, 327) is viewed rather as merely probable or possible than as improbable or certain.

That is, usually, after expressions of **fear** or **apprehension** [*craindre*, *appréhender*, *trembler*, *redouter*, *avoir peur*, *de peur*, *de crainte*, etc.] when affirmative or interrogative without implied negation, and, inversely, after expressions of **doubt** and **denial** [*douter* (*il est douteux*, *il y a du doute*, etc.), *désespérer*, *nier*, *contester*, *disconvenir*] when negative or interrogative with implied negation.

### Examples.

Action probable or possible :	Action improbable or certain :
<i>Je crains (J'appréhende, J'ai peur) qu'il ne vienne.</i> I fear (etc.) he may come.	<i>Je ne crains pas (etc.) qu'il vienne.</i> I am not afraid that he will come.
<i>Avez-vous peur qu'il ne vous trompe ?</i> Are you afraid he may deceive you ?	<i>Pouvez-vous craindre qu'il vous trompe ?</i> Can you fear (= You cannot fear, can you?) that he should deceive you ?
<i>N'appréhendez-vous pas qu'il ne vous trompe ?</i> Are you not afraid lest he deceive you ?	<i>Je n'appréhende point qu'il me trompe.</i> I am not afraid he will deceive me.
<i>Je ne doute (désespère) pas qu'il ne réussisse.</i> I have no doubt (etc.) he may or will succeed.	<i>Je doute (désespère) qu'il réussisse.</i> I doubt whether he will succeed.
<i>Doutez-vous qu'il ne réussisse ?</i> Do you doubt whether he will succeed ?	<i>Doutez-vous qu'il soit malade ?</i> Do you doubt that he is sick ? (which he really is).
<i>Je ne nie pas qu'il ne soit très éloquent.</i> I don't deny that he may be (or his being) very eloquent.	<i>Je ne nie pas que vous soyez malade ?</i> I do not deny that you are (or your being) sick.
	<i>Je nie que cela soit.</i> I deny that that can be so.



*Je ne disconviens pas que cela ne soit ainsi.* I don't deny that that may not be so. *Ne doutez-vous pas qu'il en vienne à bout ?* Don't you doubt that he will succeed ?

NOTE. — *Ne* is sometimes used after *avant que* in sense of 'lest' and *sans que*, but this construction is becoming antiquated. *Que* used for *sans que* usually requires *ne* [e.g. *Je ne puis sortir de la maison, qu'il ne le sache* (or *sans qu'il le sache*)].

[384.] After *il s'en faut* used negatively or with *peu*. — Ex.

*Il ne s'en faut pas beaucoup qu'il ne soit l'égal de son frère.* He is not far from being his brother's equal.  
*Peu s'en est fallu qu'il ne se soit tué.* He came very near killing himself.

[385.] With compound tenses after *depuis que* or *que* 'since' (*que* . . . *ne* also, by beginning with the dependent clause, translatable as a negative).

*Comment vous êtes-vous porté depuis que je ne vous ai vu ?* How have you been 'since' I saw you ?  
*Il y a trois mois que je ne l'ai rencontré.* It is three months 'since' I met him (or I have not met him these three months).  
*Il y avait dix ans que nous ne nous étions vus.* We had not seen each other for ten years.

NOTE. — If the verb is in a simple tense, a full negation (*ne* . . . *pas* etc.) is used. — Ex. *Il y a trois mois que nous ne nous parlons pas* 'We have not spoken to each other for three months.'

[386.] With a personal verb-form in the second clause of a comparison of difference (i.e. a comparison such that the second term could be construed negatively if placed first). — Thus :

With <i>ne</i> :	Without <i>ne</i> :
<i>Il est plus riche qu'il ne l'était.</i>	<i>Il est plus riche qu'il l'était.</i>
He is richer than he was	He is yet richer than he was
(i.e. he was not rich, he is	(i.e. he was rich, and he is
better off now).	richer yet now).

*Il n'est pas plus riche qu'il ne l'était.* He is not richer than he was (and he was not rich).

*Il est moins coupable qu'il ne le paraît.* He is less guilty than he appears [i.e. he does not appear so little guilty (free of guilt) as he is].

*Il parle autrement qu'il n'agit.* He speaks otherwise than he acts.

*Pourrai-je devenir plus fort que je ne le suis?* Is there any prospect for me of becoming stronger than I am?

NOTE.—Aside from pure comparatives, the comparative words *autre*, *autrement*, *plûtôt*, and *plus tôt* may thus be construed with *ne*.

[387.] After *à moins que* 'unless,' or *que* used for *à moins que*. — Ex.

*Je ne le ferai pas à moins que vous ne le fassiez.* I shall not do it unless you do it.

*Le lion n'attaque jamais l'homme à moins qu'il ne soit provoqué.* The lion never attacks man, unless it be provoked to anger.

*Il n'en parle pas qu'il n'y soit forcé.* He does not speak about it unless he be forced to do so.

**388. OTHER NEGATIONS WITH VERBS.** — Other negations than those described above usually consist of *ne* with (a) an **adverb** or (b) **indefinite pronoun**.

Their arrangement is like that of *ne . . . pas*, except that the pronouns take their usual place, according to their syntactical relation (*rien*, however, only as subject); and that only *ne plus*, *ne rien* may precede a simple infinitive.

A list of the more common of these negations is given below :

a. *ne* with adverbs :

Ex.

<i>ne</i> . . <i>jamais</i>	never	<i>Il ne parle jamais.</i>	He never speaks.
<i>ne</i> . . <i>guère</i>	{ not much scarcely	<i>Il n'a guère parlé.</i>	He scarcely spoke.
<i>ne</i> . . <i>plus</i>	<sup>1</sup> { no more = no longer	<i>Il ne faut plus chanter.</i>	You must sing no more.
<i>ne</i> . . <i>que</i> (cf. note 2)	{ nothing but only	<i>Je ne connais que mon pays.</i>	I know my country only.
<i>ne</i> . . <i>aucunement</i>	{ not at all nowise	<i>Je ne lui en veux aucunement.</i>	I nowise wish him any harm.
<i>ne</i> . . <i>nullement</i>			
<i>ne</i> . . <i>ni</i>	etc. cf. 390.		

b. *ne* with pronouns :

Ex.

<i>ne</i> . . <i>aucun</i>	{ not any no	<i>Je n'y ai nul intérêt.</i>	I have no interest in it.
<i>ne</i> . . <i>nul</i>			
<i>ne</i> . . <i>personne</i>	nobody	<i>Il n'a vu personne.</i>	He has seen nobody.
<i>ne</i> . . <i>quelconque</i>	{ none soever	<i>Il n'a parlé à qui que ce soit.</i>	He has not spoken to anybody (soever).
<i>ne</i> . . <i>qui que ce soit</i>			
<i>ne</i> . . <i>rien</i>	nothing	<i>Il n'a rien vu.</i>	He has seen nothing.

NOTE 1. — *Jamais*, *plus*, *aucunement*, *nullement*, *aucun*, *nul*, *personne*, and *rien* often, by ellipsis, have a negative meaning without *ne*, when the verb is omitted and in certain phrases. — Ex. *Viendrez-vous? Jamais* 'Shall you come? Never.' *Plus de larmes, plus de chagrins* 'No more tears, no more sorrows'; etc. Cf. 112. 4.

NOTE 2. — 'Only' is expressed by *ne* . . *que*, or by *seulement*. Either may limit an object or predicate adjunct (*Je ne connais que mon pays* or *Je connais seulement mon pays*. *Seulement* must be used to limit the subject (*Les bons seulement sont heureux*) or the predicate (*Regardez seulement*), and before *que* (*il dit seulement qu'il viendrait*). *Seulement* may also serve to strengthen *ne* . . *que* (*Vous n'avez seulement qu'a me dire une parole*).

[389.] *Brin* 'mote,' *goutte* 'drop,' *mie* 'crumb,' *mot* 'word' occur (in sense of *rien*) as complement to *ne* in a few set phrases. — Ex. *Je n'y vois goutte* 'I see nothing in it.' *Il ne dit mot* 'He does not say a word (He says nothing).'

---

<sup>1</sup> *ne* . . *pas plus* means 'not any more' (with reference to quantity or comparison).

**390. USE OF *ni*.**—The expression ‘neither . . . nor’ when determining other words than a personal verb is rendered by *ni . . . ni*, arranged as in English; and if there is a verb in the sentence, *ne* is placed before it: e.g. *Ni mon père ni ma mère (ne viendront)* ‘Neither my father nor my mother (will come).’

Determining directly personal verbs, ‘neither . . . nor’ is rendered by *ne . . . ni ne*: e.g. *Il ne lit ni n’écrit* ‘He neither reads nor writes.’

Further examples:

<i>Qui l’a fait ? Ni lui ni moi.</i>	Who has done it? Neither he nor I.
<i>Ni lui ni moi ne viendrons.</i>	Neither he nor I shall come.
<i>Il n’a ni frères ni sœurs.</i>	He has neither brothers nor sisters.
<i>Il ne sait ni lire ni écrire.</i>	He can neither read nor write.
<i>Je ne l’ai ni dit ni pensé.</i>	I have neither said so nor thought so.
<i>Je ne veux ni qu’il lise ni qu’il écrive.</i>	I will not allow him either to read or write.
<i>Il ne mange ni ne boit.</i>	He neither eats nor drinks.
<i>Je ne vous loue ni ne vous blâme.</i>	I neither praise nor blame you.
<i>Je ne veux, ni ne dois, ni ne puis vous obéir.</i>	I neither wish nor ought to obey you, nor can I do it.

NOTE 1. — ‘Nor’ used without preceding ‘neither’ is rendered (a) before a verb at the beginning of a clause by *et ne*: e.g. *Il ne devrait pas le faire, et il ne le fera pas*, ‘He ought not to do it, nor will he do it’; but (b) within a clause before other words than personal verbs by *ni*, and (c) before personal verbs by *ni ne*: e.g. *Je ne l’ai pas dit ni pensé* (or *ni ne l’ai pensé*), ‘I have not said it, nor (have I) thought it.’

NOTE 2. — *Ni . . . non plus* is used in the sense of ‘nor . . . either’ where the verb is understood. — Ex. *Il ne le fera pas, ni moi non plus* ‘He will not do it, nor I either.’ *Ni mon frère non plus* ‘Nor my brother either.’

---

EXERCISE XXI.

---

## B. OTHER INDECLINABLES.

**391.** The following short remarks about the use and meaning of some of the indeclinables that have not already been sufficiently described in the preceding part of the grammar may here be added.

## ADVERBS.

**392. POSITION OF ADVERBS.**—Adverbs, unless introducing the sentence (416. b), follow a personal verb-form, and an infinitive, with some exceptions as described under 411.—*Ex. Il parle souvent* ‘He often speaks.’ *Il a souvent parlé* ‘He has often spoken’: etc.

## DISTINCTIONS OF CERTAIN ADVERBS.

**393. Aussi, si** ‘as, so,’ **autant, tant** ‘as (so) much or many.’—*Aussi, autant* are used in comparisons generally; *si, tant* only in negative comparisons, or where no comparison is involved.—*Ex.*

*Elle est aussi grande que lui.* She is as tall as he.

*Elle n'est pas si (or aussi) grande que lui.* She is not so tall as he.

*Elle est si belle, si bonne.* She is so pretty, so kind.

*Henri possède autant de courage, mais pas tant (or autant) de prudence que Jean.* Henry has as much courage, but not so much prudence, as John.

*Je l'ai tant prié qu'il m'en a accordé la permission.* I prayed him so much that he granted me the permission.

NOTE 1.—*Tant mieux* means ‘so much the better,’ and *tant pis* ‘so much the worse.’

NOTE 2.—*Tant* introducing a clause is emphatic, corresponding to ‘so, so much’ (usually in same position): e.g. *Tant il marchait rapidement* ‘So rapidly did he walk.’

**394. Au moins, du moins** ‘at least.’—*Au moins* denotes the lowest limit or estimate, *du moins* is equivalent to ‘however,’ ‘at any rate’; but in ordinary usage no distinction is made.—*Ex.*

*Il a au moins cent mille dollars.* He has at least a hundred thousand dollars.

*S'il ne peut pas le faire, il devrait au moins en parler.* If he cannot do it, he should at least (for the least) speak of it.

*S'il n'est pas riche, il a du moins de quoi vivre.* If he is not rich, he has at least (however) enough to live.

**395. *Au reste, du reste*** 'as for the rest, otherwise, besides, moreover.' — *Au reste* is equivalent to 'besides,' and *du reste* to 'otherwise'; but in ordinary usage no distinction is made. — Ex.

*Au reste je vous dirai que cela n'est pas vrai.* Besides (Moreover) I will tell you that is not true.

*Il est capricieux, du reste il est honnête homme.* He is capricious, otherwise he is an honest man.

**396. *Plus, davantage*** 'more.' — *Plus* is used both absolutely and to modify another word. *Davantage* is used absolutely, and usually only at the end of a clause. Either may be strengthened by *bien* or *encore*. — Ex.

*Cela me plaît bien plus (or davantage).* That pleases me far more.

*La paresse est plus dangereuse que la vanité.* Laziness is more dangerous than vanity.

*La vanité est dangereuse, mais la paresse l'est davantage.* Vanity is dangerous, but laziness is more so.

NOTE. — In archaic style *davantage* is often followed by *que*.

**397. *Oui, si*** 'yes.' — *Oui* is the affirmative and *si* the corrective answer to a question (*si* being used where a negative answer is expected). *Si* may be strengthened by *fait*. — Ex.  
*Y avez vous été?* 'Were you there?' *Oui, monsieur* 'Yes, sir.' *Vous n'y avez pas été?* 'You were not there?' *Si* (or *Si fait*) 'Yes (yes indeed).'

**398. *Quand, quant***. — *Quand* 'when' is an adverb of time or a conjunction; *quant* 'in regard to, as to, as for' is always followed by *à* (e.g. *Quant à moi* 'as for me').

**399.** *Tout à coup* means 'suddenly' and *tout d'un coup* 'in one stroke, all at once.' — Ex. *Tout à coup il disparut* 'He suddenly disappeared.' *Il perdit sa fortune tout d'un coup* 'He lost his fortune in one stroke.'

**400.** *Comme* and *que* often introduce an exclamation. French then, unlike English, places the word qualified by these adverbs at the end of the clause. — Ex. *Comme elle* (or *Qu'elle*) *est belle* 'How beautiful she is!'

#### CONJUNCTIONS.

**401.** *Et . . . et* means 'both . . . and'; *soit . . . soit* (or *ou*) 'whether (either) . . . or'; *soit que . . . soit que* (or *ou que*) 'whether . . . or.' — Ex.

*Et lui et moi.*

Both he and I.

*Soit clémence, soit* (or *ou*) *justice.*

Either (whether) clemency or justice.

*Soit qu'il vive, soit qu'il* (or *ou*) *qu'il* *meure je le verrai.*

Whether he lives or dies I shall see him.

**402.** *Si*. — The use of mood and tense after *si* has been described already in the preceding (cf. 304. c, 308, 311, 314, 332). Below (403. b) will be noted that *que* (with the subjunctive) is often used instead of a repeated *si*.

**403.** *Que* 'that.' — a. *Que* can not, as often 'that' in English, be omitted, but must be repeated at the head of each proposition. — Ex. *Je crois que votre cause est bonne et qu'elle va prospérer* 'I believe (that) your cause is good, and will prosper.'

b. *Que* is frequently used instead of a repeated conjunction or conjunction-phrase in *que* (*lorsque*, *puisque*, *pendant que*, *à moins que*, etc.), or *quand*, *comme*, *si*. When thus used instead of *si* or a conjunction-phrase requiring the subjunctive, it is followed by that mode (323. b). — Ex.

*Lorsqu'on a des dispositions et qu'on veut étudier, on fait des progrès rapides.*

*À moins qu'on ne soit diligent et qu'on ne prenne de la peine, on ne réussira pas.*

*Quand on est riche et qu'on est généreux, on ne manque pas d'amis.*

*Si vous avez des amis et que vous désiriez les conserver, rendez-vous digne de leur estime.*

*À peine fus-je arrivé qu'il vint me voir.*

*Je ne serai point content que (= à moins que) je ne le sache.*

*S'il ne vient pas, c'est qu'il est malade.*

When one has the ability and is desirous to study, one makes rapid progress.

Unless one be diligent and (unless one) take trouble, he will not succeed.

When one is both rich and generous one does not lack friends.

If you have friends and wish to retain them, render yourself worthy of their esteem.

Scarcely had I arrived when he called on me.

I shall not be satisfied unless I know it.

If he does not come, it is because he is sick.

c. Cf. also for the use of *que* in comparison 84, as an expletive 266 a. and b. note, and in exclamation 400.

**404. Quand, lorsque** 'when.' — *Quand* is said to refer to time in a more general way than *lorsque*. In actual usage, however, little distinction is made, except that *quand* alone can be used as an interrogative adverb, and that *lorsque* must be used with a historical present. — Ex.

*J'avais quinze ans lorsque je perdîs mon père.*

*Il est bon d'étudier quand on est jeune.*

*Quand* (adv.) *êtes-vous arrivé ?*

*Lorsque enfin les blessures de ces infortunés s'améliorent, ils périssent faute de subsistance.*

I was fifteen years of age when I lost my father.

It is well to study when one is young.

When did you arrive ?

When finally the wounds of these unfortunate men are healing, they perish for want of food.



NOTE.— *Quand* and *lorsque* also denote **condition**, with reference to time: Cf. *Faites-le si vous venez* (implying doubt), *quand vous viendrez* (implying probability), *lorsque vous viendrez* (implying almost certainty).

**405. *Parce que* ‘because,’ *puisque* ‘since.’** — *Parce que* introduces the cause of what is stated in the main clause; *puisque* refers to it as a consequence. — Ex.

*Je le veux parce que cela est juste.* I wish it, because it is right.

*Je le veux puisque cela est juste.* I wish it since it is right.

NOTE.— *Par ce que* means ‘from what, by that which’: *Je le sais par ce qu’il m’a dit* ‘I know it from what he told me.’

**406. *Pendant que*, *tandis que* ‘while.’** — Both denote simultaneousness of action, but *tandis que* is usually equivalent to ‘while on the contrary.’ — Ex.

*Il entra pendant que je dormais.* He entered while I was sleeping.

*Je me consume de chagrin tandis que vous vous amusez.* I pine away with grief while you are amusing yourself.

---

EXERCISE XXII.

---



---

XVIII.

ARRANGEMENT OF THE SENTENCE.

[407. HISTORY. — Latin, being able to express the relation of words to each other by their form, possessed far greater freedom in the arrangement of the sentence than French, where inflection is largely replaced by fixity of position. In Latin, for instance, *pater amat filium*, or *filium amat pater*, or *amat pater filium* were equally allowable, while French, unable to distinguish between the nominative and accusative, except by their relative position, allows only *le père aime le fils*.

This transition to a fixed state of position was accomplished only gradually. Old French, retaining much of the Latin inflection, also allowed

much of the Latin freedom of position. Even yet some traces of an earlier independence are preserved, especially as regards certain modifying words, and much more in poetry than in prose. But the common language is tending more and more towards rigorous uniformity.]

**408.** The arrangement of the sentence is in French, as in English, either **direct** or **inverted**.

**409. DIRECT ARRANGEMENT.**—The direct arrangement, being used for the most part in affirmative and negative statements, is: 1. **the subject** with its modifiers, 2. **the predicate** with its modifiers. The relative position of the modifying words, as far as it is peculiar to French, is described below.

**Adjectives, pronouns, and negative particles.**—The arrangement of adjectives, conjunctive personal pronouns or pronominal particles, and negative particles is described already in the preceding (adj. 221-3; pron. 102, 254-6; neg. 374, 388).

[410.] **Direct and indirect object.**—The direct object, unless decidedly longer than the indirect, usually precedes it. An emphasized object, however, comes last, whether direct or indirect. — Ex.

<i>Il inspire le courage à ses soldats.</i>	He inspires his soldiers with courage.
<i>Il faut inspirer aux enfants l'amour de Dieu.</i>	Children should be inspired with love to God.

NOTE.—*Tout* and *rien*, when used alone as objects, often precede an infinitive and a participle. — Ex.

<i>Pour ne vous rien celer.</i>	To conceal nothing from you.
<i>Elle croit avoir tout fait.</i>	She thinks she has done everything.

[411.] **Adverbs and adverbial phrases.**—They are arranged as follows:

a. They usually **follow the personal verb-form** (i.e. the simple verb or the auxiliary). But long adverbs or adverbial phrases, and adverbs of relative time (*hier, demain*, etc.) **follow the past participle** of a compound tense. — Ex.

<i>Il parle souvent.</i>	He often speaks.
<i>Il m'a souvent parlé.</i>	He has often spoken to me.
<i>On met ordinairement l'ad- verbe après le verbe qu'il modifie.</i>	We usually place the adverb after the verb it modifies.
<i>J'y ai été quelquefois.</i>	I have been there sometimes.
<i>Je l'ai fait à la hâte.</i>	I did it in haste.
<i>Il est arrivé hier.</i>	He arrived yesterday.

NOTE. — The position before or after the participle is often optional, the latter being rather more emphatic. But many common adverbs like *déjà, souvent, toujours, bientôt*, etc. always precede.

b. Long adverbs and adverbial phrases follow an infinitive. But several short adverbs like *bien, mieux, mal, pis, trop*, and usually adverbs of negation (374, 388) precede it. — Ex.

<i>Il faut écrire tendrement.</i>	One (or I) must write tenderly.
<i>Il s'efforce de bien écrire.</i>	He makes an effort to write well.
<i>Vous ne pouvez mieux faire.</i>	You can not do better.

c. Adverbs and adverbial phrases of **time**, unless very long, usually precede those of place; and both are followed by other adverbs. — Ex.

<i>Qu'il vienne à l'instant au palais.</i>	Let him come instantly to the palace.
<i>Marchons maintenant (or présente- ment) avec assurance.</i>	Let us now walk with assurance.

[412.] **Prepositions** precede the words to which they belong, and can never as in English by ellipsis (omission of a relat. or interrog. pronoun) be placed at the end of a clause: e.g. *La maison de laquelle (or dont) il parle* 'The house he speaks of.'

NOTE. — Exceptionally *durant* (by origin a participle) follows its noun: e.g. *sa vie durant* 'during his life.' In adverbial use (as in *on s'éleva contre*) prepositions are construed as adverbs.

**413. INVERTED ARRANGEMENT.** — The inverted arrangement, requiring the subject to follow the verb, is used in the cases described below.

[414.] In **questions**, the personal subject-pronouns and also *on* and *ce* follow the verb. Other subjects usually (cf. note)

precede the verb, being repeated after it in the form of a personal pronoun. Or the question is introduced by the paraphrase *Est-ce que* 'is it (the case) that' (152) with direct arrangement. — Ex.

*Est-il venu ?*

Has he come ?

*Votre frère est-il venu ?* or *Est-ce que votre frère est venu ?*  
Has your brother come ?

NOTE. — When the verb is preceded by an interrogative particle or by its object, the subject-noun may in many cases optionally be placed after its verb. — Ex. *Où est votre frère ?* (or *Où votre frère est-il ?*) 'Where is your brother ?' *Combien vaut cela ?* (or *Combien cela vaut-il ?*) 'How much is that worth ?' *Quel livre a votre frère ?* (or *Quel livre votre frère a-t-il ?*) 'What book has your brother ?' *Que veut cette femme ?* (or *Cette femme que veut-elle ?*) 'What does the woman want ?' *Qu'a cet homme ?* (or *Cet homme qu'a-t-il ?*) 'What is the matter with this man ?'

[415.] In optative or conditional phrases not introduced by a conjunction, the subject follows the verb. — Ex.

*Puisse-t-il réussir !*

May he succeed !

*Me préservent les cieux d'un  
tel malheur !*

Heaven preserve me from such  
a calamity !

*Je le ferai, dùt-il m'en coûter  
la vie.*

I shall do it, even if it should  
cost me my life.

*Ils auraient résisté, n'eût été  
le canon.*

They would have resisted, but  
for the cannon.

[416.] When another word than the subject introduces the sentence, the subject is frequently (though often more or less optionally) placed after its verb. Thus :

a. The noun-subject frequently follows its verb when the phrase begins with (1.) a word introducing an **indirect question** (*qui*, *ce que*, *comment*, etc.) or an **indefinite concession** (*qui que*, *quel que*, *tout que*, etc.) ; — (2.) an **adverb or adverbial expression** of time, space, or circumstance (*alors*, *ici*, *ainsi*, *au milieu*, etc.) ; — (3.) the **relative** *que*, *quel*, or *où* ; — (4.) a **predicate adjective** (especially *tel*). — Ex.

## 1.

*Dites-moi qui sont ces jeunes gens.* Tell me who these young people are.

*Je lui demandai comment lui était advenu ce secours inattendu.* I asked him how this unexpected assistance was rendered him.

*Quel que soit cet homme, il n'est pas poli.* Whoever this man be, he is not polite.

*Quelque habile que soit votre sœur, elle ne réussira pas.* However skilful your sister be, she will not succeed.

## 2.

*Alors commença une lutte terrible.* Then a terrible struggle ensued (or Then began etc.).

*Ici fleurit jadis une ville opulente.* Here flourished formerly a rich city.

*À côté de mon frère était ma sœur.* Beside my brother was my sister.

*De là dépend votre salut.* On that depends your safety.

## 3.

*La loi permet souvent ce que défend l'honneur.* The law often permits what honor forbids.

*J'ai vu la place où est dressé l'échafaud.* I have seen the place where the scaffold is erected.

## 4.

*Telle était la fierté de ce peuple.* Such was the pride of this people.

*Humbles furent d'abord les pouvoirs.* Humble were at first the powers.

b. The pronoun-subject commonly follows its verb when the phrase is introduced by certain **adverbs** or **adverbial phrases**, especially such as contain a preposition or end in *-ment* (*à peine, au moins, du moins, en vain, rarement*, etc., and also others, as *aussi, encore, peut-être*). Other subjects than personal pronouns in similar cases precede their verb, being repeated,

however, as in questions (414), in the form of a personal pronoun placed after the verb. — Ex.

*À peine étais-je arrivé qu'elle entra.* Hardly had I arrived when she entered.

*À peine mon frère était-il arrivé qu'elle entra.* Hardly had my brother arrived when she entered.

*En vain (or Vainement) l'ai-je dit.* In vain did I say so.

*Peut-être pourrai-je un jour vous être utile.* Perhaps one day I shall be able to serve you.

*Peut-être mon père pourra-t-il un jour vous être utile.* Perhaps one day my father may be able to serve you.

[417.] In phrases like *dit-il*, *s'écria-t-il*, etc., inserted in the middle or at the end of a quotation, the subject follows its verb, as usually in English. — Ex. *Consolez-vous, dit-il, tout ira bien. Elle est morte, s'écria-t-il. Bien, répondit le roi.*

NOTE. — Such interjected phrases are in French very common, and sometimes used where *dit* etc. has already a subject: e.g. *Alors le sublime orateur, élevant sa voix, Dieux protecteurs d'Athènes s'écria-t-il*, etc.

[418.] Exceptionally, the verb itself introduces an affirmative statement. — Ex. *Vinrent ensuite deux cents hommes armés* 'Finally came two hundred armed men.'

Poetry allows much more freedom of arrangement than prose: cf. 426.

---

## XIX.

### PUNCTUATION AND USE OF CAPITALS.

**419. PUNCTUATION.** — The rules of punctuation are so similar in French and English that any difference of usage in special cases depends rather on individual option or preference than on difference of principle.

NOTE. — French, more consistently than English, requires a colon before any direct quotation.

**420. CAPITAL LETTERS.** — The rules for the use of capital initials are, with few exceptions, the same in French and English, a certain option being, in certain cases, reserved in either. French, however, contrary to English, requires a small initial:

a. In adjectives denoting nation, party, or sect, and also in names of languages. — Ex. *un livre français* 'a French book'; *un prêtre catholique* 'a Catholic priest'; *le français* 'the French language'; *l'anglais* 'the English language.'

NOTE. — Nouns denoting nation, party, or sect usually have a capital initial, though usage varies when they refer to individuals. — Ex. *Un Français* (or *français*) 'a Frenchman'; *les Français* 'the French' (viz. people); *les Protestants* 'the Protestants'; *les Gibelins* 'the Ghibellines.'

b. In names of the months and of the days of the week. — Ex. *mai, juin; lundi, mardi.*

c. In the pronoun *je* 'I.'

---

## XX.

### FRENCH VERSE.

**421. GENERAL CHARACTER.** — The construction of French verse differs from that of either classical (Greek and Latin) or Germanic.

The essential element of Classical verse was rhythm (*ῥυθμός* 'regular movement') as determined by a regular recurrence, at short and measured intervals, of a syllable with 'musical' stress (*ictus*, entirely independent of the word or sentence-accent), intervening syllables being arranged in various though definite order, with regard to their quantity. — The chief element of modern Germanic verse (English included) is, likewise, rhythm, but a rhythm which, though largely borrowed from classical models, is determined not by musical accent, but by

the natural accent of the words in the verse, and not by the quantity of intervening unaccented syllables but, prevailing at least, by their number. To this essential requirement of accentual rhythm in the Germanic verse, rhyme has been added as an accessory element, which may be present or not.

In French verse, finally, the essential elements are also **rhythm and rhyme**. But the rhythm of the French verse is something quite different from that of either the classical or Germanic verse. The only definite metrical law observed in French poetry is that each portion of the verse-line that can be uttered without fatigue of the voice — *i.e.* practically, every short line, or each part of a longer line divided into two — shall contain a **definite number of syllables** and terminate in a word whose final sonant-syllable has a full **rhetorical accent**, and thus naturally requires, or at least allows, a brief pause (in the middle of the line called *cæsura*). Between these final syllables, which form the pivots of the French verse, neither accent nor quantity are regulated by any other law than that which requires, in a general way, variation of accentual rhythm and harmony of combination.

The absence in the French verse of regular and sustained rhythmical pulsation within each line, such as is characteristic of the English verse, is apt to offend, at first, the ear of one used to the latter. To the French ear, however, the freedom and variation of his verse is preferable to the regulated accentual beat of the Germanic verse, in which he is apt to perceive something of monotony; and practice will soon teach even a stranger to appreciate the harmonious movement of good French verse.

In compensation for this freedom of rhythm, **rhyme** has become a well-nigh indispensable element in French poetry.<sup>1</sup> Moreover, the French poet imposes on himself certain pro-

---

<sup>1</sup> Assonance (accordance of last tone-vowels simply) was characteristic of the oldest French poetry, and is yet used in popular songs.



sodial laws, in part tending to promote harmony, but in part also more or less artificial. Thus especially he avoids **hiatus**,<sup>1</sup> except in a few cases where a formerly pronounced consonant has become silent. Further he gives, archaically, full **syllabic value to every e mute** that has a consonant before and after it, except at the end of the line. Again, he is restricted in his choice of words and constructions by certain principles, the neglect of which would tend to deprive his verse of its poetical effect.

The essentials of the French verse that are briefly sketched out above, are considered more in detail below.

**422. NUMBER OF SYLLABLES; CÆSURA.** — The number of pronounced syllables that may be contained in one line varies from two to twelve. Short lines counting less than six syllables are rarely used except in alternation with longer lines. Lines of ten or twelve syllables are divided into two parts (*hemistichs*), separated by a short pause, or **cæsure**, which in lines of ten syllables comes after the 4th syllable, or sometimes the 6th, but in lines of twelve syllables usually after the 6th.

— Ex.

	1	2		3		4		5		6	7	8	
	Un	jour,		seul		dans		le		Colisée,			
	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.

	1	2	3		4		5		6		7	8	9		10	11	12
	Oui,	je	viens		dans		son		temple			adorer		l'Éternel,			
	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.

**423. E MUTE SOUNDED.** — In any syllable not ending a verse-line, **e 'mute'** is slightly **sounded** and counted as full vowel of **syllabic value**, except before or after a vowel-sound, where it is silent as in prose (cf. note 1). Thus, the combina-

<sup>1</sup> Old French poetry was much less rigid in avoiding hiatus than modern French.

<sup>2</sup> Roman type here used for *e* without syllabic value (423).

tions *faire ce*, *faites-le* would each in the middle of a line count three syllables, and *faire avec*, *feraient ce*, *la joie est* also only three. In the last syllable of the line it is also faintly uttered (thus serving to bring out the harmonious interchange between masculine and feminine rhymes: 425); but does **not** count **syllabically**. Thus, *nous sommes* would in the middle of a line count as three syllables, but at the end only as two. — Ex.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12  
*Telle qu'une bergère, || au plus beau jour de fête.*

NOTE 1. — *E* mute is not allowed to form hiatus with a preceding vowel. Hence it is either replaced by a circumflex, especially in future and conditional of verbs (e.g. *lou<sup>rai</sup>* for *louerai*: 128; *gaî<sup>te</sup>* for *gaieté*); or it is simply silent, as in prose (e.g. *aimaient*, 2 syll.). As final, after vowel, it can occur only when followed by a vowel (before which it is elided), the resulting hiatus being then tolerated (e.g. *la joie est*, but not *la joie que* etc.).

NOTE 2. — To aid in making up the required number of syllables, several words with an *e* mute in their end-syllable are allowed to be slightly changed. Thus we may find *encor* for *encore*, *ay* for *aie*, *certe* for *certes*, *jusques* (also allowed in prose, before vowel) for *jusque*, *Londre* for *Londres*, and so on. Instead of *avec* is also sometimes used *avecque*.

NOTE 3. — The distinction between diphthongs and dissyllabics (cf. 16) is in verse, at times, quite arbitrary. *Oi* is, indeed, always treated as a diphthong, but *ie*, *io* sometimes as dissyllabics where they would not be so treated in prose.

**424. HIATUS.** — Between two words, hiatus (meeting of vowels) is not allowed, except 1. when the final of the first word is *e* preceded by a vowel (423 note 1); or 2. when it is a mute unlinked consonant (e.g. *huissier*, *ayez garde*).

NOTE. — *Et* 'and' is not used before a vowel.

NOTE. — As the phrase *il y a* 'there is' contains a hiatus, it is in verse regularly supplanted by *il est*.

**425. RHYME.** — There are in French two kinds of rhyme: **masculine**, when the rhyming syllables are final (e.g. *mâr*: *pur*), and **feminine**, when they are followed by an *e* 'mute' (e.g. *mâre*: *pure*). Masculine and feminine rhymes are required to alternate, though with considerable freedom of arrangement.

NOTE 1.—The chief quality of French rhyme is sameness of **sound**. But, as an inheritance from a time when final letters were pronounced, some really rhyming words that terminate in discordant, though now mute, letters (others than *d : t*, *c : g*, or *s : x, z*) are not allowed to rhyme. Thus *père : mères*; *peux : feu*; *plier : fiez* would not be acceptable rhyme-couples, while *autant : attend*; *banc : rang*; *fais : paix* would be so.

NOTE 2.—The final *s* of the 1st singular of a verb (an anomalous addition: p. 61) may be omitted to make the verb-form rhyme to the eye with another word not ending in *s* (e.g. *vien, voi, béni* for *viens, vois, bénis*).

**426. CHOICE OF WORDS AND CONSTRUCTIONS.**—French poetry like English, only in a higher degree, is characterized by the exclusion of certain common terms and by much freedom of construction. Thus:

a.—It prefers, in the serious style, certain more poetical words, for others more common, as for instance *glaive* or *fer* for *épée*; *épieu* for *lance*; *flanc* for *ventre* or *sein*; *jadis* for *autrefois*; *maint* (-te) for *plusieurs*; *soudain* for *aussitôt*; *trépas* for *mort*; *courroux* for *colère*; etc.

b.—In the arrangement of the sentence it allows, or even prefers, certain irregularities, as, especially, that of placing a modifier before its verb.—Ex.

*Ma sœur, de votre sort || je vous laisse l'empire.*

*Et tous devant l'autel || avec ordre introduits,*

**427. ENJAMBEMENT.**—In French poetry (especially classical: 428) it is objectionable to have a line terminate with a word that is in too close construction with a word in the following line to allow a natural pause (such a 'striding over' from one line to another being called **enjambement**). Thus, to separate on different lines (or even on different hemistichs) *son cœur aimable* or *il aime cette femme* etc. would be unpoetical, especially when in lines of ten or twelve syllables.

**428.** Some of the rules described above, as those referring to *hiatus* and *enjambement*, are much less strictly observed by modern poets, especially those of the Romantic school, than they were by the poets of the classical school (in the 17th and 18th centuries).

**429.** One line is usually called a **verse**. A certain number of verses forming a unit by themselves, constitute a **stance** (or

in an ode a **strophe**, or in a ballad a **couplet**). A stanza again is called *quatrain*, *quintil*, *sixain*, etc. according to the number of syllables (4, 5, 6, etc.) it contains. Several stanzas form a **poem**, their number being undetermined, except in a few kinds of poems, as in the *sonnet* and the *rondeau*.

#### EXAMPLES OF VARIOUS KINDS OF VERSE:

a. — *Alexandrines*. — In larger poems and especially in dramatic compositions, lines of twelve full syllables divided into two hemistichs, and usually with masculine and feminine rhymes in alternate couplets, are much used. Such verses are called *Alexandrines*, probably as being first used on a large scale in a poem about Alexander the Great (*Roman d'Alexandre*) in the latter part of the 12th century. They were once much more common than they are now, even outside of France, and the 18th century has, in fact, been called 'the age of *Alexandrines*.' — In the example below, *cæsura* and rhythmically prominent syllables<sup>1</sup> are marked :

*Oui, je viens dans son temple* || *adorer l'Éternel ;*  
*Je viens selon l'usage* || *antique et solennel*  
*Célébrer avec vous* || *la fameuse journée*  
*Où sur le mont Sina* || *la loi nous fut donnée*  
*Que les temps sont changés !* || *Sitôt que de ce jour*  
*La trompette sacrée* || *annonçait le retour,*  
*Du temple, orné partout* || *de festons magnifiques,*  
*Le peuple saint en foule* || *inondait les portiques ;*

. . . . .

#### b. — Verses of ten syllables :

*À Nevers donc,* || *chez les Visitandines*  
*Vivait naguère* || *un Perroquet fameux,*  
*À qui son art* || *et son cœur généreux,*

---

<sup>1</sup> In declamation of course taste decides how much prominence should be given to these syllables.

*Ses vertus même || et ses grâces badines,  
 Auraient dû faire || un sort moins rigoureux,  
 Si les beaux cœurs || étaient toujours heureux.*

c. — Verses of eight syllables (very common):

*Quand on se rencontre et qu'on s'aime,  
 Que peut-on échanger de mieux  
 Que la prière, don suprême,  
 Or pur qu'on reçoit même aux cieux ?*

d. — Mixed verses :

*Lorsque l'enfant paraît || le cercle de famille  
 Applaudit à grand cris || son doux regard qui brille  
 Fait briller tous les yeux,  
 Et les plus tristes fronts || les plus souillés peut-être,  
 Se dérident soudain || à voir l'enfant paraître  
 Innocent et joyeux.*

---

## XXI.

### RELATION OF ANGLO-FRENCH AND FRENCH WORDS.<sup>1</sup>

**430. FRENCH WORDS IN ENGLISH.**—A very large portion of the English vocabulary is of **French** origin. The bulk of its French elements was brought into English in consequence of the Norman conquest (1066). The obstinate resistance of the Saxons against the Normans led to their exclusion from all offices of state; and the language of the conquerors became the official language of the government and the

---

<sup>1</sup> For a fuller discussion of this subject, cf. the author's *Quelques observations sur l'élément roman de l'anglais considéré dans ses rapports avec le français moderne* (Acta Universitatis Lundensis, xix).

fashionable dialect of all the upper classes. Even the instruction of the schools was given in French alone.

During more than two centuries, the Saxon idiom, retained by the lower classes, and looked down upon by the higher as a rude jargon, kept almost entirely free from any influence of the French, as is shown by the two poems, Layamon's the Brut and the Ormulum. But later a vast body of French words was added to those of native stock; and the English of the latter part of the 14th century reveals the fact that, owing chiefly to a severing of political ties between England and France, the interests of the upper and lower classes, as well as their two languages, had then begun to blend. This assimilating process continued, with various fluctuations, during the following centuries. To the Anglo-Norman element many words borrowed directly from French were added in the course of time. The whole number of French elements engrafted on the English stock is so large that, from a dictionary point of view, they compete with those of native origin. (The entire number of foreign words considerably surpasses that of the native.) The Saxon words, however, being of much more familiar use than the French and making up almost entirely such categories of frequently recurring words as pronouns and indeclinables, are, as actually used by classical and modern writers, in a very decided, though of course varying, majority.

[431.] **PROPORTION OF FRENCH WORDS.** — A careful estimation of all the words in Skeat's etymological dictionary (i.e. of the 'primitive' words of the language) gives the following results in round numbers:<sup>1</sup> Out of nearly 14,000 words that it contains, 5,000 are considered to be derived from French (which has received 3,500 of these words from Latin, the remainder from other sources, chiefly Greek and German). Only 4,000 are of Germanic origin (a trifle above 3,000 purely

---

<sup>1</sup> See foot-note, p. 242.

Saxon). The remainder are from Latin (2,700), Greek (400), Celtic (250), or other sources. — Taking into account also derived words, these proportions would change in favor of the German element, Germanic primitives having yielded a much greater number of derivatives than French.

[432.] With the French element of the English language the purely Latin element must not be confounded. Already the introduction of Christianity among the Anglo-Saxons (7th cent.) brought with it the study of Latin, and many Latin words were popularized (e.g. *presbyter* : *priest* ; *prædicare* : *preach* ; *diabolus* : *devil*, etc.). When, in the 16th century, the classical literature became known to English scholars, a considerable influx of Latin elements took place, later increased by the necessities of science, commerce, and industry. The Latin words can generally be distinguished from the French by their form, which is less altered, and by their prevailingly technical use. Yet, it is not always feasible, even by more scientific tests, to decide the immediate source in this respect, because many French words have in English (as indeed in French) been reformed in their spelling so as to come nearer their ultimate classical origin : thus the old *sugette* was changed to *subject* ; *iuge* to *judge* ; *marchant* to *merchant* ; *voicinage* to *vicinage* ; etc.

**433. DIFFERENCE IN FORM BETWEEN ANGLO-FRENCH AND FRENCH WORDS.** — It is natural that Anglo-French and French words should gradually diverge more and more in form as they lived a separate life under different circumstances, each yielding to the tendencies of a different language. Their pronunciation is never alike. In writing they are, indeed, sometimes identical (e.g. *mention*, *portion*, etc.). Far more frequently, however, they differ ; for the most part so slightly as to be recognized as cognates at a glance, or after but little familiarity with the commonest changes (e.g. Fr. *élégant* : Engl. *elegant* ; *concoure* : *concourse* ; *ancêtre* : *ancestor* ; *coupable* : *culpable* ; *épice* : *spice* ; *chanter* : *chant*, etc.) ; but also often so as to require a more practised eye for their identification as twin-forms (e.g. Fr. *côte* : Engl. *coast* ; *proie* : *prey* ; *huître* : *oyster* ; *guerre* : *war* ; *quichet* : *wicket* ; *éteule* : *stubble* ; *flasque* : *flaccid*, etc.).

A few of the more common peculiarities of the Anglo-French forms as compared with the native French are noted below.

[434.] The Anglo-French words gradually yielded to the tendency in English of accenting (emphatically) the beginning instead of the end of the word. As a consequence, atonic syllables were generally dimmed or lost (e.g. Fr. *chapitre*, *capitaine*, *gentil*, *demoiselle*, *branche* = Engl. *chapter*, *captain*, *gentle*, *damsel*, *branch*). A wide-reaching result of this principle was the loss of the French infinitive-ending, after its previous assimilation to that of English, formerly *-en*, as in German (e.g. old Fr. *chant-er*, *abat-re*, *obe-ir* = o. Engl. *chant-en*, *abat-en*, *obey-en* = Engl. *chant*, *abate*, *obey*).

[435.] On the other hand, many Anglo-French words, by regular transmission or artificial reform (432), contain various sounds or letters (chiefly consonants and tone-vowels) that were lost or altered in French. Thus, for instance, the English words *barge*, *function*, *glory*, *judge*, *bailiff*, *pilgrim*, *hostage*, *market*, *gim(b)let*, *corne*, *staple*, *liquorice*, *varlet*, *arrest*, *court*, *waste*, have each one sound or several which, though formerly present in old French forms, are lost or altered in the modern: *berge*, *fonction*, *gloire*, *juge*, *bailli*, *pèlerin*, *otage*, *marché*, *gibelet*, *cor*, *étape*, *régisse*, *valet*, *arrêter*, *cour*, *gâter*.

[436.] In virtue of this preserving tendency, it is especially common to find in Anglo-French words an old *s* or *l* which is lost in French. Nearly 200 English primary words have such an etymological *s*, and not far from a hundred, *l*.<sup>1</sup> The loss of *s* within a French word is usually there indicated by a circumflex: e.g. Engl. *coast*: Fr. *côte* (old Fr. *coste*, Lat. *costa*); *cost*: *coûter* (o. F. *coster*, L. *constare*); *cloister*: *cloître* (o. F. *cloistre*, L. *claustrum*); *honest*: *honnête* (o. F. *honeste*, L. *ho-*

---

<sup>1</sup> See foot-note, p. 242.



*nestus*); *oyster*: *huttre* (o. F. *oistre*, L. *ostrea*); but also *discover*: *découvrir* (o. F. *descouvrir*); etc.

Latin initial *sc(h)-*, *st-*, *sp-*, usually taking in popular Latin a prothetic *i* (later *e*), became in old French *esc-*, *est-*, *esp-*, and then by the loss of *s* (retained in Anglo-French) *éc-*, *ét-*, *ép-* (cf. 1. II.). Hence Engl. *esquire* or *squire*: Fr. *écuyer* (o. F. *escuyer*, low Lat. *scutarius*); *espy* or *spy*: *épier* (o. Fr. *espier*, O. H. Germ. *spehon*); *spice*: *épice* (o. F. *espice*, L. *species*); *stable*: *étable* (o. F. *estable*, L. *stabulum*); etc.

The lost *l* is in French usually changed to *u*: e.g. Engl. *culpable*: Fr. *coupable* (o. F. *culpable*, L. *culpabilis*); *mantel* or *mantle*: *manteau* (o. F. *mantel*, L. *mantellum*); *chisel*: *ciseau* (o. F. *cisel*); *fault*: *faute* (o. F. *faulte*, L. *fallere*); *pencil*: *pinceau* (o. F. *pincel*, L. *penicillum*), etc.

[437.] It is also well to notice that several Germanic words that have come through old French into English have there retained a primitive *w*, which in French was changed to *gu* or *g* (as such also, in part, by later transfer brought into English): e.g. Engl. *reward* (= *regard*): Fr. *regarder* (o. F. *rewarder*); *wardrobe*: *garderobe* (o. F. *warderobe*); *wicket*: *guichet* (o. F. *wisket*, *viquet*); etc.

[438.] Owing to the fact that both in English and French words of classical origin have frequently, by learned reform of spelling (also, in part, affecting the pronunciation), been brought nearer the originals, it is not always easy to decide whether such apparent archaisms, as those pointed out above are to be considered as genuine, i.e. transmitted by general usage, or simply accidental.

[439.] Among other changes may be noticed the frequent attachment of an English suffix to an Anglo-French word: e.g. *motion-less*, *pain-ful*, *pain-less*, *pain-ful-ness*, *nice-ly*, *cease-less*, *charm-er*, etc.

**440. DIFFERENCE IN MEANING BETWEEN ANGLO-FRENCH AND FRENCH WORDS.**—The meaning of words is subject to change not less than their form, and the student will do well to observe carefully any distinction in sense between French

words and their Anglo-French cognates. Even here it is natural that French and Anglo-French words, subject to varied influences, should gradually diverge. Different conditions have on either side expanded, restricted, or otherwise modified the sense of originally common words. The divergence is, indeed, at times so slight as to be appreciated only by the nicest observation. *Respectable* means in both English and French 'worthy of respect,' but the moral tone deciding what is worthy of respect is not in all cases precisely the same; *sentiment* usually means the same thing in English and French, yet *un sentiment de la musique* is 'a sense of music,' *un sentiment* (Littré; or *sensation*) *de la faim* 'a feeling of hunger,' *un sentiment* (or *sensation*) *dans le bras* 'a feeling in the arm'; English and French *religion* coincide in general use, yet the French *sa religion pour le serment* is in English 'his pious regard for an oath'; *marcher* is 'march,' but *il marche vite, il y arrivera* is 'he walks fast, he will get there'; and so on.

Yet more often cognate words differ in some or all of their usual acceptations. Engl. *fashion*: Fr. *façon* often accord in sense, but the meaning of 'prevailing style' is so peculiarly English (not quite covered by French *mode*) that the form *fashion* has in that signification been borrowed again into French. Engl. *barb*: Fr. *barbe* may both mean 'beard,' or, by metaphor, something resembling a beard; but while *barb* is rare in the former sense, *barbe* is the word for it (*barbe d'homme* 'a man's beard,' *barbe de chat* 'a cat's whiskers, *barbe de bouc* 'a goat's beard'); and while in their figurative sense they agree in part, yet the usual meaning of English *barb* as part of a hook or arrow is lacking in French. Engl. *viand* means 'article of food,' but *viande* usually 'meat'; Engl. *abase* is now rarely used except in a figurative sense, while Fr. *abaisser* usually means 'let down, lower'; Engl. *impeach* is obsolete in the sense of 'impede,' meaning now 'accuse,' while Fr. *empêcher* means '(impede) prevent'; Engl. *pier* is a

'solid stone-work, wharf' (of stone or wood!), but Fr. *pierre* 'stone' (Lat. *petra* 'rock'): and so on.

[441.] As might be expected, the Anglo-French words have much more frequently than the French deviated from their primitive sense. Transplanted into a new soil where they had to struggle against the Saxon words, while the rootlets of their own etymological origins could not thrive as well as in the native soil, they usually adapted their meaning to special needs or shades of thought not covered by the indigenous words. In its adjustment of original synonyms or quasi-synonyms, English, where it did not drop one of them, has prevailingly given to the French derivative the more metaphorical or elegant, and to the indigenous (esp. Saxon) the more literal or every-day sense (cf. *barb*: *beard*; *abase*: *lower*; *bounty*: *goodness*; *travail*: *work*); or the discrimination is more subtle, often one of taste (cf. *sacred*: *holy*; *flower*: *bloom*; *liberty*: *freedom*). The result has been of great benefit to the English language, whose stores of expression have been much enriched by this struggle between native and foreign words, and their mutual adaptions to different uses.

[442.] A few examples will serve to illustrate the relative conservatism of Anglo-French and French words as regards their ordinary meaning. Thus,

a. Anglo-French words less conservative than French: — Lat. *barba* 'beard': F. *barbe* 'beard,' E. *barb*; — Lat. *bonitas* 'goodness': F. *bonté* 'goodness,' E. *bounty*; — Lat. *clavis* 'key': F. *clef* 'key,' E. *clef*; — Lat. *colligere* 'collect': F. *cueillir* 'collect,' E. *coil*; — Lat. *acer* 'sharp': F. *aigre* 'sharp,' E. *eager*; — Lat. *folium* 'leaf': F. *feuille* 'leaf,' E. *foil* (as tin foil etc.); — Lat. *diurnus* 'daily': F. *journée* 'day,' E. *journey* (orig'lly of a day); — Lat. *penna* 'feather': F. *penne* 'tail-feather,' E. *pen*; — Lat. *sequere* 'follow': F. *suiivre* (o. F. *suir*) 'follow,' E. *sue*; — Lat. *scintilla* 'spark': F. *étincelle* 'spark,' E. *tinsel*; — Lat. *petra* 'rock': F. *pierre* 'stone,' E. *pier*.

b. Anglo-French words more conservative than French: — Lat. *pinna* 'wing': F. *pignon* 'gable' (Norm. Fr. 'wing'), E. *pinion*; — Lat. *usus*

'use': F. *user* 'wear (out),' as intr. also 'make use' (*de* 'of'), E. 'use'; — Lat. *separare* 'separate': F. *sevrer* 'wean (a child),' E. *sever*; — low Lat. *vivenda* (fr. *vivere* 'live'): F. *viande* 'meat,' E. *viand*.


c. 'Anglo-French and French words both deviating from their etymological sense: — Lat. *cara* 'face': F. *chère* 'entertainment,' E. *cheer*; — Lat. *continere* 'hold together': F. *contenance* 'deportment, air,' E. *countenance*; — Lat. *stare* 'stand': F. *étage* 'story = floor,' E. *stage*; — old Germ. *warjan* 'defend': F. *guérite* 'sentry-box, watch-tower,' E. *garret*; — Lat. *trabs* 'beam,' *trave* (to confine horses when shod): F. *travail* 'work' (pl. *travails* 'brakes, traves,' 49. 4), E. *travail*, *travel*.

**443. ANGLO-FRENCH WORDS WHOSE ORIGINALS ARE LOST IN MODERN FRENCH.** — Words not only change in form and meaning. They also often grow obsolete and are dropped out of use, now in favor of some other word, now without any such substitute; sometimes forever, sometimes to be resuscitated and enter again as current coin into the language. English has thus lost many an Anglo-French word which it once possessed (e.g. *devoir*, *egal*, *sperance*, *misericorde*, *penible*, *petit*, *roy* yet Scotch, *rivage*, *scrimmer*, etc.). On the other hand, English has also preserved not a few words which, once borrowed from old French, have died out in modern French. It is not always easy to say when a word should be considered as obsolescent or abandoned. But even counting liberally as modern such French words as are doubtful in this respect, the vocabulary of the English language is found to contain about 300 words once present as type-forms in old French, but lost or replaced by other words (kindred or not) in modern French.<sup>1</sup> A few of the common ones are given, as examples, below.

*Abeyance*, *affiance*, *aggrieve*, *alas*, *amount*, *arraign*, *arson*, *avenge*, *barter*, *benison*, *bondage*, *canvass*, *carol*, *cavil*, *challenge*, *claim*, *cloak*, *contemn*, *contend*, *dainty*, *deface*, *delight*, *discrepant*, *disturb*, *encounter*, *enhance*, *entice*, *entreat*, *feature*, *genial*, *host*, *involve*, *motley*, *navy*, *obedient*, *ointment*, *peculiar*, *pilfer*, *plenty*, *quaint*, *quiver*, *rear*, *rehearse*, *relish*, *remain*, *remote*, *revel*, *rob*, *satchel*, *scorn*, *solemn*, *sullen*, *surrender*, *vouch*, etc.

<sup>1</sup> For full list cf. the work referred to foot-note, p. 242.

## EXERCISES TO THE SYNTAX.

 Exercises in fine print correspond to rules in fine print. They may then be omitted in a first course. Help is given the student only in less obvious cases and where the reference-paragraphs of each exercise, which should be well mastered, do not furnish the required key. For general reference the vocabulary and the index may be consulted. Articles, numerals, pronouns, and proper names, when identical in French and English, are not repeated in the Vocabulary.

---

### I.

#### *The Definite Article (180-195).*

A. 1. This woman has a little mouth and blue eyes. 2. The wolf has a long head, a thin nose, and small ears. 3. Fénelon had a good heart and a penetrating mind. 4. This tree has a hard bark, a high trunk, and slender branches. 5. He is always seen (*tr.* One sees him *a.*) with a pen in his hand. 6. He entered with his hat in his hand. 7. That cloth costs two dollars a yard. 8. Meat is sold (*refl.*) at eighteen cents a pound. 9. I have bought his cloth at five francs a yard. 10. The bookseller has sold one third of his books. 11. General A. has shown his horses to Lieutenant B. — B. 12. Ancient Rome was a glorious city. 13. France is now a republic. 14. Asia is much larger than Europe. 15. The Pyrenees separate France from Spain. 16. The scenery on the Rhine is magnificent. 17. My brother lives in (*en*) Germany. 18. These emigrants come from Sweden. 19. I am going to (*en*) America. 20. The empire of Russia and the kingdom of Spain. 21. The army of Italy (*i.e.* the French army, so called) accomplished in Europe the work of the French revolution.

A. 1. Those horses have beautiful necks. 2. Their minds are tired

(*transl.* They have tired minds). 3. He has lost his courage. 4. My sister has a headache. 5. I have a severe toothache. 6. You weary yourself for a trifle. 7. I wish you welcome. 8. This poor man has not a farthing. 9. Somebody cries for help. — B. 10. Locke, Montesquieu, and Rousseau have enlightened (141) us by their writings. 11. Washington was the Cincinnatus of America. 12. He is in Canada. 13. This bold man ascended Mont Blanc. 14. He lives in southern France (in Great Britain). 15. The emperor of France and the queen of Great Britain. 16. He is going to India. 17. He comes from Mexico. 18. English cheese is very good. 19. I have studied the history of France with much pleasure, but I have not read the history of the Netherlands. 20. The American ambassador was once a German merchant. 21. Naples is a delightful country. 22. The Mississippi is immense. 23. Rhine wines are excellent.

## II.

*The Generic Article (195–6).*

1. Man is weak. 2. Men fade away (*passent*) like flowers. 3. A man has rights (*partitive*) which he can not (*ne saurait*) sacrifice. 4. Life is a continuous combat. 5. Moderation is the wise man's treasure. 6. Patience and prudence are necessary to a general. 7. Iron is a useful metal. 8. Water is the most healthful of drinks. 9. Rich people have no other rights than poor people. 10. Blue becomes you better than green. 11. My sister is learning French, but she does not yet speak French.

## III.

*The Partitive Sign (197–201).*

A. 1. I have eaten bread and meat. 2. That man has courage (*cœur*). 3. With courage (*courage*) and perseverance you will succeed. 4. Rome was at first governed by kings. 5. You must not (*Il ne faut pas*) think too much of (*à*) money and clothes. 6. He has beautiful pictures and excellent books. 7. I bring you good news. 8. He will surely rise to high dignities. 9. I have bought some black silk. 10. Your brother devotes himself to deep studies. 11. That man has no courage

(*cœur*); that woman has no feelings. 12. The Turks never drink any wine. 13. You ought not to make any remarks on the subject (*là-dessus*). 14. She has no such mean feelings. 15. I shall not make useless remarks on the subject. 16. That is not wine, it is water. 17. We live on (*de*) bread and meat. 18. She was overwhelmed with flattery. 19. We are in need of money. 20. This work is full of sound thoughts. — B. 21. A great number of soldiers have passed through the city. 22. A crowd of curious people followed him. 23. I have bought two pounds of sugar, a pound of coffee, and five pounds of tea. 24. This man has many acquaintances and few friends. 25. It is not polite to (*de*) ask (*faire*) too many questions. 26. I have many (*or* plenty of: *bien*) books. 27. I have more books than my brother. 28. Many (*bien*) persons were present. 29. Most people are industrious.

1. Has she any grandsons? 2. This man has good sense. 3. Has he not money and friends? What more does he need? 4. He showed some manliness on this occasion. 5. He sells good cloth and bad. 6. We have white silk and also black. 7. There are good and bad people in this world. 8. I have something new to (*à*) tell you. 9. There were (136) eight hundred killed and five hundred wounded. 10. Which (271) is the happier, you or I?

#### IV.

#### *Repetition and Omission of Articles and Partitive Sign* (202–204).

1. This woman sells apples and pears. 2. Good and candid friends are rare. 3. This poor man is hungry (204. A. 1). 4. I am sleepy. 5. What kind of weather is it ('What weather makes it') to-day? 6. It is very fine weather to-day. 7. I have opened the windows purposely. 8. He said he would do it with pleasure. 9. I am an Englishman. 10. Charles has become a big boy. 11. My father was a physician. 12. He was made (*tr.* One made him) general. 13. He comes from Caen, a city in (*de*) Normandy. 14. The Miser, a comedy by Molière, is played to-night. 15. Children, parents, friends, all bewailed him.

1. He is hungry and thirsty. 2. I am cold; I am not warm. 3. He was afraid. 4. She will be ashamed of her folly. 5. He is right, but you are wrong. 6. The children are sleepy. 7. I shall ask justice. 8. These children do not pay (make: *font*) attention. 9. She excites (*fait*) envy. 10. He fired (*tr.* made fire). 11. She is homely enough to (*à*) frighten people (*tr.* make fright). 12. He looks pleased. 13. Take care. 14. Take breath. 15. She takes part in (*à*) our society. 16. I shall do him justice. 17. I shall visit this lady. 18. I shall find means to do it. 19. He was on horseback. 20. I did it on purpose. 21. I shall do it with pleasure. 22. I am without fear. 23. I take her as (*pour*) a model. 24. He receives me with (*à*) open arms. 25. I have bought these books at a great cost. 26. First volume, third chapter. 27. He lives in Washington street. 28. He is (*Il est*) a Frenchman; it is (*c'est*) a Frenchman. 29. His brother is a merchant. 30. Emily has become a big girl. 31. These men are soldiers; these men are soldiers that come from the war. 32. They are (*Ils sont*) English. 33. Augustus, the nephew of Cæsar. 34. Rich and poor, high and low were animated with (*de*) the same ardor. 35. This poor girl has neither father nor mother, and she is without money.

## V.

*Nouns (206–208).*

1. His brother was made captain in the guards. 2. They became (*transl.* made themselves) nuns. 3. His uncle has been appointed minister to France. 4. I consider him (to be) an honest man. 5. There is the man who gave my child some apples. 6. I have made my friend read your letter (208, note 1). 7. Make that girl tell the truth (208, note 1). 8. I have made him say it (208, note 1, 2). 9. Pride and vanity cause men to commit many follies. 10. I have heard them say these words. 11. He has shown these girls his collection of pictures. 12. I have seen him try it. 13. I shall make them do it.

## VI.

*Nouns with Prepositions (209–217).*

1. My father's books have come from Paris. 2. He has (*est*: 142) died from hunger. 3. He repents (*refl.*) of his conduct.



4. She is loved by everybody. 5. I have bought English steel. 6. They overwhelmed him with praises. 7. Do not accustom your heart to envy and hatred. 8. A son owes obedience (*no art.*) to his parents. 9. Let us put that off (*imp've, 1 pl.*) until to-morrow. 10. He is exposed to the sun. His brother lives in Boston and his sister in the country. 11. Birds fly in the air. 12. This thing has (*est: 142*) fallen into a deep oblivion. 13. My uncle lives in Great Britain, and my brother in Germany. 14. This happened in the year 1850. 15. He was here last summer in July. 16. He defends himself as (*214*) a brave man. 17. It was no longer (*Ce ne furent plus: 252, 300*) the soldiers of the republic, but of Sulla, Marius, Pompey, and Cæsar.

1. I have punished her for her fault. 2. They were armed with guns. 3. Your success depends on your perseverance. 4. She has many (*bien or beaucoup*) friends. 5. This wall is thirty feet high (*express in three different ways*). 6. This table is six feet long. 7. The weight of that box is twenty kilogrammes. 8. The price of this picture is three dollars. 9. I am three inches taller than he. 10. My watch is five minutes slow. 11. Do you play the violin? 12. No, I play the harp. 13. I have treated him as a friend. 14. This man has abused my kindness. 15. He serves me as model. 16. He changes his (*omit*) opinion. 17. I enjoy his favor. 18. They were approaching the city. 19. I shall redouble my efforts. 20. He perceived her falseness. 21. He suspected this treason. 22. Have you never passed over a grave without suspecting (*inf.*) it? 23. He travels on horseback. 24. They speak in a loud voice. 25. She does it on purpose. 26. My sister has the headache. 27. I have a sore arm. 28. The penknife belongs to my brother. 29. She is always thinking (*thinks always*) of her mother. 30. What are you thinking of? 31. I advise my brother to do it, and she also advises him to do it. 32. He reproaches his sister for her fault (*tr. reproaches her fault to his sister*). 33. Have you promised your teacher to be diligent? 34. I have borrowed this book from my friend. 35. He snatched the knife from the scamp. 36. Fortune can take (*ôter*) nothing from a wise man, because it gives him nothing. 37. I ask pardon of this man. 38. There is not a man in the city who knows (*subj.*) it. 39. My father dines in town (*or out of town*) to-day. 40. He will leave in two hours. 41. I shall see you again in eight days

(*d'aujourd'hui en huit*). 42. I suppose he has done it from fear. 43. Come this way, please. 44. I receive two dollars a day. 45. Troy was destroyed by the Greeks. 46. Mr. B. is respected by everybody. 47. I arrived before you. 48. He appears before the judge. 49. I have been at your father's. 50. I come from your house. 51. Be charitable towards the poor. 52. He went towards the hill.

## VII.

*Agreement of Adjectives (219-220).*

1. My good father and mother have come. 2. The poor (*sing.*) and the rich are alike before God. 3. I found the door and the window shut. 4. My brother and my sister are very happy. 5. This man has an astonishing courage and prudence. 6. It is a ruined castle or house. 7. Public order and usefulness cannot be the fruit of crime. 8. The polecat and the weasel are equally dangerous.

1. I study the French and German languages (*express in three ways*). 2. Enclosed you will find my debt of three dollars. 3. My brother speaks with much kindness of his late aunts. 4. These ladies look good-natured. 5. These stones seem (to be) very hard. 6. He was bare-headed and bare-footed. 7. I shall come in an hour or an hour and a half. 8. All except the ladies may enter. 9. She sings false. 10. These paintings cost dear.

## VIII.

*Place of Adjectives (221-223).*

1. Mary is a nice girl, and Henry is a pretty little boy. 2. My neighbor is a laborious man. 3. I have bought a round table. 4. This famous lawyer is also an amiable and virtuous man. 5. I like the blue sky, the high trees, and the green fields. 6. This virtuous queen was much beloved, as are (*comme le sont*: 250, b) all (292) virtuous persons. 7. This man is an English merchant. 8. Have you ever read a French poem? 9. History is an interesting and instructive study. 10. An affected simplicity is a delicate deception. 11. A plain, natural style is the only one to be recommended. 12. I like

the simple and cordial manners of the Scotch. 13. Montaigne, the greatest thinker of his time, enriched the young and unformed literature of France with his profound and brilliant essays.

1. That is the finest picture (*add that*, 281) I have ever seen. 2. Gustavus Adolphus was a truly great man. 3. Charles is an honest lad, but I do not know whether he is a brave boy. 4. He is a poor actor, but he is not a poor man. 5. He is a tall man, but he is not a great man. 6. His action betrays a black ingratitude. 7. My honored brethren, this is a hard necessity.

## IX.

*Comparison (224-231).*

1. France is about as large as Germany, but it is not so large as Russia. 2. He is witty (*Il a de l'esprit*) like a Frenchman. 3. The dog is more faithful than the cat. 4. This young man is taller by two inches than his brother, who is three years older. 5. He has been married more than two years. 6. This wine is worse than water. 7. France has more than 500,000 soldiers. 8. America is the greatest and the most powerful republic in the world. 9. They are my dearest and most faithful friends. 10. He is the bravest man in (*de*: 211, d) the world.

1. The more difficult a thing is, the more honorable it is. 2. The poorer people are, the fewer cares they have. 3. That girl speaks better than she writes (*n'écrit*: 386). 4. I like this flower, but I like that one yet more. 5. The best thing you can do is (*c'est*: 266, b) to fulfil your duties. 6. This stream is deepest at its outlet. 7. That is certainly the least (that) he can do.

## X.

*Numerals (233-237).*

1. Louis XVI, king of France, was beheaded at Paris on the 21st of January, 1793. 2. What time is it? 3. It is three o'clock; it is a quarter past three; it is half past three; it is

a quarter to four; it is ten minutes past three; it is twelve minutes before ten; it is twelve. 4. What day of the month is it? 5. It is the twentieth. 6. To-day (411. a) is the fourth of July. 7. How old is your sister? 8. She is fifteen years old.

1. I have been here already half a year, but you have been here only a fortnight. 2. I shall return in a week.

## XI.

### *Personal Pronouns (239-256).*

Review carefully 100-105.

1. He knows me, and he hears me. 2. Does he know me? does he hear me? 3. I do not see him, and I do not hear him. 4. She gave me a silver thimble, and I gave her a work-box. 5. I told them that they would come. 6. Have you told her that he would come? 7. They (*on*) will tell it to me (*or* to him). 8. They will grant it to us (*or* to them). 9. I have a pretty rose. I shall show it to her (*or* to you), but I shall not give it to her (*or* to you). 10. I have his letters. I shall send them to you (*or* to them). 11. Hear me: tell me if that is true. 12. Here is an inkstand; take it and give it to him. 13. Send her this needle. 14. Here are the documents, send them to them; do not send them to them. 15. Here is a ruler, keep it and do not return it to him (*or* to her). 16. Where is my copy-book? Who has taken it, you or he (*or* she or they)? 17. He and I have seen it. 18. I shall introduce you to her (*to* him). 19. He hastened to them. 20. I appeal to you. 21. If she had asked it of me, I would have given it to her with pleasure. 22. Do not discover yourself to him. 23. Do not repeat that to her. 24. She has written me a letter, and I shall answer her (*or* it). 25. There is your friend; we were just speaking (*spoke* just) of him. 26. When I have (*fut.*) received a letter from her, I shall tell you of it. 27. I admire Paris; its palaces are magnificent.

28. This road is very dangerous ; keep away from it. 29. You have (got) fine cloth ; give me some. \* 30. The science of language is most interesting (229, note 2) ; I shall devote all my time to it. 31. One ought rarely to speak of one's self. 32. Crime brings remorse in its train (tr. 'drags = *traîne* remorse after itself'). 33. Every one for himself. 34. This young man, while obeying (*à*) his father, is working for himself.

1. *I* have ventured it. 2. *He* will do it. 3. You may act thus, but he will act differently. 4. This umbrella belongs to her. 5. I shall rely on you. 6. He is always thinking of her. 7. I the undersigned (or We the undersigned) give my (our) assent to this contract. 8. Are you the heirs of the deceased ? Yes, we are (cf. 250, a, note). 9. Are these gentlemen brothers ? I believe (that) they are. 10. I have found a person such as I desired.

## XII.

### *Possessive and Demonstrative Pronouns (257-270).*

1. She took her pencil from her box. 2. Your brother is not in his room ; he is in mine. 3. He gave me your keys and his. 4. You are my dearest and most faithful friend. 5. This carriage is too large ; it is larger than that (which) you showed me. 6. If you act in that manner you will not be allowed to go out with us. 7. Your greatest fault is (*c'est*, 266, b) your idleness. 8. What is false is always bad. 9. What is of consequence (*importe*) to us is to do what is right. 10. What astonishes me is that you have not come. 11. To do good (*Faire du bien*) to men is to render homage to God. 12. He who triumphs over (*de*) himself is happy (*render in two ways*). 13. Those who love others are themselves beloved. 14. Our engravings are better than those (which) I saw at (*chez*) the bookseller's. 15. I have read the life of Wellington and that of Napoleon ; the latter was the greater man, the former the better citizen.

1. This house is mine. 2. A relation of mine. 3. My children received each their present. 4. I have found to-day a handkerchief of yours amongst mine. 5. A handkerchief of mine, you say; it is not mine, it is your friend's. 6. That is not gold; it is copper, as I think (*ce me semble*). 7. New York is a beautiful city (*express in two ways*). 8. Cæsar was a great captain (*two ways*). 9. This is beautiful, and that is not beautiful. 10. That is impossible for me. 11. It does not please me that you do (*subjunctive*) that. 12. Is that your work-box?

## XIII.

*Interrogative and Relative Pronouns (271–281).*

1. Which horse will you ride? 2. Who is that gentleman? 3. What is that project you are talking of (*tr. of which you a. t. : 412*)? 4. Which one of these young girls is your sister (*or Which ones etc.*)? 5. Which one (*or Which ones*) of these engravings do you prefer? 6. Who has come? 7. Whom do you expect? 8. Who are these boys? 9. Whom do you love most of your comrades? 10. What does she say? 11. What are you meddling with? (*412*). 12. What are you thinking of (*a*)? 13. There are many customs in these provinces that are ridiculous. 14. A man who is truthful is always respected. 15. His mother, for whom he works, is old and infirm. 16. He tries to alleviate the position of his father, which is a painful one (*one not transl.*). 17. The house in which I live belongs to my brother whom you saw yesterday. 18. Here is the book in which you have read this passage. 19. The man of whom (*express in three ways*) you speak has just gone out. 20. The news of which (*two ways*) you speak is false. 21. That man whose will is strong is sure to succeed. 22. Weariness is an evil whose remedy is work. 23. This is the gentleman in whose house I live. 24. He alone has the right to be happy on whose life rests the happiness of others. 25. I do not know what troubles him. 26. I cannot surmise what he is thinking of. 27. Here is what you ask for (*for not transl.*).

1. What is that? 2. What is death? 3. What frightens you? 4. These men do not busy themselves with anything whatever (287, note). 5. Nothing could be expected of one who knows nothing. 6. He who says nothing, consents. 7. I shall receive a hundred dollars, of which amount you shall have one half.

## XIV.

*Indefinite Pronouns (282-294).*

1. Have you some books to (*à*) lend me? 2. Whatever riches you may possess (*subj.*), do not despise the poor. 3. However skilful you may be, try to be modest. 4. However dull a man may be, he has always something good in his character. 5. Do not laugh at (*de*) other people's faults. 6. Charity is contented that others be (*subj.*) preferred. 7. Nobody has been forgotten. 8. One person has been forgotten. 9. Is there anybody who is (*subj.*) perfectly happy? 10. He left without paying anybody. 11. I do not think there is (*subj.*) any man without a fault. 12. She had no knowledge of my arrival. 13. Every man is subject to error. 14. The whole family is in good health. 15. This man speaks of everything, but he does not think of everything. 16. My sister was quite astonished, quite surprised, at your request. 17. We (*on*) ought not to speak ill of each other. 18. Men deceive each other. 19. Both (*give m. and f.*) are gone. 20. Both the (*The two*) consuls followed his standard. 21. I know these girls: either the one or the other will surely come. 22. Neither (*give both m. and f.*) obtained the prize. 23. Whoever you be, have regard for justice.

1. She is some twenty years old. 2. I have seen something beautiful; I have seen a beautiful thing. 3. Remember, my sister, one is not always young and pretty. 4. However rich you are, do not despise the poor. 5. All Paris is in an uproar. 6. Such a man is despicable. 7. Many a man speaks of things which he does not understand. 8. One covets what another (*l'autre*) despises. 9. He had called on Mr. So and So. 10. There is not any one at all (287, note) to help me.

## XV.

*Agreement of Verb and Subject (296-302).*

1. I shall do what the others do (*tr.* will-do the others: 310, 416. a). 2. Truthfulness and honesty go together. 3. Sciences, arts, and literature are sources of enjoyment and happiness. 4. (Either) you or your brother will come. 5. His ruin or his safety depends on his answer. 6. Luck or rashness *may have made* (*ont pu faire*: 317. a) heroes. 7. Neither your fate nor mine is worthy of envy. 8. Neither my father nor my mother will come (*for* 'neither . . . nor' *cf.* 390). 9. A single word, a smile, a look, is sufficient. 10. The gentleness, the kindness of the great Henry has been celebrated with (*de*: 211. a) a thousand praises. 11. Great and small, rich and poor, none can escape death. 12. Learning as well as (*de même que*) valor has its value. 13. My brother and I will come to see you. 14. You and he will be rewarded. 15. The number of (the) dead was considerable. 16. Many men were there. 17. A crowd of children were running in the street. 18. It is they (It is we) who request it of you. 19. It is vices that degrade us. 20. It is facts we want.

1. It is compliments (that) he wants. 2. We are the only ones that will come. 3. They (*On*) made up (*transl. agreed*) and were good friends. 4. You are welcome, sir, and you also are welcome, ladies.

## XVI.

*Indicative Tenses (303-318).*

1. I work to (*pour*) earn my living. 2. I have been here since Monday. 3. How long have you been in France? I have been here two years (two days). 4. Have you met the inspector to-day? 5. I rose (*or got up*) at six o'clock this morning. 6. We have had much rain this year. 7. Alexander the Great destroyed the Persian empire. 8. Rome was not built in one day. 9. I received a letter from my husband



yesterday. 10. I was dressing when you came in. 11. He often comes to see us. 12. When I was young I liked to play. 13. He had left when I arrived. 14. I saw him yesterday. 15. I received his letter the day before I left (*la veille de mon départ*). 16. As soon as I had arrived, I went to ('go to' *aller chez* or *aller trouver*) my friend. 17. When he had finished, he went out. 18. If you would come, I would tell it to you. 19. I would pay you, if I had the money. 20. I would have done it, if I had been able. 21. I had been two years in America when my brother arrived. 22. I shall write when I have seen him. 23. As soon as it is dark we shall go out together, you and I. 24. We are going to buy Christmas-presents. 25. I was about to go out when the clerk entered. 26. We should always fulfil our duties towards God and men. 27. She certainly ought to write to her guardian about it. 28. She ought to have (317. b) written to her mother. 29. They should have received the news with fortitude. 30. That disgrace *was* to (317. c) happen (was inevitable).

1. He will do it, if he comes to-morrow. 2. It is uncertain whether she will come to-morrow. 3. I leave to-night. 4. He has probably found his watch, or he would not be back. 5. They cannot do it, but they might try it. 6. I am not able to tell you (*add it: 250. b*).

## XVII.

### *Subjunctive in Subordinate Clauses (320-337).*

A. 1. I wish him to come (*tr. that he c.*). 2. Caligula wished that the Romans should render him divine honors. 3. The law requires that thieves should be punished. 4. Augustus commanded in his will that they (*on*) should not seek to extend his empire. 5. I will be obeyed (*tr. that one obey me*). 6. The teacher expects you to be attentive. 7. You must (use *Il faut*) leave. 8. It is right (*juste*) that you should be punished. 9. It is important (*Il importe*) that he

should know it to-day. 10. I shall prevent him from going out. 11. I fear some misfortune has happened to him. 12. I do not apprehend that he will do anything wrong. 13. I hope he will come; do you hope he will come? I no longer hope he will come. 14. I doubt whether he knows it. 15. The Egyptians did not doubt that certain plants and animals were divinities. 16. I do not think it will rain to-day. 17. It is not probable (*or not certain*) that he will send me the money. 18. He denies that he has been told that (*tr.* that one has told etc.). 19. Seek friends that can assist you with their advice (*pl.*). 20. I seek a retreat in which I may be quiet. 21. Is there a mortal that can say that he is always happy? 22. Let us go home (*Reentrons*) before it grows dark ('grow dark' *faire nuit*). 23. I say it that you may know it. 24. You will succeed, provided you act with vigor. 25. I cannot depend on your promise, unless you give me the necessary security. 26. Wait till the rain is over.

B. 27. He is the best player I know. 28. Wisdom is the only thing the possession of which is certain. 29. You are the first friend I have met with in Paris. 30. This is the only hope that remains to me. 31. There are few men that can always hear the truth. 32. It is surprising that he has cared to do it. 33. I am glad (*or I am sorry*) that you have come. 34. I rejoice that you have succeeded. 35. It is a pity that you cannot come (*or have not come*) earlier. 36. The tailor did not come, although he had promised me (*add it: 250. b*). 37. Whatever efforts men may make, their nothingness appears everywhere. 38. His mind is always active, although he is sick and cannot work. 39. Although Homer, according to Horace, slumbers at times, he is nevertheless (*il n'en est pas moins*) the first of all poets. 40. However rich you are, do not despise the poor. 41. Whoever you are, trust in God alone. 42. He complains about your not keeping your word (*or that you have not kept your word*): *obs.* 323. B.

(*Indicatives and subjunctives.*) 1. Your father ordered that you should do it ('should do' one verb-form). 2. The tribunal has decided that the donation was void. 3. I desire that he may come. 4. I hope he may come. 5. I believe she will do it; do you believe she will do it? 6. He labors in order that he may be able to live. 7. He labors so that (*de façon que*) he is able to live. 8. I have come in order that (*pour que*) we may speak of our affairs. 9. I shall come, provided (*pourvu que*) he comes. 10. I shall come if (*si*) he comes. 11. If he had listened to (*cru*) me, he would not have written verses. 12. Do you think I need your assurance? 13. Do you think I can rely on his assurance? 14. I shall not come, since he does not write me. 15. Before he is torn (*tr.* Before one tears him) from us, suffer me to conceal him. 16. Do you know whether he will come? 17. Do you know (*the fact*) that he has arrived? 18. Do you forget that Mary is my sister? 19. If you believe that this book is useful, I shall buy it. 20. If it were known (If one etc.) that you have spoken in his behalf (*pour lui*), you would be hated. 21. I do not doubt that the marriage pleases you. 22. There can be no doubt (*On ne saurait douter*: 317. b) that the Germans used to purchase (= purchased: *impf.*) their wives. 23. Show me a way that leads to knowledge. 24. Show me the way that leads to Paris. 25. The best use one can make of his mind is to distrust it. 26. I know (that) he is the first one that has seen you here. 27. He is the most learned man I know. 28. If you need a knife of which temper is good, here is one. 29. All (*Tout*) jaded as I am, I traverse all the city. 30. However powerful they may be (*or are*) I do not fear them. 31. I am delighted that you have that opinion of me. 32. I rejoice that you have returned (*render in two ways*). 33. He complains that you have beaten him and torn his clothes (*two ways*).

## XVIII.

*Subjunctive in (quasi) Independent Clauses (338-339).*

1. (Long) live the emperor! 2. Heaven be blessed for it! 3. May God watch over us. 4. May she succeed. 5. Would to God it were so. 6. Let him depart immediately, come who will. 7. Let Joad put a check upon (*à*) his savage zeal. 8. Any (*Une or Toute*) hesitation might have ruined all. 9. If he had dared, he would have become angry. 10. I know no one better endowed.

## XIX.

*Infinitive (341-362).*

1. To hate is a torment, to love is the soul's need. 2. To think and to act is to live. 3. I shall have him called (*tr.* I shall make call him). 4. You have let him fall. 5. I must (*dois*) go and see him to-night. 6. She intends to leave to-morrow. 7. The lawyer wishes to come this afternoon. 8. They have gone to live at Paris. 9. She will come to visit me to-morrow. 10. It pleases her to see his attentions. 11. It is a torment to hate; it is the soul's need to love. 12. It does not become you to speak thus. 13. Abstain from reading useless books. 14. He seems to like playing. 15. I forbid you to behave thus any longer. 16. Beware of falling into the water if you cannot swim. 17. He does not like (*or* He hates) to study. 18. You try in vain to deceive me. 19. Religion teaches us to love our neighbors as ourselves. 20. He aspires to win my approbation. 21. He endeavors to study. 22. I have made him decide (*tr.* decided him) to leave. 23. I have just seen (*cf.* 353, *venir*) her. 24. I come to see her. 25. If I should happen to die, what would you do?

1. I begin to understand you. 2. It has begun to rain. 3. He continues reading. 4. I shall continue to read this afternoon. 5. I beg (*demande*) to speak to you. 6. I ask (*demande*) you to listen to me. 7. I defy him to go there. 8. I challenge him to play at billiards (*au billiard*). 9. He came near ('come near' = 'fail': *manquer* or *faillir*) falling. 10. He failed to fulfil his engagements.

## XX.

*Participles (364-371).*

1. A young man who knows (*tr.* knowing) his interest will not neglect his studies. 2. I saw the letter-carrier going to the post-office. 3. That is a convincing proof. 4. She is as pale as a withered flower. 5. This school-boy's letter is well

written. 6. Selfish men are despised. 7. Concealed enmity (*pl.*) is dangerous. 8. Here is the letter (which) I have received. 9. The affairs you have undertaken are of a difficult nature. 10. Where are your gloves? I have lost them. 11. I have lost my gloves. 12. She stood up (comp. tense of *se lever*). 13. All your relatives have rejoiced at your happiness. 14. They presented flowers to each other (*se*). 15. The flowers which they presented to each other were exquisite. 16. He died seeing his friends around him.

1. This is a tiresome play. 2. That was a fatiguing march. 3. All were welcome, except you and me (*two ways*). 4. The years that I have labored on this work are not a few. 5. The three leagues she has walked have tired her. 6. Have you some flowers? Yes, he has given me some (*en*). 7. You know the good opinion I have already conceived of it (*en*). 8. I am fond of flowers; I have gathered some. 9. The letter I supposed you would receive, has arrived at last. 10. I made her come. 11. He kept us waiting. 12. He has written as many letters as he could. 13. Even while scolding him she loved him. 14. He met his sister returning home (= on her way home); he met his sister while on his way home.

## XXI.

*Negation (372-391).*

1. Have you seen him? No. 2. His mother, but not his sister, is here. 3. Has he any friends? Not many. 4. He has not come. 5. I have not written to my banker about it. 6. It is bad not to study; (or not to have studied). 7. He will never come; he will come no more; he will hardly come; he will nowise come. 8. I do not know anybody here. 9. The paper said nothing about it. 10. Nothing is better than truth, even if it is bitter. 11. I dare not go there. 12. The unfortunate widow does not cease weeping. 13. I could (*saurais*) not do it. 14. I am not able (cannot) to do it, and I don't know whether the girl (servant-girl) is. 15. No matter, I shall do it. 16. God forbid that this misfortune should happen. 17. I

see no one that does not love you. 18. If you are cold why don't you put on your overcoat? 19. I have few friends that are not yours. 20. Is there a man that does not complain of his fellow creatures (*semblables*). 21. Take care that she does not fall. 22. I shall prevent him from going out. 23. I fear this may be true. 24. I shall go to see him (*le trouver*), lest he start without my seeing him. 25. I do not doubt that this is true. 26. Do you doubt that this is true? 27. I doubt that this is true. 28. I do not deny that this is true. 29. Do you deny that he is guilty? 30. I deny that he is guilty. 31. Do you not deny that he is guilty? 32. We had not seen each other for six years. 33. How has she been (*se porter* 'be' with ref. to health) since I saw her? 34. He is older than I thought. 35. The boat was quicker than he had calculated. 36. My shoemaker has more work than he wants. 37. The state of my health is worse than you imagine. 38. Your teacher will not come, unless you write to him. 39. Neither the shoes nor the boots have been sent. 40. This idle boy neither works nor plays. 41. These laborers can neither read nor write. 42. He knew neither that I had seen you, nor that I have spoken to you.

1. I say yes (= I protest). 2. He believes not. 3. You will come, will you not? (*transl.* is it not?) 4. No more tears, no more sorrows, my friend. 5. God has created the world from nothing. 6. She did not say a word. 7. I shall not do it, unless you do it. 8. That house is not far from being three miles from the city. 9. We have not seen each other for many years. 10. He is a different man *from what* (*que je ne*) I thought. 11. He has not seen me nor spoken to me (*two ways*). 12. My neighbors will not pay this expense, nor I either.

## XXII.

*Other Indeclinables (391-406).*

1. This soldier is as brave as he is kind. 2. She is not so wise as she appears. 3. That young fellow reads as much as

you, but he does not work so much. 4. The contractor made (*a gagné*) at least 200 dollars. 5. If my tailor is not rich, he has at least something to live on (*de quoi vivre*). 6. That course is the wisest; besides it is also the most just. 7. This storekeeper is rich, but his brother is yet more so (*or is yet more so than he*). 8. As for my cousin, he does not know when he will come. 9. The engineer told me he would come and bring his plan. 10. Scarcely had I arrived when the curate came to see me. 11. If the doctor does not come, it is because he is sick. 12. Both rich and poor must die. 13. Whether he comes or writes, I shall be contented. 14. I will have it so (*Je le veux*), since it is right. 15. While my uncle was in Paris, I travelled through Switzerland. 16. This stuff is red, whilst that is pink.

---

### ADDITIONAL EXERCISES

(ADAPTED, IN THE MAIN, FOR EQUIVALENT TRANSLATION).

#### XXIII.

A child of six years of age, being introduced into company for his extraordinary abilities, was asked by a clergyman where God is, with the proffered reward of an orange, if he should answer (308) correctly. "Tell me," replied the boy, "where he is not, and I will give you two" (supply *en 'of them'*).

#### XXIV.

Dumoulin, a (204. B. 2) famous physician, was sinking ('be sinking' *être à l'agonie*). He was surrounded by several of his colleagues, who deplored his loss. "Gentlemen," said he to them, "I leave behind me three great physicians." Each one thought he was (*transl.* thought to be: 362) one of the three: he was urged (*transl.* 'one urged him') to name them. "They are," he answered (417), "water (195), exercise, and diet."

#### XXV.

King (187) Xerxes, astonished at the tranquillity of the Lacedemonians, waited a few (282) days to (*pour*) allow them time for reflection. On the

fifth day (simply *Le cinquième*) he wrote to Leonidas, "If thou wilt submit, I shall give thee the empire of Greece." Leonidas responded, "I prefer ('prefer,' *aimer mieux*) dying for my country to enslaving it." A second letter from the king contained only these words, "Surrender (*Rends-moi*) thy arms!" — Leonidas wrote below, "Come and take (362) them!"

## XXVI.

Cornelia, daughter of the great Scipio, and wife of Consul Sempronius, was in a company of Roman ladies who were displaying their precious stones and jewels. Cornelia was asked (use *on*) to show also hers. This wise Roman woman (*one word*) ordered (*transl. made*) her children to approach. These she had brought up with great care for the glory of their country, and she said in showing them: "There is (*voici*) my ornament, there my jewels."

## XXVII.

There was a time when everybody (*tout le monde*) used to say (= 'said,' *impf.*: 306) big (*gros*) instead of great (*grand*); a big thing, a big house, a big reputation, etc. As Louis XIV was one day at the house of (*chez*) a minister where he met Boileau, he indicated to the latter that he did not like this novel expression. "It is surprising," said B., "that people (*on*) everywhere will use (*mettre*) big for great. For instance, there is much (*bien*) difference between Louis the Great and Louis the Big" (usually "Fat" = Louis VI).

## XXVIII.

An Arab, having lost his way in the desert, had not eaten anything for two days, and saw himself compelled to die from hunger. Passing near one of those wells where caravans come to water their camels, he sees on the sand a small leather-bag. He picks it up, he feels it: "Allah be blessed!" he cries; "These are, I believe, dates or hazel-nuts." Full of this sweet hope, he hastens to open the bag; but at the sight of what it contained he exclaimed with disappointment (*transl. pain*), "Alas, I thought it was at least hazel-nuts, and it is only pearls!"

## XXIX.

A man who had twelve sons made them assemble around his death-bed, and as they were waiting for his last blessing, he showed them a bundle of arrows, and ordered each to try to break them thus bound together. None of the sons could do it (*y parvenir*). Then he told them to make the



same attempt by taking the arrows one after the other. In this way they broke them with ease. Then the father called their attention to (*attira leur attention sur, or les rendit attentifs à*) this emblem of the power of concord. "Observe, my children," said he to them, "that as long as you remain united, no one will be able to conquer you."

## XXX.

When Boabdil, the (204. B. a) last king of Grenada, was obliged to abandon the kingdom of his fathers, he stopped on the summit of Mount Padul. From this high place was discovered (*transl. one disc.*) the sea where the unfortunate monarch was about ('be about' *aller*) to embark for Africa; also Grenada and the Xenil, on the border of which the tents of Ferdinand and Isabella arose, were seen. At the sight of this beautiful country and the cypresses that yet marked here and there the tombs of the Mussulmans, Boabdil began to (*se mit à*) shed tears. The sultana Aïxa, his mother, who accompanied him in his exile, together with the lords (*grands*) that once composed his court, said to him: "Weep now as a woman for a kingdom, which thou couldst not defend as a man."—They descended the mountain, and Grenada disappeared from their eyes forever.

## XXXI.

Charles XII, king of Sweden, was born in Stockholm on the 27th of June, 1682. He lost his mother in his eleventh year, and was hardly fifteen years old when his father died. According to the will of the late king, he should (317. c) not be of age before he was past (*qu'après avoir passé*) his eighteenth year; but on the proposition of the minister Piper, the diet transferred the government to him as early as (*déjà*) 1697. In the year 1700, Peter I, emperor of Russia, Frederick IV, king of Denmark, and August, elector of Saxony, declared war against him.—He attacked them one after the other, and gained at first brilliant victories, among others that of Narva, where with less than 8,000 Swedes he defeated 80,000 Russians, of whom more than twenty thousand remained on the field of battle, while he lost only six hundred men. But later, when he penetrated into Russia, he lost the decisive battle of Pultawa, and was forced to take refuge on the Turkish territory with a feeble escort of two hundred and fifty Swedes.

## XXXII.

The old hunter Maurice had in his room a starling which he had brought up, and which had learned to articulate some words. When he

said for instance, "Starling, where are you (2d sing.)?" the bird always answered "Here I am" (*Me voilà*).—Little (def. art.) Charley, the son of a neighbor, liked the bird (very) much and often paid (*transl. made*) it visits. One day he came to see the starling while the hunter was absent; he quickly seized the bird, put it into his pocket, and would fain (*transl. wished to*) steal away with his larceny. But at this moment the hunter entered his home. He thought he would amuse the little boy by (*en*) asking as usual "Starling, where are you?"—"Here I am!" cried with all his might (*pl.*) the bird that was concealed in the boy's pocket. And thus the little theft was betrayed.

## XXXIII.

One day Frederick the Great rang the bell (simply, 'rang'), and no one came. He opened the door and found his page asleep in an arm-chair. He went up to (*s'avancer à*) him and was about (*aller*) to awaken him, when he noticed the corner of a letter (*un bout de billet*) which stuck out of his pocket. He became curious to know what it was, took it and read it. It was a letter from the young man's mother, who thanked him for (*de ce qu'il*) sending her a part of his salary to console her in her poverty. She ended by saying that God would bless him for (*à cause de*) his love to her. When the king had read (*use pr. pple.*) this note, he took a purse of ducats, slipped it with the letter into the pocket of the page, and returned softly to his room. Soon (*Un peu*) after he rung the bell so loud (*fort*) that the page was awakened (*reft.*) and came to the king. "You (*Tu*) have slept well!" said Frederick. The page tries to excuse himself, and in his embarrassment he puts his hands into his pocket. He feels the purse, he draws it out, and reaches the climax (*se trouve au comble*) of astonishment and confusion; he grows pale, and looks at the king, shedding a torrent of tears, unable (*sans pouvoir*) to utter a single word. "What is the matter?" (*Qu'est-ce? or Qu'as-tu?*) says the king,— "What is the matter, then?"—"Ah, Sire," said the young man, throwing himself at his feet, "They (*on*) wish to ruin me, I don't know what this money means (*ce que c'est que cet argent*) which I find in my pocket."—"My friend," said Frederick, "God often sends us good things (*le bien*) while we are sleeping; send that to your mother, and assure her that I shall take care of her and of you."

## XXXIV.

*Servilius defends himself before the people.*

"If you (*transl. one*) have made me come here to demand from me (*me*)

an account of what took place in the last battle where I commanded, I am ready to inform you about it; but if it is only a pretext to destroy me, as I suspect (*add 'it'*), spare me useless words: here you have (*voilà*) my body and life which I surrender to you: you may dispose of them. — What, then, is my crime? What fault have I committed hitherto? I am accused of having lost many men (use *monde* for 'men') in the last battle. But who is the general that can fight (*transl. deliver*) battles against a warlike nation that defends itself courageously, without blood being shed on both sides (*de part et d'autre*)? What divinity has bound itself to (*envers*) the Roman people to make it gain victories without any loss? Whom can you make (*fera-t-on*) believe that glory is to be gained otherwise than by great perils? I joined battle (*J'en suis venu aux mains*) with more numerous troops than those you had confided to me. I routed their legions, finally fled. What remained for me to do? Who among you could which have refused to accept [*eût pu* (317, 338. B) *se refuser à*] the victory that came to meet me? Was it even in my power to restrain your soldiers, who were carried away by their courage (*tr. whom their courage carried away*) and pursued with ardor a terrified enemy?"

## XXXIV.

Snow is the product of a thick fog, which the cold changes into an infinite multitude (*transl. infinity*) of little imperceptible icicles, which, in coalescing, for the most part form light irregular flakes that fall with more or less abundance, and cover the earth with a more or less thick layer, the effect of which is to protect against the extremest cold those plants which it conceals. It sometimes happens, and chiefly when the air is calm, that every particle of snow has the form of a little star with (*à*) six rays of an extreme delicacy, and which resemble little feathers.

The snow hardens at last (*à la longue*); it even changes to ice, when it is powerfully pressed. In countries where it falls abundantly, as in Nevada, there are mountains where the snow never melts, and it is that snow which gives rise to glaciers, which are enormous masses of ice. When the snow is amassed on very steep slopes, a moment arrives when it cannot sustain itself, and then occurs ('occur' *se faire*) what is called an avalanche, that is (*c'est à dire*) a kind of snow-slip, which carries along, covers, or crushes everything in its path.

## VOCABULARY TO THE PRECEDING EXERCISES.

Numerals, ordinary pronouns or pronominal adjectives, and proper names spelled alike in French and English, are omitted in this vocabulary. For other references than those given below, consult the grammar-index. Words and phrases considered in the paragraphs heading each exercise are to be studied specially under their respective paragraphs.

*Abbreviations* : n. = noun ; adj. = adjective ; v. = verb ; irr. = irregular (consult § 161). Notice also that 'h = h aspirated (23).

<b>A.</b>		
a, un ; distrib've (as in 'a year' etc.) <i>par</i> .	acquaintance, <i>connaissance</i> , f.	Allah, <i>Allah</i> .
abandon, <i>abandonner</i> .	act, v., <i>agir</i> .	alleviate, <i>adoucir</i> .
ability, <i>talent</i> , m.	action, <i>action</i> , f.	allow, <i>permettre</i> , irr.
able, <i>capable</i> , be —, <i>pouvoir</i> (irr.).	actor, <i>acteur</i> , m.	alone, <i>seul</i> .
about (=nearly) <i>environ</i> .	admire, <i>admirer</i> .	already, <i>déjà</i> .
absent, <i>absent</i> .	advice, <i>conseil</i> , m.	also, <i>aussi</i> .
abstain, <i>s'abstenir</i> , irr.	advise, <i>conseiller</i> .	although, <i>quoique</i> (330).
abundance, <i>abondance</i> , f.	affair, <i>affaire</i> , f.	always, <i>toujours</i> .
abundant, <i>abondant</i> .	affect, <i>affecter</i> , <i>toucher</i> .	amass, <i>amasser</i> .
abundantly, <i>en abondance</i> .	afraid : be —, <i>avoir peur</i> .	America, <i>Amérique</i> , f.
abuse, v., <i>abuser de</i> .	Africa, <i>Afrique</i> , f.	American, <i>Américain</i> , m.
accompany, <i>accompagner</i> .	afternoon, <i>après-midi</i> , m.	amiable, <i>aimable</i> .
accomplish, <i>accomplir</i> .	age, <i>âge</i> , m. of (6 etc.)	among(st), <i>entre, parmi</i> (216. d).
according to, <i>selon</i> .	years of —, <i>âgé de</i> (6 etc.) <i>ans</i> ; of —, <i>ma-</i>	amount, <i>somme</i> , f. ; <i>total</i> , m.
account, <i>compte</i> , m.	<i>jeur</i> .	amuse, <i>amuser</i> ; <i>faire plaisir à</i> .
accuse, <i>accuser</i> .	agree, <i>s'accorder</i> .	ancient, <i>ancien</i> .
accustom, <i>accoutumer</i> .	air, <i>air</i> , m.	angry, <i>fâché</i> ; be (become) —, <i>être fâché, se mettre en colère</i> .
	alas, <i>hélas</i> .	
	Alexander, <i>Alexandre</i> .	
	all, tout (292).	

animal, *animal*, m.  
 animate, *animer*.  
 answer, v., *répondre*.  
 answer, n., *réponse*, f.  
 any (45, 190).  
 appeal, *en appeler*.  
 appear, *paraître*, irr.  
 apple, *pomme*, f.  
 appoint (to office), *nommer*; (settle) *désigner*.  
 apprehend (= fear), *appréhender*.  
 approach, tr., *approcher* or *s'approcher* (cf. 211); intr., *s'approcher*.  
 approach, n., *approche*, f.  
 approbation, *approbation*, f.  
 Arab, *Arabe*, m.  
 ardor, *ardeur*, f.  
 arise, *se lever*, *s'élever*.  
 arm, n. (weapon), *arme*, f.; (limb), *bras*, m.  
 arm, v., *armer*.  
 arm-chair, *fauteuil*, m.  
 army, *armée*, f.  
 around, *autour de*.  
 arrive, *arriver*.  
 arrow, *flèche*, f.  
 art, *art*, m.  
 articulate, *articuler*.  
 as, adv. (before adj.), *aussi*, (after) *que*; — much or many (as) *autant (que)*; — long as, *aussi longtemps que*; — soon as, *aussitôt que*, *dès que*.  
 as, conj., *comme*; *de*

(211.f); *en* (204.A.2); *pour*; (= when) *lorsque*.  
 ascend, *monter*, *faire l'ascension (de)*.  
 ashamed: be —, *avoir honte*.  
 Asia, *Asie*, f.  
 ask, *demander*; — a question *faire une question*.  
 asleep, *endormi*; fall —, *s'endormir*.  
 aspire, *aspirer*.  
 assemble, *rassembler*.  
 assent, n., *assentiment*.  
 assist, *assister*.  
 assure, *assurer*.  
 assurance, *assurance*.  
 astonish, *étonner*.  
 astonishing, *étonnant*.  
 astonishment, *étonnement*, m.  
 at, à; *en*, *dans*; *de*; *par*; (— the house of, —'s, *chez*); — all, *du tout*; — first, *d'abord*; — last, *enfin*; — least, *du moins (au moins: 394)*; — times, *parfois*.  
 attack, *attaquer*.  
 attempt, n., *essai*, m.  
 attentive, *attentif*.  
 attention, *attention*, f.  
 August(us), *Auguste*.  
 aunt, *tante*, f.  
 avalanche, *avalanche*, f.  
 awaken, *réveiller*.  
 B.  
 back: be —, *être de retour*.  
 bad, *mauvais*.

bag, *sac*, m.  
 banker, *banquier*, m.  
 bare, nu: bare-headed. *nu-tête* or *tête nue*; barefoot(ed), *nu-pieds* or *pieds nus*. [219, note 4.]  
 bark, n., *écorce*, f.  
 battle, n., *bataille*, f.  
 beat, *battre* (134.3), *frapper*.  
 beautiful, *beau* (75).  
 because, *parce que*, *puisque*. [405.]  
 become, *devenir*, irr.; (suit) *seoir* (161), *convenir*, irr.; — angry, *se mettre en colère*.  
 before, *avant*, *devant*. [216.]  
 beg, *prier*.  
 begin, *commencer*.  
 behave, *se conduire*, irr.  
 behead, *décapiter*.  
 behind, *derrière*, *après*.  
 believe, *croire*, irr.  
 belong, *appartenir*, irr.  
 below, *sous*, *dessous*, *au-dessous de*.  
 best, adj., *le meilleur*; adv., *le mieux*; — thing, *mieux* or *la meilleure chose*.  
 betray, *trahir*; (show) *révéler*, *montrer*.  
 between, *entre*.  
 bewail, *plaindre*, irr.; *déplorer*.  
 beware, *prendre garde (of de)*, *se garder*.

big, *gros* (74), *grand*.  
 bind (together), *lier* ;  
     bind one's self, *s'en-*  
     *gager*.  
 bird, *oiseau*, m.  
 bitter, *amer*.  
 black, *noir*.  
 bless, *bénir*.  
 blessing, *bénédiction*, f.  
 blood, *sang*, m.  
 blue, *bleu*.  
 body, *corps*, m.  
 bold, '*hardi*, *courageux*.  
 book, *livre*, m.  
 bookseller, *libraire*, m.  
 boot, *botte*, f.  
 border, *bord*, m.  
 born, *né* ; be —, *naître*  
     (with *être*), irr.  
 borrow, *emprunter* (of, à).  
 boy, *garçon*, m.  
 box, *boîte*, f.  
 branch, *branche*, f.  
 brave, *brave* (222), *cou-*  
     *rageux*.  
 bread, *pain*, m.  
 break, *casser*, *rompre*.  
 breath, *haleine*, f.  
 brethren, cf. brother.  
 brilliant, *brillant*, *écla-*  
     *tant*.  
 bring, *apporter* (lead),  
     *amener* ; — up, *élever*.  
 brother, *frère*, m. ; (= *colleague*, pl. *brethren*), *confère*, m.  
 build, *bâtir*.  
 bundle (of twigs, etc.),  
     *faisceau*, m.  
 busy one's self, *s'occuper*.

buy, *acheter*.  
 by, *par*, *de*, à.

## C.

Cæsar, *César*.  
 calculate, *calculer*, *com-*  
     *pter*.  
 call, *nommer*, *appeler* ; —  
     (up) on, *aller* (irr., with  
     *être*) *voir*.  
 calm, *calme*, *tranquille*.  
 camel, *chameau*, m.  
 can, *pouvoir*, irr. ; I can  
     not, *je ne saurais*  
     (317, b).  
 Canada, *Canada*, m.  
 candid, *franc* (76.1).  
 captain, *capitaine*, m.  
 caravan, *caravane*, f.  
 care, n., *soin*, m. ; take  
     —, *prendre* (or *avoir*)  
     *soin*.  
 care, v., *se soucier*.  
 carriage, *voiture*, f.  
 carry, *porter* ; — along,  
     *entraîner* ; — away, *em-*  
     *porter*.  
 castle, *château*, m.  
 cat, *chat*, m.  
 cause, n., *cause*, f. ; (mo-  
     tive) *raison*, f.  
 cease, *cesser*.  
 celebrate, *célébrer*.  
 cent, *cent*, m. (Am. = a  
     Fr. *sou*).  
 certain, *certain*.  
 certainly, *certainement*.  
 challenge, *défier*.  
 change, *changer*.  
 character, *caractère*, m.

charitable, *charitable*.  
 charity, *charité*, f.  
 Charles, *Charley*,  
     *Charles*.  
 check, n., *frein*, m.  
 cheese, *fromage*, m.  
 chiefly, *principalement*,  
     *surtout*.  
 child, *enfant*, m.  
 Christmas, *Noël*, m. ;  
     — present, *cadeau de*  
     *Noël* ; (*étrennes*, 'new-  
     year's gift').  
 citizen, *citoyen*, m.  
 city, *ville*, f.  
 clergyman, *ecclésiastique*,  
     *ministre* ; (priest) *prê-*  
     *tre*.  
 clerk, *commis*, m.  
 cloth, *drap*, m.  
 clothes, *habits*, m. pl.  
 coalesce, *se réunir*.  
 coffee, *café*, m.  
 cold, adj., *froid* ; be (feel)  
     —, *avoir froid* ; be —  
     (weather) *faire froid*.  
 cold, n., *froid*, m. ; *froi-*  
     *deur*, f.  
 colleague, *collègue*, m.  
 collection, *collection*, f.  
 combat, n., *combat*, m.  
 come, *venir* ; — in, *entrer* ;  
     — to meet, *marcher*  
     *devant* ; *aller au devant*  
     *de*.  
 comedy, *comédie*, f.  
 command, *commander*.  
 commit, *commettre*, irr.  
 company, *société*, f.  
 compel, *contraindre*, irr.

complain, *se plaindre*,  
irr.

compliment, *compliment*,  
m.

compose, *composer*.

comrade, *camarade*, m.

conceal, *cacher*, *celer*;  
*dissimuler*.

conceive, *concevoir*, irr.

concord, *concorde*, f.

conduct, v., *conduire*, irr.

conduct, n., *conduite*, f.

confide, *confier*.

confusion, *confusion*, f.

conquer, *vaincre*, irr.

consent, *consentir*, irr.

consider, *considérer*,  
(think) *réfléchir*.

considerable, *considé-  
rable*.

console, *soulager*.

consul, *consul*, m.

contain, *contenir*, irr.

content, *content*.

continue, *continuer*.

continuous, *continu*.

contract, *contrat*, m.

contractor, *contractant*,  
m.; *entrepreneur*, m.

convince, *convaincre*, irr.

copper, *cuire*, m.

copy-book, *cahier*, m.

cordial, *cordial*.

correctly, *correctement*;  
(in tune) *juste*.

cost, v., *coûter*.

cost, n., (expense) *frais*,  
m.; (value) *prix*.

country, (gen'ly) *pays*,  
m.; (region) *contrée*,

f.; (native c.) *patrie*,  
f.; (as opposed to the  
city) *campagne*, f.

courage, *courage*, m.

courageously, *coura-  
geusement*.

course, *cours*, m.

court, *cour*, f.

cousin, *cousin*, m.; *cou-  
sine*, f.

cover, *couvrir*, irr.

covet, *rechercher*.

create, *créer*.

crime, *crime*, m.

crowd, *foule*, f.

crush, *écraser*.

cry, *crier*, — out, *s'écrier*;  
— for help, *crier au  
secours*.

curate, *curé*, m.

curious, *curieux*.

custom, *usage*, m.

cypress, *cypres*, m.

## D.

dangerous, *dangereux*.

dare, *oser*.

dark, obscure; be —,  
*faire nuit*.

date (the fruit), *datte*, f.

daughter, *filie*, f.

day, *jour*, m.

dead, *mort*.

dear, *cher*.

death, *mort*, f.

death-bed, *lit* (m.) *de  
mort*.

debt, *dette*, f.

deceased, *défunt*.

deception, *déception*, f.

decide, *décider*, tr. or  
intr. (as tr. also =  
'cause to decide, in-  
duce').

decision, *décision*, f.

declare, *déclarer*.

deep, *profond*.

defeat, v., *défaire*.

defend, *défendre*.

defy, *défier*.

degrade, *dégrader*.

delicacy, *délicatesse*, f.

delicate, *délicieux*, *déli-  
cat*.

delighted, *charmé*.

delightful, *délicieux*.

deliver, *livrer*; *délivrer*.

Denmark, *Danemark*, m.

deny, *nier*, *dénier*.

depend, *dépendre* (on, de).

deplore, *déplore*.

descend, *descendre*.

desert, n., *désert*, m.

desire, *désirer*.

despicable, *méprisable*.

despise, *mépriser*.

destroy, *détruire*, irr.;  
*faire* (irr.) *périr*.

devote, *dévouer*.

die, *mourir*, irr.

1. diet (regulated food),  
*diète*, f.; (food) *nour-  
riture*, f.

2. diet (legislative as-  
sembly), *diète*, f., (*les*)  
*états*, m. pl.

difference, *différence*, f.

different, *différent*.

differently, *différemment*,  
*diversement*.

difficult, *difficile*.  
 dignity, *dignité*, f.  
 diligent, *diligent*.  
 dine, *dîner*.  
 disappear, *disparaître*,  
 irr.  
 discover, *découvrir*, irr.  
 disgrace, n., *déshonneur*,  
 m.; *honte*, f.  
 disgrace, v., *déshonorer*,  
*avilir*.  
 display, *étaler*.  
 dispose, *disposer*.  
 distrust, v., *se défier de*.  
 divine, *divin*.  
 divinity, *divinité*.  
 do, *faire*, irr.; *rendre*.  
 doctor, *médecin*, m.  
 document, *document*, m.  
 dog, *chien*, m.  
 dollar, *dollar*, m.  
 donation, *donation*, f.  
 door, *porte*, f.  
 doubt, n., *doute*, m.  
 doubt, v., *douter*.  
 draw (out), *tirer*.  
 dress (one's self), *s'habiller*.  
 drink, *boire*, irr.  
 ducat, *ducat*, m.  
 dull, (tedious) *ennuyeux*; (stupid) *stupide*;  
 (blunt) *émoussé*.  
 duty, *devoir*, m.

## E.

each, adj., *chaque*; —  
 one, n., *chacun*; —  
 other, *l'un l'autre* (294);  
*se* (150).

early, *de bonne heure*.  
 earth, *terre*, f.  
 ease, *facilité*, f.  
 eat, *manger*.  
 effect, *effet*, m.  
 effort, *effort*, m.  
 Egyptian, adj., *égyptien*;  
 n., *Égyptien*, m.  
 elector, *électeur*, m.  
 embark, *s'embarquer*.  
 embarrassment, *embarras*, m.  
 emblem, *emblème*, m.  
 emigrant, *émigrant*, m.  
 Emily, *Emilie*.  
 emperor, *empereur*, m.  
 empire, *empire*, m.  
 enclosed, *inclus, ci-joint*.  
 end, n., *fin*, f.; (extremity) *bout*, m.  
 end, v., *finir*.  
 endeavor, *s'efforcer*.  
 endowed (favored), *par-tagé*.  
 engagement, *engagement*,  
 m.  
 engineer, *ingénieur*, m.  
 English, adj., *anglais* or  
*d'Angleterre*; n., *Anglais*,  
 m. pl.  
 Englishman, *Anglais*, m.  
 engraving, *gravure*, f.  
 enjoy, *jouir de, posséder*;  
 refl. *s'amuser, se réjouir*.  
 enjoyment, *plaisir*, m.;  
*jouissance*, f.  
 enlighten, *illuminer*.  
 enmity, *inimitié*, f.  
 enormous, *énorme*.

enrich, *enrichir*.  
 enslave, *asservir*, irr.  
 enter, *entrer*.  
 envy, *envie*, f.  
 envy, v., *envier*.  
 equally, *également*.  
 error, *erreur*, f.; *faute*, f.  
 escape, tr., *échapper à*;  
 intr., *s'échapper*.  
 escort, *escorte*, f.  
 essay, *essai*, m.  
 Europe, *Europe*, f.  
 even, adv., *même*.  
 ever, (always) *toujours*;  
 (at any time) *jamais*.  
 every one, *chacun*.  
 everybody, *tout le monde*.  
 everywhere, *partout*.  
 excellent, *excellent*.  
 except, *excepté* (219. 4).  
 exclaim, *s'écrier*.  
 excuse, *excuse*, f.  
 excuse, v., *excuser*.  
 exercise, *exercice*, m.;  
 (transl'n into a foreign  
 lang.) *thème*, m.  
 exile, *exil*.  
 expect, *attendre*.  
 expense, *dépense*, f.;  
*dépens*, m. pl.  
 expose, *exposer*.  
 expression, *expression*, f.  
 exquisite, *exquis*.  
 extend, tr., *étendre*; intr.,  
*s'étendre*.  
 extraordinary, *extraordinaire*.  
 extreme, *extrême, le plus grand*.  
 eye, *œil*, m. (pl. *yeux*).



## F.

fact, *suit*, m.  
 fade (away), *passer*.  
 faithful, *fidèle*.  
 fall, *tomber*.  
 false, *faux*.  
 falseness, *perfidie*, f.  
 family, *famille*, f.  
 famous, *fameux*, *célèbre*.  
 'farthing,' *sou*, m.  
 fate, *destin*, *sort*, m.  
 father, *père*, m.  
 fatiguing, *fatigant*.  
 fault, (mistake) *faute*, f.;  
 (defect) *défaute*, m.  
 fear, v., *craindre*, irr.;  
*appréhender*.  
 fear, n., *crainte*, f.; *peur*,  
 f.  
 feather, *plume*, f.  
 feeble, *faible*.  
 feel, *sentir*; (touch)  
*toucher*.  
 feeling, *sentiment*, m.  
 fewer, *moins*.  
 field, *champ*, m.; — of  
 battle, *champ de ba-*  
*taille*.  
 finally, *à la fin*, *enfin*.  
 find, *trouver*.  
 fine, *beau* (75).  
 finish, *finir*.  
 fire, *feu*, m.  
 first: at —, *d'abord*.  
 flake, *flocon*, m.  
 flee, *fuir*, *prendre* (irr.),  
*la fuite*.  
 flower, *fleur*, f.  
 fly, *voler*.  
 fog, *brouillard*, m.

follow, *suivre*.  
 folly, *folie*, f.; *sottise*, f.  
 fond: be — of, *aimer*.  
 foot, *pied*, m.  
 for, *pour*; (during) *pen-*  
*dant*; (since) *depuis*.  
 forbid, *défendre*.  
 force, *forcer*, *contraindre*.  
 forget, *oublier*.  
 form, n., *forme*, f.  
 form, v., *former*.  
 fortitude, *fortitude*, f.  
 fortune, *fortune*, f.  
 France, *France*, f.  
 franc, *franc*, m.  
 Frederick, *Frédéric*.  
 French, *français*, de  
*France*.  
 Frenchman, *Français*, m.  
 friend, *ami*, m.  
 frighten, *effrayer*.  
 from, *de*; (of time)  
*depuis*.  
 fruit, *fruit*, m.  
 fulfil, *remplir*.  
 full, *plein*.

## G.

gain, *gagner*, *acquérir*;  
 (a victory) *remporter*.  
 gather, *cueillir*, irr.  
 general, *général*, m.  
 gentleman, *monsieur* (pl.  
*messieurs*); (man of  
 rank) *gentilhomme* (pl.  
*gentilshommes*).  
 gentleness, *douceur*, f.  
 German, adj., *allemand*,  
*d'Allemagne*; n., *Alle-*  
*mand*, f.

Germany, *Allemagne*, f.  
 get, *obtenir*, irr.; *recevoir*,  
 irr.; (when expletive  
 it is untranslated).  
 girl, *filie*, f.  
 give, *donner*.  
 glacier, *glacier*, m.  
 glad or very glad, *bien-*  
*aise*.  
 glorious, *glorieux*.  
 glory, *gloire*, f.  
 glove, *gant*, m.  
 go, *aller*, irr.; — out,  
*sortir*; — away, *s'en*  
*aller*.  
 gold, or, m.  
 good, *bon*.  
 good-natured, *bénin* (f.  
 70), *affable*.  
 govern, *gouverner*.  
 government, *gouverne-*  
*ment*, m.  
 grandson, *petit-fils*, m.  
 grant, *accorder*; (admit)  
*avouer*.  
 grave, n., *tombeau*, m.  
 grave, adj., *grave*, *sérieux*.  
 great, *grand*.  
 Great Britain, *Grande-*  
*Bretagne*, f.  
 Greek, *grec* (76.1).  
 green, *vert*.  
 Grenada, *Grenade*, f.  
 grow, *croître*, irr.; —  
 pale, *pâler*.  
 guard, *garde*, f.; (watch-  
 man) *garde*, m.  
 guardian (of an orphan.  
 etc.), *tuteur*; (watch-  
 man, keeper) *gardien*.

guilty, *coupable*.  
gun, *fusil* (*l'*silent:23,-il),  
m.; (cannon) *canon*.  
Gustavus Adolphus,  
*Gustave Adolphe*.

## H.

half, adj., *demi*; s., *demie*,  
*moitié*.  
hand, *main*, f.  
handkerchief, *mouchoir*,  
m.  
happen, *arriver*.  
happiness, *bonheur*, m.  
happy, *heureux*.  
hard, *dur*.  
harden, *durcir*.  
hardly, *à peine*.  
harp, *harpe*.  
hasten, tr., *hâter, accélérer*;  
intr., se *hâter*, se  
*dépêcher, s'empresser*.  
hate, *haïr* (132.3).  
hatred, *haine*, f.  
hazel-nut, *noisette*, f.  
head, *tête*, f.  
head-ache, *mal de tête*,  
m.  
health, *santé*, f.  
healthful, *sain, salubre*.  
hear, *entendre, ouïr*, irr.  
heaven, *ciel*, m.  
heir, *héritier*, m.  
help, v., *aider*.  
help, n., *aide*, f.  
Henry, *'Henri*.  
here, *ici*; — and there,  
*ça et là*.  
hero, *'héros*, m.  
hesitation, *hésitation*, f.

hat, *chapeau*, m.  
high, *'haut, grand, élevé*;  
and cf.  
hill, *colline*, f.  
history, *histoire*, f.  
hitherto, *jusqu'ici*.  
homage, *hommage*, m.  
home, used adverbially,  
*chez moi* (*toi*, etc. acc'g  
to whose home is  
meant); *à la maison*.  
homely, *simple, laid*.  
Homer, *Homère*.  
honest, *honnête*.  
honor, n., *honneur*, m.  
honor, v., *honorer*.  
honorable, *honorable*,  
*digne d'honneur*.  
hope, v., *espérer*.  
hope, n., *espérance*, f.;  
*espoir*, m.  
horse, *cheval*, m.  
horseback: on —, *à*  
*cheval*.  
hour, *heure*, f.  
house, *maison*, f.; at my  
(thy, etc.) —, *chez*  
*moi* (*toi*, etc.).  
however, adv., *quelque*  
(or tout) . . . *que*; conj.,  
*cependant, pourtant*.  
hunger, *faim*, f.  
hungry: be —, *avoir*  
*faim*.  
hunter, *chasseur*, m.  
husband, *mari*, m.

## I.

ice, *glace*, f.  
icicle, *glaçon*, m.

idle, *paresseux*.  
idleness, *paresse*, f.  
ill, adv., *mal*.  
imagine, *imaginer, s'ima-*  
*giner*.  
immense, *immense*.  
impossible, *impossible*.  
in, en, dans, *à*.  
inch, *pouce*, m.  
India, *Indes*, f. pl.  
indicate, *témoigner*.  
industrious, *industrieux*.  
infinite, *infini*.  
infirm, *infirm*.  
inform, *instruire*, irr.  
ingratitude, *ingratitude*,  
f.  
inkstand, *encrier*, m.  
inspector, *inspecteur*, m.  
instance: for —, *par*  
*exemple*.  
instruction, *instruction*, f.  
intend, *compter*.  
interest, *intérêt*, m.  
interesting, *intéressant*.  
introduce, *introduire*,  
irr.; *présenter*.  
iron, *fer*, m.  
irregular, *irrégulier*.  
Isabella, *Isabelle*.  
Italy, *Italie*, f.  
J.  
jaded, *lassé*.  
January, *janvier*, m.  
jewel, *bijou*, m.  
judge, *juge*, m.  
July, *juillet*, m.  
June, *juin*, m.  
just, *juste*.  
justice, *justice*, f.

**K.**

keep, *tenir*, irr.; *garder*,  
*retenir*, irr.; — *away*, *se*  
*tenir éloigné*, *s'éloigner*.

key, *clef*, f.

kill, *tuer*.

kilogram, *kilogramme*, m.

kindness, *bonté*.

king, *roi*, m.

kingdom, *royaume*, m.

knife, *couteau*, m.

know, *savoir*, irr.; (be  
 acquainted with) *con-*  
*naître*, irr.

knowledge, *connaissance*,  
 f.

**L.**

labor, v., *travailler*.

laborious, *laborieux*.

lad, *garçon*, m.

lady, *dame*, f.; young —,  
*demoiselle*, f.

language, *langue*, f.

larceny, *larcin*, m.

large, *gros*, *grand*.

last, *dernier*; at —, *enfin*.

late (of the dead), *feu*  
 (210, note 3).

later, *plus tard*.

Lacedemonian, *Lacédé-*  
*monien*, m.

laugh, *rire*, irr.

law, *loi*, f.

lawyer, *avocat*, m.

layer, *couche*, f.

lead, *plomb*, m.

lead, *conduire*, irr.; *mener*.

league (= ab. 3 miles),  
*lieue*, f.

learn, *apprendre*, irr.

learned, *savant*.

learning, *science*, f.

least, *le moins*; at —, *du*  
*moins* (au moins: 394).

leather-bag, *sac de cuir*,  
 m.

leave, tr., (leave behind)  
*laisser*; (abandon)  
*quitter*; intr., *partir*,  
 irr.; *disparaître*, irr.

legion, *légion*, f.

lend, *prêter*.

less, *moins*,

letter, *lettre*, f.

letter-carrier, *facteur*, m.

life, *vie*, f.

light, adj., *léger*.

like, adv., *comme*.

like, v., *aimer*.

listen, *écouter*.

literature, *littérature*, f.;  
*lettres*, f. pl.

little, adv., *peu*.

lieutenant, *lieutenant*, m.

live (be alive), *vivre*, irr.;  
 (dwell) *demeurer*.

living, n., *vie*, f.

loins, *reins*, m. pl.

long, *long*.

look (appear), v., *avoir*  
*l'air* (219.3); — at, *re-*  
*garder*; — for, *chercher*.

look, n., *regard*, m.

lose, *perdre*; — one's  
 way, *s'égayer*.

loss, *perte*, f.

love, v., *aimer*.

love, n., *amour*, m. or f.  
 (62. a).

low, *bas*; in a — tone, *bas*.  
 luck, *bonheur*, m., *bonne*  
*fortune*, f.; *chance*, f.

**M.**

magnificent, *magnifique*.

make, *faire*, irr.

man, *homme*, m.

manliness, *fermeté*, f.

manner, *manière*; (*cus-*  
*toms*) *mœurs*, f. pl.; in  
 that —, *de la sorte*.

many, *beaucoup de*, *bien*  
*des* (198).

march, v., *marcher*.

march, n., *marche*, f.

mark, *marquer*.

marriage, *hymen*, m.

marry, tr., (give or unite)  
*marier*; (take to one's  
 self) *épouser*; intr., *se*  
*marier*; be married, *se*  
*marier*.

Mary, *Marie*, f.

mass, *masse*, f.; *amas*, m.

may, *peux* etc., of *pou-*  
*voir*, irr.

mean (low), *bas*.

means, *moyen*, m.; (*pe-*  
*cuniary*) *moyens*, m. pl.

meat, *viande*, f.

meddle, *se mêler*.

meet, *rencontrer*.

melt, *fondre*.

merchant, *marchand*, m.

metal, *métal*, m.

Mexico, *Mexique*, m.

might, *force*, f.

mind, *esprit*, m.

minister, *ministre*, m.

minute, *minute*, f.  
 miser, *avare*, m.  
 misfortune, *malheur*, m.  
 model, *modèle*, m.  
 moderation, *modération*, f.  
 modest, *modeste*.  
 moment, *moment*, m.  
 monarch, *monarque*, m.  
 Monday, *lundi*, m.  
 money, *argent*, m.  
 morning, *matin*, m.  
 mortal, *mortel*.  
 most, *la plupart* (198, 299. b).  
 mother, *mère*, f.  
 mount, *mont*, m.  
 mountain, *montagne*, f.  
 mouth, *bouche*, f.  
 much, *beaucoup de*, *bien du* (etc.); too —, *trop*.  
 mussulman, *musulman*, m.  
 must (*faut* etc. of),  *falloir*, irr.

## N.

name, *nom*, m.  
 name, v., *nommer*.  
 Napoleon, *Napoléon*.  
 nation, *nation*, f.  
 national, *national*.  
 nature, *nature*, f.  
 near, *près de*.  
 necessary, *nécessaire*.  
 necessity, *nécessité*, f.  
 neck, *cou*, m.  
 need, n., *nécessité*, *besoin*, m.; be in — of, *avoir besoin de*.  
 need, v., *avoir besoin de*.  
 needle, *aiguille*, f.  
 neglect, *négliger*.

neighbor, *voisin*, m.  
 neither, cf. 390.  
 nephew, *neveu*, m.  
 Netherlands, *Pays-Bas*, m. pl.  
 never, *ne . . . jamais* (388).  
 new, *nouveau* (75, 222), *neuf* (69).  
 news, *nouvelle*, f., or -s.  
 nice, *joli*.  
 no longer, *ne plus*.  
 Normandy, *Normandie*, f.  
 nose, *nez*, m.  
 not, cf. *ne*, index.  
 nothing, *ne . . . rien* (390).  
 nothingness, *néant*, m.  
 notice, *apercevoir*, irr.  
 novel, *nouveau* (75, 222).  
 now, *maintenant*.  
 number, *nombre*, m.  
 numerous, *nombreux*.  
 nun, *nonne*, f.

## O.

obedience, *obéissance*, f.  
 obey, *obéir*.  
 oblige, *obliger*.  
 observe, *observer*.  
 obtain, *obtenir*, irr.  
 o'clock, *heure*, f. (*deux heures* 'two o'clock' etc.).  
 of, *de*; think —, *penser à*; — it (etc.), *en* (101, 244).  
 often, *souvent*.  
 old, *vieux* (75).  
 on, *sur*; live —, *vivre de*.  
 once, *une fois*; (formerly) *jadis*.

only, adj., *seul*, *unique*.  
 only, adv., *ne . . . que* (388), *seulement*.  
 open, v., *ouvrir*, irr.  
 open, adj., *ouvert*.  
 opinion, *opinion*, f.  
 or, *ou*.  
 order, *ordre*, m.  
 ornament, n., *ornement*, m.  
 ornament, v., *orner*, *décorer*.  
 ornamental, *d'ornement*, *beau*.  
 other, *autre*.  
 otherwise, *autrement*.  
 ought (*devrais* etc.: —, of) *devoir*, irr.  
 out of, *hors de*.  
 outlet, *embouchure*, f.  
 over, *sur*, *au-dessus de*; (passed) *passé*.  
 overcoat, *surtout*, m.  
 overwhelm, *accabler*, *comblér*.

## P.

page (boy), *page*, m.  
 pain, *peine*, f.  
 painful, *douloureux*; (toil-some) *pénible*.  
 painting, *peinture*, f.  
 palace, *palais*, m.  
 pale, *pâle*; grow —, *pâlir*.  
 paper (news-), *journal*, m.  
 pardon, n., *pardon*, m.  
 pardon, v., *pardoner*.  
 parents, *parents*, m. pl.  
 part, *part*, f., *partie*, f.; for the most —, *pour la plupart*, *le plus ordinairement*.

particle, *particule*, f.  
 pass, *passer*.  
 passage, *passage*, m.  
 path, *passage*, m.  
 patience, *patience*, f.  
 pay, v., *payer*.  
 pay, n., *gages*, m. pl.  
 pear, *poire*, f.  
 pearl, *perle*, f.  
 pen, *plume*, f.  
 pencil, *crayon*, m.  
 penetrate, *pénétrer*.  
 penetrating, *pénétrent*.  
 penknife, *canif*, m.  
 physician, *docteur*, m.,  
*médecin*, m.  
 people (nation), *peuple*,  
 (folks) *gens* (62. d);  
 (indef.) *on*; other —,  
*autrui* (289); rich —  
 (gen'y) *les riches*.  
 perceive, *apercevoir*, irr.,  
 (become cognizant)  
*s'apercevoir de*.  
 perfectly, *parfaitement*.  
 peril, *péril*, m.  
 perseverance, *persévérance*, f.  
 Persian, *de Perse, persan*.  
 person, *personne*, f.  
 Peter, *Pierre*.  
 pick up, *ramasser*.  
 picture, *tableau*, m.  
 pink, *aillet*, m.  
 pity : it's a —, *c'est dom-  
 mage*.  
 place, *place*, f., *lieu*, m.;  
 take —, *se passer*.  
 plain, adj., *plain*, *simple*.  
 plain, n., *plaine*, f.

plan, *plan*, m., *projet*, m.  
 plant, *plante*, f.; plants,  
*plantes, végétaux*, m. pl.  
 play, v., *jouer*.  
 play, n., *jeu*, m.  
 player, *joueur*, m.  
 please, *plaire* (irr.) à; if  
 you —, *s'il vous plaît*.  
 pleasure, *plaisir*, m.  
 pocket, *poche*, f.  
 poem, *poème*, m.  
 polecat, *fouine*, f.  
 polite, *poli*.  
 Pompey, *Pompée*.  
 poor, *pauvre* (222).  
 position, *position*, f.  
 possess, *posséder*.  
 possession, *possession*, f.  
 post-office, *poste*, f.  
 pound, *livre*, f.  
 poverty, *pauvreté*, f.  
*misère*, f.  
 power, *pouvoir*, m.  
 powerful, *puissant*.  
 powerfully, *fortement*.  
 praise, *louer*.  
 precious stones, *pierr-  
 ries*, f. pl.  
 prefer, *préférer*.  
 present, adj., *présent*.  
 present, n., *présent*, m.  
 present, v., *présenter*.  
 press (together), *com-  
 primer*.  
 pretext, *prétexte*, m.  
 pretty, *joli, beau*.  
 prevent, *empêcher*.  
 price, *prix*, m.  
 pride, *orgueil*, m.  
 prize, *prix*, m.

probable, *probable*.  
 product, *produit*, m.  
 proffer, *offrir*, irr.  
 profound, *profond*.  
 project, *projet*, m.  
 promise, v., *promettre*,  
 irr.  
 promise, n., *promesse*, f.  
 proof, *preuve*, f.  
 proposition, *proposition*,  
 f.  
 protect, *protéger, pré-  
 server*.  
 provided, *pourvu que*.  
 province, *province*, f.  
 prudence, *prudence*, f.  
 Prussia, *Prusse*, f.  
 public, *public* (f. 76).  
 punish, *punir*.  
 purchase, *acheter*.  
 purpose : on —, *à dessein*.  
 purposely, *à dessein*.  
 purse, *bourse*, f.  
 pursue, *poursuivre*, irr.  
 put, *mettre*, irr.; — off,  
*remettre*.  
 Pyrenees, *Pyénées*, m.  
 pl.

## Q.

queen, *reine*, f.  
 quick, *rapide*.  
 quiet, *tranquille*.

## R.

rain, *pleuvoir*, irr.  
 rain, n., *pluie*, f.  
 rare, *rare*.  
 rarely, *rarement*.  
 rashness, *témérité*, f.  
 ray, *rayon*, m.  
 read, *lire*, irr.

ready, *prêt* (with à).  
 receive, *recevoir*, irr.  
 recommend, *recommander*; to be —ed, *recommandable*.  
 red, *rouge*.  
 redouble, *redoubler*.  
 reflection, *réflexion*, f.  
 refuge, *refuge*, m.; take —, *se réfugier*.  
 regard, *égard*, m.  
 rejoice, tr., *réjouir*; intr., *se réjouir*.  
 relation (affinity), *relation*, f.; (reference) *rapport*, m.; (kindred) *parent*, m.  
 relative, *parent*, m.  
 religion, *religion*, f.  
 rely, *se fier*.  
 remain (be left), *rester*, *être de reste*.  
 remark, *remarque*, f.  
 remedy, *remède*, m.  
 remember, *se rappeler*.  
 remorse, *remords*, m.  
 render, *rendre*.  
 repeat, *répéter*.  
 repent, *se repentir* (irr.) *de*.  
 reply, *répondre*.  
 reproach, v., *reprocher*.  
 reproach, n., *reproche*, m.  
 republic, *république*, f.  
 reputation, *réputation*, f.  
 request, v., *prier*, *demande*.  
 request, n., *demande*, f.  
 require, *exiger*.  
 resemble, *ressembler à*.

respect, v., *respecter*.  
 respect, n., *respect*, m.  
 respond, *répondre*.  
 rest, *reposer*.  
 restrain, *retenir*, irr.  
 retreat, *retraite*, f.  
 return, v., *retourner*; be —ed, *être de retour*; — to, *rentrer*.  
 return, n., *retour*, m.  
 revolution, *révolution*, f.  
 reward, *récompense*, f.  
 Rhine, *Rhin*, m.  
 rich, *riche*.  
 ride (on a horse), *monter*.  
 ridiculous, *ridicule*.  
 right, n., *droit*, m.  
 right, adj., *juste*; (not left) *droit*; be — (of persons), *avoir raison*; to the —, *à droite* (*main*, f., 'hand,' being understood).  
 ring, *sonner*.  
 rise, v., (get up) *se lever*, *monter*.  
 rise, n., *naissance*, f.  
 road, *chemin*, m.; *route*, f.  
 Roman, *romain*; n., *Romain*.  
 room, *chambre*, f.  
 rose, *rose*, f.  
 round, adj., *rond*.  
 round, adv., = around.  
 rout, *mettre* (irr.) *en déroute*.  
 ruin, n., *ruine*, f.  
 ruin, v., *ruiner*, *perdre* (tr.); — ed, *ruiné*.

ruler, *gouverneur*, m.; *souverain*, m.  
 run, *courir*, irr.  
 Russia, *Russie*, f.  
 Russian, *russe*, *de Russie*; n., *Russe*.

## S.

sacrifice, *sacrifice*, m.  
 safety, *sûreté*, f.  
 salary, *salaire*, m.  
 same, *même*.  
 sand, *sable*, m.  
 savage, *sauvage*.  
 Saxony, *Saxe*, f.  
 say, *dire*, irr.  
 scamp, *coquin*, m.  
 scenery, *scènes*, f. pl., *vues*, f. pl.  
 Scipio, *Scipion*.  
 school-boy, *écolier*, m.  
 science, *science*, f.  
 Scotch, *écossais*, *d'Écosse*; n., *Écossais*.  
 scold, *blâmer*.  
 sea, *mer*, f.  
 security, *garantie*, f.  
 see, *voir*, irr.; *apercevoir*, irr.; — again, *rev-oir*, irr.  
 seek, *chercher*.  
 seem, *paraître*, irr.  
 seize, *s'emparer de*.  
 self, *même* (107.3).  
 selfish, *égoïste*.  
 sell, *vendre*.  
 send, *envoyer*, irr.  
 sense, *sens*, m.  
 separate, *séparer*.

servant-girl, *bonne*, f.,  
*domestique*, f.  
 serve, *servir*, irr.  
 several, *plusieurs*.  
 severe, *sévère*.  
 shed, *répandre*, *verser*.  
 shoe, *soulier*, m.  
 shoemaker, *cordonnier*,  
 m.  
 show, *montrer*.  
 sick, *malade*.  
 sight, *rue*, f.  
 silk, *soie*, f.  
 silver, *argent*, m.  
 simple, *simple*.  
 simplicity, *simplicité*, f.  
 since, *depuis*.  
 sing, *chanter*.  
 single, *seul*.  
 sir, *monsieur*, m.  
 sister, *sœur*, f.  
 skilful, *habile*.  
 sky, *ciel*, m.  
 sleep, *dormir*, irr.  
 sleepy: be —, *avoir*  
*sommeil*.  
 slender (thin), *mince*;  
 (graceful) *svelte*.  
 slip, *glisser*.  
 slope, *pente*, f.  
 slow, *lent*; be (5 minutes  
 etc.) *slow*, *retarder de*  
 (5 minutes etc.).  
 slumber, *sommeiller*.  
 smile, v., *sourire*, irr.  
 smile, n., *sourire*, m.  
 snatch, *arracher*.  
 snow, *neige*, f.  
 snow-slip, *éboulement de*  
*neige*.

society, *société*, f.  
 soever, *qui (quoi) que ce*  
*soit*: 287, note.  
 softly, *doucement*.  
 soldier, *soldat*, m.  
 some, *du* etc. (*de*); (a  
 few) *quelques*; (of it  
 etc.) *en*.  
 somebody, *quelqu'un*.  
 something, *quelque chose*.  
 sometimes, *quelquefois*.  
 son,  *fils*, m.  
 soon, *bientôt*; as — as,  
*aussitôt que*.  
 sore: have (a) —, *avoir*  
*mal à*.  
 sorrow, *chagrin*, m.  
 sorry, *fâché* (for *de*).  
 soul, *âme*, f.  
 source, *source*, f.  
 southern, *méridional*.  
 Spain, *Espagne*, f.  
 spare, *épargner*.  
 speak, *parler*.  
 standard, *étendard*, m.  
 star, *étoile*, f.  
 starling, *sansonnet*, m.  
 start, *partir*, irr.  
 state, *état*, m.  
 steal away, *s'esquiver*.  
 steel, *acier*, m.  
 steep, *rapide*.  
 stick out, *sortir*, irr.  
 stone, *pierre*, f.  
 stop, *s'arrêter*.  
 store-keeper, *marchand*,  
 m.  
 stream, *fleuve*, m.  
 street, *rue*, f.  
 study, n., *étude*.

study, v., *étudier*.  
 stuff, *étouffe*, f.  
 style, *style*, m.; *manière*, f.  
 subject, *sujet*, m.; on the  
 —, *là dessus*.  
 submit, intr., *se soumettre*,  
 irr.  
 succeed, *réussir*, *parvenir*,  
 irr.  
 success, *succès*, m.  
 suffer, *souffrir*, irr.  
 sufficient, *suffisant*; be  
 —, *suffire*, irr.  
 sugar, *sucre*, m.  
 sultana, *sultane*, f.  
 summer, *été*, m.  
 summit, *sommet*, m.  
 sun, *soleil*, m.  
 suppose, *supposer*.  
 sure, *sûr*.  
 surely, *sûrement*, *certaine-*  
*ment*.  
 surmise, *soupçonner*.  
 surprised, *surpris*.  
 surprising, *surprenant*.  
 surrender, *abandonner*.  
 surround, *environner*.  
 suspect, *soupçonner*.  
 sustain, *soutenir*.  
 Swede, *Suédois*.  
 Sweden, *Suède*, f.  
 sweet, *doux*.  
 swim, *nager*.  
 Switzerland, *Suisse*, f.

## T.

table, *table*, f.  
 tailor, *tailleur*, m.  
 take, *prendre*, irr.  
 — place, *se passer*.

take from (away), *ôter*.  
 tall, *grand, haut*.  
 tea, *thé, m.*  
 teach, *enseigner, apprendre, irr.*  
 teacher, *maître, m.*  
 tear, *n., larme, f.*  
 tear, *v., (away) arracher; (asunder) déchirer.*  
 tell, *dire, irr.*  
 temper, *trempe, f.*  
 tent, *tente, f.*  
 terrify, *effrayer.*  
 territory, *territoire, m.*  
 than, *que, de (225).*  
 thank, *remercier.*  
 theft, *vol, m.*  
 thick, *épais.*  
 thief, *voleur, m.*  
 thimble, *dé, m.*  
 thin, *mince.*  
 thing, *chose, f.*  
 think, *penser; (believe) croire, irr.*  
 thinker, *penseur, m.*  
 third, *troisième (trois); one (a, the) — le tiers.*  
 thirsty: be —, *avoir soif.*  
 through, *par.*  
 throw, *précipiter.*  
 thus, *ainsi.*  
 till, *jusqu'à (ce que).*  
 time, *temps, m.; (of the clock) heure, f.; (successive) fois, f.*  
 tire, *fatiguer.*  
 tired, *fatigué.*  
 tiresome, *ennuyeux.*

to, *à, en, dans; with inf., à, de, pour.*  
 together, *ensemble; — with, avec.*  
 to-day, *aujourd'hui.*  
 to-morrow, *demain.*  
 tomb, *tombeau, m.*  
 to-night, *ce soir.*  
 tooth-ache, *mal aux dents.*  
 torment, *n., tourment, m.*  
 torment, *v., tourmenter.*  
 torrent, *torrent, m.*  
 towards, *vers, envers.*  
 town, *ville, f.*  
 tranquility, *tranquillité, f.*  
 transfer, *déferer.*  
 travel, *voyager.*  
 traverse, *courir.*  
 treason, *trahison, f.*  
 treasure, *trésor, m.*  
 treat, *traiter.*  
 tree, *arbre, m.*  
 tribunal, *tribunal, m.*  
 trifle, *rien, m.*  
 triumph, *n., triomphe, m.*  
 triumph, *v., triompher.*  
 troop, *troupe, f.*  
 trouble, *troubler.*  
 Troy, *Troie.*  
 true, *vrai.*  
 truly, *vraiment.*  
 trust, *se fier à.*  
 truth, *vérité, f.*  
 truthful, *vrai, sincère.*  
 truthfulness, *vérité, f.; vérité, f.*  
 try, *essayer, chercher.*  
 Turk, *Turc.*  
 Turkish, *turc.*

## U.

umbrella, *parapluie, m.*  
 uncertain, *incertain.*  
 uncle, *oncle, m.*  
 undersigned, *soussigné.*  
 understand, *comprendre, irr.*  
 undertake, *entreprendre, irr.*  
 unformed, *naissant.*  
 unfortunate, *infortune, malheureux.*  
 united, *uni.*  
 until, *jusqu'à ce que.*  
 uproar, *rumour, f.*  
 urge, *presser.*  
 use, *usage, m.*  
 useful, *utile.*  
 usefulness, *utilité, f.*  
 useless, *inutile.*  
 usual: as —, *de coutume.*  
 utter, *articuler.*

## V.

vain: in —, *en vain.*  
 valor, *vaillance, f.*  
 value, *valeur, f.*  
 vanity, *vanité, f.*  
 venture, *risquer.*  
 verse, *vers, m.*  
 very, *adv., très; adj., même.*  
 vice, *vice, m.*  
 victory, *victoire, f.*  
 vigor, *vigueur, f.*  
 village, *village, m.*  
 violin, *violon, f.*  
 virtuous, *vertueux.*  
 visit, *v., aller (or venir) voir, rendre visite.*



visit, *n.*, *visite*, *f.*  
 voice, *voix*, *f.*  
 void, *vide*.  
 volume, *volume*, *m.*

**W.**

wait, *attendre*.  
 wall, *mur*, *m.*  
 want, *désirer*.  
 war, *guerre*, *f.*  
 warlike, *belliqueux*.  
 warm, *chaud*; be (feel)  
   —, *avoir chaud*.  
 warn, *avertir*.  
 watch, *v.*, *veiller* (*sur*).  
 watch (timekeeper),  
   *montre*, *f.*  
 water, *n.*, *eau*, *f.*  
 water, *v.*, *abreuver*.  
 way, *chemin*, *m.* etc.; this  
   —, *par ici*; in this —,  
   *de cette manière*; lose  
   one's —, *s'égarer*.  
 weak, *faible*.  
 weariness, *fatigue*, *f.*;  
   *ennui*, *m.*  
 weary, *fatiguer*; refl. *s'en-*  
   *nuir* (19. 2).  
 weasel, *belette*, *f.*  
 weather, *temps*, *m.* What  
   kind of —? *Quel*  
   *temps?*  
 week, *semaine*, *f.*  
 weep, *pleurer*.  
 weight, *poîas*, *m.*

welcome, *adj.*, *bienvenu*;  
   *n.*, *bienvenue*, *f.*  
 well, *adv.*, *bien*.  
 well, *n.*, *puits*, *m.*  
 what, *ce qui* (or *que*).  
 whatever: 212. a, 283,  
   285, 287, 330.  
 when, *quand*, *lorsque*.  
 where, *où*.  
 whether, *si*; — . . . or,  
   *soit . . . soit*, *soit que*  
   (*subj.*) . . . *soit que*.  
 while, *pendant que*, *tandis*  
   *que* (*whilst*, 406), *tout*  
   *en*.  
 white, *blanc*.  
 whoever: 212. b, 286,  
   287, 330.  
 widow, *veuve*, *f.*  
 wife, *femme*, *f.*  
 will, *volonté*, *f.*: (last)  
   *testament*, *m.*  
 win, *gagner*.  
 window, *fenêtre*, *f.*  
 wine, *vin*, *m.*  
 wisdom, *sagesse*, *f.*  
 wise, *sage*.  
 wish, *souhaiter*, *désirer*.  
 with, *avec*, *de*, *par*, *à*.  
 wither, *tr.*, *flétrir*; *intr.*,  
   *se flétrir*.  
 without, *prep.*, *sans*;  
   *conj.*, *sans que*, *à moins*  
   *que*; *adv.*, *dehors*.  
 wolf, *loup*, *m.*

woman, *femme*, *f.*  
 word (written or uttered),  
   *mot*, *m.*; (uttered,  
   and us'ly significant)  
   *parole*, *f.*  
 work, *v.*, *travailler*.  
 work, *n.*, (labor) *travail*,  
   *m.*; (performance)  
   *ouvrage*, *m.*; (literary)  
   *œuvre*, *f.*  
 work-box, *corbeille* (*f.*) *à*  
   *ouvrage*; *boîte*, *f.*  
 world, *monde*, *m.*  
 worse, *adj.*, *pire*; *adv.*,  
   *pis*.  
 worthy, *digne*.  
 wound, *blessure*.  
 write, *écrire*, *irr.*  
 writing, *écriture*, *f.*  
 wrong: be —, *avoir tort*.

**X.**

Xerxes, *Xerxès*.

**Y.**

yard (measure), *mètre*,  
   *m.*  
 year, *année*, *f.*; *an*, *m.*  
 yes, *oui*, *si*.  
 yesterday, *hier*.  
 yet, *encore*.  
 young, *jeune*; — fellow,  
   *jeune homme*.

**Z.**

Zeal, *zèle*, *m.*

# INDEX.

References are to paragraphs (when not exceptionally marked p. = page). All the irregular verbs are here repeated. The alphabetical reference lists 324-330, 344, 347, 351, 353, are omitted.

**a** (*ā*, *à*): hist., 1; pron'n, 14; — *a* elided, 27.  
**à**: with nouns, 212-13 (special uses, 213); — repeated, 217; — with infinit., 350-3; — *à travers*, 216. e.  
*absoudre*: see *résoudre*, 161.  
*abstenir*: cf. *tenir*, 161.  
*abstraire*: cf. *traire*, 161.  
*abuser*: with *de*, 211. d.  
*accent*: stress, 10; — acc. marks, 5.  
*accourir*: cf. *courir*, 161.  
*accroître*: see *croître*, 161.  
*accueillir*: see *cueillir*, 161.  
*acheter*: with *à*, 213. d.  
*acquérir*: 161.  
*acute accent*: 5. a; — changed to grave, 35, 128.  
*adjectives*: history (pron'n, 64; synt., 218); — plural, 66; — fem., 67-8 (one gender, 79); — comparison, 81-5; 224-230: — as nouns, 200, 231; — as adverbs, 166; — agreem't, 219-20; — place, 221-3; — with *de* or *à*, 361; — from pres. pples, 366.  
*adjoindre*: cf. *peindre*, 161.  
*admettre*: cf. *mettre*, 161.  
*adverbs*: history, 162, 372; — single, 164-5 (in *-ment*, 165); — phrases, 167; — comparison, 168; — of quantity requiring *de*, 44, 198, 198. 1; — position, 392, 411; — requiring inversion, 416. b; — pronominal (use of), 101, 244, 244. c, 259.  
**ai** (*ā*): hist., 1; pron'n, 15; for *oi*, 17 (*oi*, 2).  
*aïeul*: pl., 50. a.  
*-ail*: in pl., 50; 50. s.  
*ail*: pl., 50. s.  
*-al*: in pl., 50; 50. s.; 66. s.

*aller*: irr., 161 (*s'en aller*, 161); — with *être*, 142; — as auxil., 318.  
*almanach*: *ch* silent, 23 (*ch*).  
 alphabet: 3.  
*amour*: m. or f., 62. a.  
 Anglo-French words: 430-43.  
*-ant*: in pl. *-ans*, 66. s.  
*ao*: pron'n, 17.  
*aoriste*: a silent, 17 (*ao*).  
*aout*: pron'n, 17 (*aou*).  
*apercevoir*: cf. *recevoir*, 161.  
*apparaître*: cf. *paraître*, 161.  
*apparoir*: 161.  
*appartenir*: cf. *tenir*, 161.  
 appositional noun: no article, 204. B. 1.  
*apprendre*: cf. *prendre*, 161.  
*approcher*: constr., 211. g.  
*après*: with nouns, 216. a; — with infinit., 357.  
*archange*: *ch* = *k*, 23 (*ch*).  
*arracher*: with *à*, 213. d.  
 arrangement of sentence: history, 407; — direct, 409-12; — inverted, 413-18.  
*arriver*: w. *être*, 142.  
 articles: history, 38, 179; — definite, *se le*; — indefinite, *se un*; — partitive, *se partitive* sign; — generic, *se gen. art.*; — omission, 203-4.  
*as*: s heard, 23 (*s*).  
*'as* . . . *as*: 84.  
*assaillir*: 161.  
*assentir*: cf. *sentir*, 161.  
*asseoir*: 161.  
*astreindre*: cf. *peindre*, 161.  
*atteindre*: cf. *peindre*, 161.  
*attendu*: inf. or not, 219. a.  
*attraire*: cf. *traire*, 161.  
*au*: pron'n, 15; — for *à le*,

41; — *au moins*, 394; — *au reste*, 395.  
*aucun*: use, 112. a, 290; — with *ne*, 388, alone, 388. i.  
*aucunement*: with *ne*, 388; alone, 388. i.  
*aussi*, *si*: 393.  
*automne*: m silent: 19. s.  
*autre*: with *ne*, 386. i; — for *autrui*, 289.  
*autrement*: with *ne*, 386. i.  
*autrui*: use, 289.  
*aval*: pl., 50. s.  
*avant*: use, 216. a; — *avant que* with *ne*, 483. i.  
*avec*: use, 216. b.  
*avoir*: conj., 137; hist., 138; — *faim* etc. (without article), 204. A. 1; — *avoir l'air*, 220. s.  
*avril*: pron'n, 23 (*il*).  
*ay*: pron'n, 15.  
**b**: not linked, 33.  
*bapt* = *bat*, 23 (*p*).  
*baril*: l silent, 23 (*il*).  
*battre*: irr., 134. s.  
*beau*: forms, 75; — compar. 81.  
*beaucoup*: with *de*, 44; — compar. 168.  
*bel*: 75.  
*dénin*: f., 70.  
*dénir*: irr., 133.  
*détail*: pl., 50. s.  
*bien*: with *du*, 198; — compar., 168.  
*bijou*: pl., 50. i.  
*bis*: s heard, 23 (*b*).  
*blanc*: f., 76. i.  
*bleu*: pl., 66. i.  
*boeuf*: f in, 23 (*f*).  
*boire*: 161.  
*bon*: compar'n, 82.  
*bouger*: with *ne* alone, 376.  
*bouillir*: 161.  
*braire*: 161.  
*brave*: posit'n, 222.

*brin* = *pas*: 389.

*bruire*: 161.

*c.*: pron'n, 23; — linking, 30; — change to *qu* or *q*, 37, 76, 129.

*ca*: use, 268.

*césura*: 422.

*caillon*: pl., 50.1.

*cap*: *p* heard, 23 (*p*).

*capitals*: 420.

*cardinals*: 88; — for ord'ls, 90.

*carnaval*: pl., 50.1.

*ce*: 107; pronoun, 107.1; — use, 265; — *ce* or *il*, 252; — explet., 266; — with *sembler*, 267; — *ce sont* (edc.) 300; — *ce que* (*que*), 273.1; 280.

*ceci*: use, 268.

*cedilla*: 7.

*ceindre*: cf. *peindre*, 161.

*celu*: use, 268.

*celui*: use, 269 (omitted, 269.1).

*celui-ci*: 269.1; 270.

*celui-là*: 269.1; 270.

*cens*: *s* heard, 23 (*s*).

*cer*: verbs in, 129.

*certain*: posit'n, 222.

*cesser*: with *ne*, 376.

*cet* for *ce*: 107.1.

*ch*: pronounc'n, 23, 24. A.

*chacal*: pl., 50.1.

*chacun*: with *son* or *leur*, 260.

*changer*: *de*, 211. g.

*chaque*: 112.

*chénil*: *t* silent, 23 (*t*).

*chef-d'œuvre*: *f* fail't, 23 (*f*).

*cher*: posit'n, 222.

*chez*: use, 216. c.

*choir*: 161.

*chose*: m. or f., 62. b.

*chou*: pl., 50.1.

*Christ*: *st* in, 23 (*t*).

*chut*: *t* heard, 23 (*t*).

*ciel*: pl., 50.1.

*ci-inclus*: 220.1.

*ci-joint*: 220.1.

*cinq*: pron'n, 88.

*circconcire*: 161.1.

*circoscire*: cf. *écrire*, 161.

*circconceir*: cf. *venir*, 161.

*circumflex*: use, 6. b; in verbs, 124.

*clef*: *f* silent, 23 (*f*).

*clerc*: *c* silent, 23 (*c*).

*clore*: 161.

*comme* or *que*, 400.

*commettre*: cf. *mettre*, 161.

*comparatre*: cf. *paratre*, 161.

comparative: cf. comparison; — with *que* or *de*, 225; — with *ne*, 386.

comparison: of adj., 81-5; 224-30; — of adv. 168.

*complaire*: cf. *plaire*, 161.

complement: subj. or obj., 207.

compounds: nouns (pl.), 53-4; — adj., 80; — tenses, 139; — compounds spelled, 9.1.

*comprendre*: cf. *prendre*, 161.

*compromettre*: cf. *mettre*, 161.

*concevoir*: 161.

*conclure*: 161.

*concourir*: cf. *courir*, 161.

conditional: use, 314-16 (of *devoir*, *pouvoir*, *savoir*, 317. b).

*conduire*: 161.

*confire*: cf. *suffire*, 161.

*conjoindre*: cf. *peindre*, 161.

conjunctions: 173-4; — requiring subjunct., 326, 327, 330.

*connaître*: 16.

*conquérir*: cf. *acquérir*, 161.

*conseiller*: with *à*, 213. d.

*consentir*: cf. *sentir*, 161.

consonants: pron'n, 20-3 (see each, in alphab'l order).

*construire*: cf. *conduire*, 161.

*contenir*: cf. *tenir*, 161.

contraction: 41.

*contraindre*: cf. *peindre*, 161.

*contredire*: cf. *dire*, 161.

*contrefaire*: cf. *faire*, 161.

*contrevenir*: cf. *venir*, 161.

*convénir*: cf. *venir*, 161.

*coudre*: 161.

*courir*: 161.

*couchouc*: *c* silent, 23 (*c*).

*couverir*: 161.

*craindre*: cf. *peindre*, 161;

— with subj. 325; and *ne*, 383.

*croc*: *c* silent, 23 (*c*).

*croire*: 161.

*croître*: 161.

*cueillir*: 161.

*cuiller*: *r* heard, 23 (*r*).

*cuire*: cf. *conduire*, 161.

*cul* = *cu*: 23 (p. 21).

*d*: linking, 30, 33.

*damner*: *m* silent, 19.1.

*dans*: use, 214.

*date*: 90, 237.

dative of pers'l pron.: 243.

*davantage*: use, 228, 396.

*de*: as part. sign, cf. *partitive sign*; — with nouns, 210-11; — with infinit., 346-9, 353; — repeated, 217; — with geogr'l names, 192. b; — to denote character, 199.1; — *de*, 'in', 211. d; 'as', 211. f; — in comparison, 211. d, e (for *que*, 84, 225).

*décéder*: with *être*, 142.

*décevoir*: cf. *recevoir*, 161.

*déchoir*: 161.

*décider*: with *de*, 211. g.

*déclorer*: cf. *clor*, 161.

*déconfrir*: cf. *suffire*, 161.

*découdre*: cf. *coudre*, 161.

*découvrir*: cf. *couvrir*, 161.

*décrire*: cf. *écrire*, 161.

*décrotte*: cf. *croître*, 161.

*dédire*: cf. *dire*, 161.

*déduire*: cf. *conduire*, 161.

*défaillir*: cf. *faillir*, 161.

*défaire*: cf. *faire*, 161.

defective verbs: cf. 161 (all marked with an asterisk).

definite article: cf. *le* (this index).

*déjoindre*: cf. *joindre*, 161.

*délire*: m. or f., 62. a.

*démander*: *à*, 213. d.

*démentir*: cf. *sentir*, 161.

*démettre*: cf. *mettre*, 161.

*demi*: inf. or not, 220.1.

demonstratives: 107, 264-70.

*démouvoir*: cf. *mouvoir*, 161.

*départir*: cf. *partir*, 161.

*dépeindre*: cf. *peindre*, 161.

*déplaire*: cf. *plaire*, 161.

*dépourvoir*: cf. *voir*, 161.

*déprendre*: cf. *prendre*, 161.

*depuis que*: with *ne*, 385.

*dernier*: posit'n, 222.

*des, dès*: distinc'n, 5. a. 1.

*desapprendre*: cf. *prendre*, 161.

*détendre*: cf. *peindre*, 161.

*détenir*: cf. *tenir*, 161.

*détruire*: cf. *conduire*, 161.

*devant*: *avant*, 216. a.

*devenir*: cf. *venir*, 161.

*dévêtir*: cf. *vêtir*, 161.

*devoir*: conj., 161; — use, 317. a. b. c.

diacresis: 6. 77.

*différent*: place, 222.

*difficile*: *de* or *à*, 361.

diphthongs: 16.

*dire*: 161.

*disconvenir*: cf. *venir*, 161.

*déjoindre*: cf. *joindre*, 161.

*disparatre*: cf. *paratre*, 161.

*dissoudre*: cf. *résoudre*, 161.  
*dissons*: f, 71.  
*distraindre*: cf. *traire*, 161.  
*dissyllabics*: 16.  
*diuers*: place, 222.  
*diu*: pronunc'n, 88.  
*doigt*: *gt* silent, 23 (t).  
*donc*: c heard or not, 23 (c).  
*dont*: use, 111; 276. b.  
*dormir*: 161.  
*dot*: t heard, 23 (t).  
*d'où*: 111.2.  
*doux*: f., 76.2.  
*drachme*: ch = g, 23 (ch).  
*du, dū*: distinc'n, 5. b. 1;  
 — du of *de*, 6, 41; — as  
 part., see part. sign; —  
*du moins*, 394; — *reste*,  
 395.  
*duquel*: for *dont*, 111.1.  
*e*: hist., 1; pron'n, 14; —  
 change to *è*, 35, 74, 126;  
 — lost in fut. cond., 123;  
 — elided, 27; — nouns in,  
 57. b, 59, 60, 63. b, 67,  
 78.2; — fr. Lat. a, 64; —  
 e 'mute' in verse, 423.  
*é*: hist. 1; — pron'n, 4. a,  
 14; — change to *è*, 35;  
 — *é* or *è* before *-ge, -je*, 35.1.  
*è*: hist., 1; — pron'n, 4. a,  
 14; — for *e* (*é*), 35, 74, 126;  
 — *é* or *è* before *-ge, -je*,  
 35.1, 151.  
*ê*: hist., 1, 4. a; pron'n, 14.  
*eau*: hist., 1; — pron'n, 15.  
*ébouillir*: cf. *bouillir*, 161.  
*échapper*: à, 213. d.  
*échoir*: 161.  
*éclore*: cf. *clorre*, 161; —  
 with *être*, 142.  
*écrire*: 161.  
*ei* (*ei*): pron'n, 15.  
*élire*: cf. *lire*, 161.  
*elision*: 26. a, 27.  
*em*: pronunc'n, 19, 19.2.  
*ambassadeur*: f., 78.1.  
*émettre*: cf. *mettre*, 161.  
*emm*: pronunc'n, 19.2.  
*-ement*: pronunc'n, p. 12,  
 note 4.  
*émouvoir*: cf. *mouvoir*, 161.  
*empêcher*: subj., 325; and  
*ne*, 382.  
*empereur*: f., 78.1.  
*empeindre*: cf. *peindre*,  
 161.  
*emprunter*: à, 213. d.  
*en*: prepos'n; with  
 nouns, 214, 192. a; — with  
 pres. partic., 101, 359, 367;  
 — repeated, 217; — pro-

nom'l participle, 101,  
 73, 244, 250. c, 259.  
*enceindre*: cf. *peindre*, 161.  
*enchanteur*: f., 78.  
*enclore*: cf. *clorre*, 161.  
*encourir*: cf. *courir*, 161.  
*endormir*: cf. *dormir*, 161.  
*enduire*: cf. *conduire*, 161.  
*enfant*: m. or f., 60.  
*enfreindre*: cf. *peindre*,  
 161.  
*enfuir*: cf. *fuir*, 161.  
*enjambement*: 427.  
*enjoindre*: cf. *peindre*, 161.  
*enlever*: à, 213. d.  
*enn*: pron'n, 19.2.  
*enquérir*: cf. *acquérir*, 161.  
*ensuivre*: cf. *suivre*, 161.  
*-ent*: in pl., -ens, 66.2.  
*entre*: use, 216. d, 358.  
*entremettre*: cf. *mettre*,  
 161.  
*entreprendre*: cf. *prendre*,  
 161.  
*entrer*: with *être*, 142.  
*entresecourir*: cf. *courir*,  
 161.  
*entresuivre*: cf. *suivre*,  
 161.  
*entretenir*: cf. *tenir*, 161.  
*entrevoir*: cf. *voir*, 161.  
*entrouvrir*: cf. *couvrir*,  
 161.  
*envoyer*: 161.  
*éprendre*: cf. *peindre*, 161.  
*éprendre*: cf. *prendre*, 161.  
*équivaloir*: cf. *valoir*, 161.  
*ès*: use, 41.1.  
*estomac*: c silent, 23 (c).  
*et*: pr. *é*, 14. e. 2 (end p. 11);  
 — not linked, 33; — *et ne*,  
 'nor,' 390.1; — *et* ... *et*,  
 401.  
*êteindre*: cf. *peindre*, 161.  
*être*: conj., 137; — history,  
 138; — for *avoir*, 142-3;  
 — after *ce*, 300; — *être* à,  
 213. c.  
*êtreindre*: cf. *peindre*, 161.  
*eu* (*eu*): hist., 1; — pron'n,  
 15.  
*-eur*: f., 57. b, 78.  
*éviter*: with subjunct., 325  
 and *ne*, 382.  
*excepté*: inf. or not, 220.2.  
*ecture*: cf. *clure*, 161.  
*extraire*: cf. *traire*, 161.  
*ey*: pron'n, 15.  
*f*: pron'n, 23; — change to  
*o*, 30, 69.  
*facile*: *de* or *à*, 361.  
*faillir*: 161.  
*faire*: irr., 161; — with  
 infinit., 208.1.

*faisait* etc.: *fai* = *fe*, 15  
 (ai).  
*falloir*: 161.  
*faon* = *fan*: 17 (ao).  
*fut*: t heard, 23 (t).  
*faut*: see under *il*.  
*fauz*: f., 76.1.  
*favori*: f., 78.2.  
*feindre*: cf. *peindre*, 161.  
*feminine*: see gender, 63.  
*femme* = *fam*: 19.2.  
*férir*: 161.  
*fls* = *fss*: p. 21.  
*fleurir*: irr., 133.  
*forceps*: s heard, 23 (s).  
*forclore*: cf. *clorre*, 161.  
*forfaire*: cf. *faire*, 161.  
*foreign words*: pronunc.,  
 24; pl., 50.2.  
*fortnight*: 235.  
*fou*: forms, 75.  
*foudre*: m. or f., 62. c.  
*fractionale*: 94.  
*frais*: f., 72.  
*franc*: f., 76.1; place, 222.  
*frère*: 161.  
*fuir*: 161.  
*fusil*: l silent, 23 (l).  
*future*: formation, 113. A;  
 — use, 310; — of proba-  
 bility, 313.  
*g*: pron'n, 23; — linking,  
 30; — change to *gu*, 37,  
 76; to *gè*, 37, 129; — =  
 Engl. w, 437.  
*galant*: place, 222.  
*gêndre*: cf. *peindre*, 161.  
*gender*: history, 55; — *masc.*  
 (nouns), 56, 58-63; rhyme,  
 425; — *fem.* (nouns), 57-  
 63; — rhyme, 425; —  
*masc. or fem.*, 60-62.  
*generic article*: use, 40, 40.1;  
 195-6.  
*genou*: pl., 50.1.  
*gens*: m. or f., 62. d.  
*gentil*: pronunc'n, 23 (u),  
 33; f., 74.  
*gésir*: 161.  
*gn*: pron'n, 23.  
*goutte* = *pas*: 389.  
*grand*: in *grand'mère* etc.,  
 64. B.; — place, 222.  
*grave accent*: 5. a.  
*grec*: f., 76.1.  
*gros*: f., 75; — place, 222.  
*gu*: retained + a, o, 129. b;  
 = Engl. w, 437.  
*h*: pron'n, 23; — in spell-  
 ing, 9.1.  
*haïr*: irr., 133.  
*hélas*: s heard, p. 22.  
*héro* etc.: *h* in, 23 (h).

**Asbow**: pl. 50.1.  
**Acronyme**: place, 222.  
**hiatus**: 424.  
**historical infinitive**: 349.  
**Auut**: pronunc'n, 88.  
 hyphen: nouns, 63; numerals, cf. 88; pron's and verbs, 102, 161.  
**é (i)**: pron'n, 14; — elided, 27. s. u.; — for *y*, 36, 131.  
**-ien**: pron'n, 19.1.  
**il**: pronoun, 100; as impera. sub., 251-2; — *il* or *ce* with *être*, 292; — *il y a*, 136; — *il est*, 252 (for *il y a*), 424. s.; — *il faut* (constr. with), 331; — *il s'en faut* with *ne*, 384.  
**-il**: pronunc'n, p. 20.  
**-il**: pronunc'n, p. 20.  
**imperative**: form'n, 135; — with pers. pron., 102, b; — cepr. by subjunct. 308, 308.1.  
**imperfect**: form'n, 135; — use, 306; (in subj.) 336-7; for condit'l after *si*, 308; indep'ly, 308.1.  
**impersonal verbs**: 136.  
**indeclinables**: history, 162, 372; form, 163-75; synt., 373-406.  
**inf. article**: cf. *un*.  
**indefinites (pr. and adj.)**: form, 112; synt., 282-94.  
**indicative**: cf. the different tenses.  
**induire**: cf. *conduire*, 161.  
**infinitive**: history, 113, B, 840; — sign of, 117; — correspond'g to Engl. inf. and ger., 341; — without prepos'n, 343-4, 353; with *de*, 346-9, 353, 361; with *à*, 350-3, 361; — historical infinit., 349; — after nouns and adj., 361; — for subjunct., 331; — frequent use of, 362.  
**inscrire**: cf. *écrire*, 161.  
**instruire**: cf. *conduire*, 161.  
**interjections**: 175.  
**interrogative verbs**: 151-2.  
**interrogatives (pr. and adj.)**: 108; synt., 271.  
**intervenir**: cf. *venir*, 161.  
**introduire**: cf. *conduire*, 161.  
**inversion**: 413; in questions, 414; in opt. or cond. phrases, 415; in clauses not headed by the subject, 416; in interjected phrases, 417.

**irregular verbs**: 155-61 (list, 161; all repeated in index).  
**issir**: 161.  
**jadis**: s heard, 23 (s).  
**jamais**: with *ne*, 388; alone, 388.1.  
**je**: for *moi*, 245.  
**joindre**: cf. *peindre*, 161.  
**joug**: g heard, 23 (g).  
**jouer**: *de* or *à*, 211. c, 212. a.  
**jouir**: *de*, 211. g.  
**joujou**: pl., 50.1.  
**juger**: *de*, 211. g.  
**jusque**: ell's'n, 27. a.  
**k**: 3. s., 20.  
**l**: doubled, 35, 73-5, 126; — change to *u*, 1, 47. b, 40; saved in Engl., lost in Fr., 436.  
**la, là**: dist'n, 5. a. 1; — *là*, 107.  
**laisser**: with inf., 208.1.  
**la plupart**: cf. *plupart*.  
**laps**: s heard, 23 (s).  
**le (la, les)**: history, 38, 179; — form, 40; — not elided, 27.1; def. or gener. article, 40, 40. note; — contr'n, 41; — gen'l use, 180-196; for poss. adj., 182-4; with nouns of weight, etc., 185; with fractional names, 186; with titles, 187; in idioms, 188; with proper nouns, 189-90; with geogr. nouns, 191-4; as gener. art., 195; with names of lang., 196; — with the part. *de*, 43, 45, 199, 200; — *le* as determinat., 107.4; — *le* expletive, 250. a. 1; — *le 'so'*, 250. b; — *le moins, le plus*, as adv., 230; as noun, 231.1.  
**lequel**: inter., 108, 110, 271; relat., 110, 276; as adj., 278.  
**leur**: pers. or poss., 100, 106; use, 244.  
**linking**: 26. b, 28-33.  
**lire**: 161.  
**lis**: s in, 23 (s).  
**l'on** for *on*: 112. s.  
**lorsque**: ell's'n, 27. a; — use, 404.  
**lui**: pers. pr., 100; use, 242.1; 244; for *son*, 258.  
**luire**: cf. *conduire*, 161.  
**l'un l'autre**: 294.

**m**: pron'n, 23, 19; in foreign names, 24. A, 25; — linking, 33.  
**mais**: s heard, 23 (s).  
**maintenir**: cf. *tenir*, 161.  
**mal**: comp., 168.  
**malfaire**: cf. *faire*, 161.  
**malhonnête**: place, 161.  
**malin**: f., 70.  
**'many'**: rendered, 85; 'many a', 293.  
**marc**: c silent, 23 (c).  
**mars**: s heard, 23 (s).  
**maudire**: cf. *dire*, 161.  
**masculine**: see *gender*.  
**mauvais**: compar'n, 82; place, 221.  
**measure**: how expressed, 211.  
**méconnaître**: cf. *connaître*, 161.  
**méchant**: place, 222.  
**médire**: cf. *dire*, 161.  
**méfaire**: cf. *faire*, 161.  
**même**: 100.4; 104-5; 107.  
**mentir**: cf. *sentir*, 161.  
**méprendre**: cf. *prendre*, 161.  
**mettre**: 161.  
**mie**: *pas*: 389; in *ma mie* 106.1 (parenth.).  
**mien**: for *le mien*, 263. s.  
**mil**: for *mille*, 89.1.  
**mille** etc.: pron., 23 (il).  
**'mine'** etc.: expressed, 263.  
**mœurs**: s heard, 23 (s).  
**moi**: forms, 73.  
**mon**: for *ma*, 106.1 (hist., note 1, parenth.); — in address, 262.  
**monsieur**: pron'n, 19. s.; — orig., 262.  
**'more, most'**: rendered, 85.  
**mot**: *pas*: 389.  
**mou**: forms, 73.  
**moudre**: 161.  
**mourir**: irr., 161; with *être*, 142.  
**mouvoir**: 161.  
**-mpt**: = *mt*: 23 (p).  
**multiplicatives**: 95.  
**n**: pron'n, 23, 19; in foreign names, 24. A, 25; — linking, 31; — doubled, 35, 73-5, 126.  
**naître**: conj., 161; — w. *être*, 142.  
**nasal vowels**: 19; linking, 31.  
**n'avoir garde**: 376.  
**ne**: — (a) with *pas* (point etc.): history, 372; use, 153, 169, 374, 388-9; with *aucun, personne, nul*, 112.4; 291, 388; — (b) *ne*

alone, 375-80 (with *pouvoir* etc., 376; after *que*, 376; with *plaise*, 376, 376.1; after negat. verbs, 378; after expressions of effort, 379; after *si*, 380); — (c) *ne* expletive, 381-2 (after *empêcher* etc., 382; after words of fear etc., 383; after *avant que*, 383.1; after *il s'en faut*, 384; after *depuis que* or *que*, 385; after comparat., 386; after *autre* etc., 386.1; after *à moins que*, 387).  
negation: cf. *ne*.  
*neuf*: f in, 23 (f).  
*net*: f heard, 23 (f).  
*neuf*: pron'n, 88.  
*ni*: use, 390, 390.1, 297.  
*n'importe*: 376, 376.1.  
*non* (pas): 373.  
nouns: history, 47, 205; for numb., gen., etc., cf. these topics; — with prepos., 209-17.  
*nous*: for *je*, 246.  
*nouveau*: forms, 75; — place, 222.  
*ou*: inf. or not, 219.4.  
*nuire*: cf. *conduire*, 161.  
*nul*: f., 74; with *ne*, 291; — alone, 388.1.  
*nullement*: with *ne*, 388; alone, 388.1.  
numerals: 86-95 (cf. cardinals, ordinals, etc.); — synt., 232 etc.

*o* (ô): pron'n, 14.  
*obéir*: à, 213. d.  
object: place, 410.  
*obtenir*: cf. *tenir*, 161.  
*ô*: pron'n, 15.  
*œil*: pl., 50.4.  
*œu*: pron'n, 15.  
*œuf*: f in, 23 (f).  
*offrir*: cf. *couverir*, 161.  
*oi* (ô): hist., 1; — pron'n, 17, 23 (under *gn*); — for *ai*, 17 (ô, note 2).  
*oignon*: f sil't, 23 (gn).  
*oindre*: cf. *peindre*, 161.  
*-oir*: verbs in, 113. C, 116.1, 121.1.  
*omettre*: cf. *mettre*, 161.  
*on*: 112 (l'on, 112.1), 288, 302.  
'only': not transl., 237.1.  
'one': 388.1.  
ordinals: 91.  
*orgue*: m. or f., 62. a.  
*oser*: *ne*, 376.  
*ôter*: à, 213. d.

*ou* (où, ô): hist., 1; — pron'n, 15.  
*ou*, *ou*: distinc'n, 5. a.1; — *ou*, verbs after, 297. a.; — *ou*, pron. particle, 111, 276. b.  
*ouïr*: 161.  
*ours*: s in, 23 (s).  
*outil*: l silent, 23 (il).  
*ouvrir*: cf. *couverir*, 161.

*p*: not linked, 33.  
*paître*: 161.  
*paon*: o silent, 17 (ao).  
*par*: use, 216, 354.  
*parce que*: elided, 27; use, 401.1.  
*paraître*: cf. *connaître*, 161.  
*parcourir*: cf. *courir*, 161.  
*paraître*: cf. *faire*, 161.  
*parmi*: 216. d.  
participles: history, 363 (141); — present, 365-7; — past, 141, 368-71.  
*partir*: conj. of *sentir*; w. *être*, 142.  
partitive sign: (a) dependent, 43-4, 198; — (b) independent, 43, 45, 199-200; omitted, 46, 201-4.  
*parvenir*: cf. *venir*, 161.  
*pas*: cf. *ne*; — without verb, 373.  
*passé*: inf. 220.4.  
passive voice: history, 113. a; conj'n, 140.  
past part'ple: cf. participles.  
*pauvre*: place, 222.  
*pays* etc.: pron'n, 15 (ay, note).  
*pendant que*: 406.  
*peindre*, 161.  
*penser*: à, 213. d.  
*percevoir*: cf. *recevoir*, 161.  
*péril*: pron'n, 23 (il).  
*permettre*: cf. *mettre*, 161.  
personal pronouns: elision 27.1; — forms, 100; — position, 102, 254-6; — dative relat'n, 243; — replaced by *en*, *y*, 101, 244 (by adv., 244. c); — with two verbs, 256; — for possess'a, 258.  
*personne*: m. or f., 62. b; use, 112.4, 290, 388.  
*peu*: compar'n, 168; — with *de*, 44, 198.  
*petit*: compar'n, 82; place, 222.  
*plaindre*: cf. *peindre*, 161.  
*plaire*: conj., 161; — with *à*, 213. d.  
*plaisant*: place, 222.  
*pleuvoir*: 161.

*plupart*: with *du* (*de*, *la*, *des*), 198.  
plural: history, 47. B; — of nouns, 49-54 (comm. nouns, 49-50; prop. nouns, 51; comp. nouns, 53-4); — of adject's, 66.  
*plus*: or *davantage*, 396; — with *ne*, 388 (alone, 388.1).  
*plûtôt*: with *ne*, 386.1.  
*proêle*: pron'n, 17 (œ).  
*poign*: f in, 23 (gn).  
*poindre*: 161.  
*point*: cf. *ne*.  
*porc*: c silent, 23 (c).  
possessives: 106, 257-63 (personal's for, 258; *en* for, 259; repeated, 261).  
*pou*: pl., 50.1.  
*pour*: w. infinit., 355.  
*poursuivre*: cf. *suivre*, 161.  
*pouvoir*: cf. *voir*, 161.  
*pouvoir*: conj., 161; use, 317. a, b; with *ne* alone, 376.  
*prédire*: cf. *dire*, 161.  
*préfix*: f., 76.1.  
*prédire*: cf. *lire*, 161.  
*prendre*: 161.  
prepositions: 171-2; — with nouns, 209 (cf. each prep'n); — repeated, 217.  
*prescrire*: cf. *écrire*, 161.  
present: simple, 304; compound, 305.  
*presque*: elis'n, 27.  
*pressentir*: cf. *sentir*, 161.  
*prévenir*: cf. *venir*, 161.  
preterit: 306.  
*prevailoir*: cf. *valoir*, 161.  
*prévoir*: cf. *voir*, 161.  
principal parts: of verbs, 135.  
*produire*: cf. *conduire*, 161.  
*promettre*: cf. *mettre*, 161.  
*promouvoir*: cf. *mouvoir*, 161.  
pronouns: cf. each class; — history, 96.  
proper nouns: pronunc'n, 24; — plur. of, 51; — with article, 189-94.  
*propre*: place, 222.  
*proscrire*: cf. *écrire*, 161.  
*provenir*: cf. *venir*, 161.  
*provisque*: elis'n, 27.  
punctuation: 419.  
*pupille*: ill in, 23 (ill).  
*pur*: place, 222.  
*q*: pron'n, 23, 17 (u + vowel).  
*qu*: retained before a, o, 129. b.  
*quand*: or *quant*, 398; —

or *lorsque*; — *condit'*, 401.1.

quantity: 11-12, 14.

quart: 92.2.

que: — pronoun: interr., 108, 278; relat., 109, 276, 283-1; 'what', 273; in indef., 283, 287; — participle: in comparison, 84, 221-5; explet., 266. n, 360; in exclam'n, 400; with *ne* and subj., 333, 385; with *non*, 373.1; for compound conj'n, 403. b; repeated, 403. a; for *si*, 403. b.

quel: 108, 271.

quelconque: use, 112. a, 285.

quel que: 287.

quelque: ell'n, 27; — use, 282-3; — invar., 282.1; — with *que*, 283.

quelque chose: gender, 284.

quérir: 161.

qu'est-ce qui (que), 273.1.

qui: interr., 108, 272; — relat., 109-10, 276, 280-1; — in indef., 277, 283, 287.

quiconque: 112, 286.

Quint: 90.1.

quoi: interr., 108, 274; — relat., 109, 279; — in indef., 287.

quoique: ell'n, 27.

r: pron'n, 23; — not linked, 33.

radoub: b heard, 23 (b).

rapprendre: cf. *prendre*, 161.

rassoir: cf. *asseoir*, 161.

ravir: à, 213. d.

raiteindre: cf. *peindre*, 161.

rebouillir: cf. *bouillir*, 161.

recevoir: 161.

reciprocal verbs: 144-50.

reclure: cf. *-chure*, 161.

reconduire: cf. *conduire*, 161.

reconnaître: cf. *naître*, 161.

reconquérir: cf. *acquérir*, 161.

reconstruire: cf. *construire*, 161.

recoudre: cf. *coudre*, 161.

recourir: cf. *courir*, 161.

récrire: cf. *écrire*, 161.

recroître: cf. *croître*, 161.

recueillir: cf. *cueillir*, 161.

red'faire: cf. *faire*, 161.

redénerir: cf. *dévenir*, 161.

redire: cf. *dire*, 161.

redoubler: de, 211. g.

réduire: cf. *conduire*, 161.

relire: cf. *lire*, 161.

refaire: cf. *faire*, 161.

reflexive: pron., 100, 253;

constr'n, 103-5, 144-9; —

participle in, 145.2, 368. c;

— verbs with *de*, 211. g.

refuir: cf. *fuir*, 161.

regal: pl., 50.2.

regular verbs: 112-63.

rejoindre: cf. *peindre*, 161.

relatives: 109-11, 271-81 (and

of each).

relire: cf. *lire*, 161.

releuire: cf. *conduire*, 161.

remettre: cf. *mettre*, 161.

remoudre: cf. *moudre*, 161.

renaitre: cf. *naître*, 161.

rendormir: cf. *dormir*, 161.

renoncer: à, 213. d.

rentraire: cf. *traire*, 161.

renvoyer: cf. *envoyer*, 161.

repaitre: cf. *paître*, 161.

reparaître: cf. *paraître*, 161.

repartir: cf. *sentir*, 161.

repeindre: cf. *peindre*, 161.

repentir: cf. *sentir*, 161.

répondre: à, 213. d.

reprandre: cf. *prendre*, 161.

reproduire: cf. *conduire*, 161.

requérir: cf. *acquérir*, 161.

résister: à, 213. d.

résoudre: 161.

ressembler: à, 213. d.

ressentir: cf. *sentir*, 161.

ressourvenir: cf. *venir*, 161.

restraire: cf. *peindre*, 161.

reteindre: cf. *peindre*, 161.

réteindre: cf. *peindre*, 161.

retenir: cf. *tenir*, 161.

retraire: cf. *traire*, 161.

revaloir: cf. *valoir*, 161.

revenir: cf. *venir*, 161.

revêtir: cf. *vêtir*, 161.

revièvre: cf. *vièvre*, 161.

rhyme: 425.

rien: 112.4, 290, 388, 388.1.

rîre: 161.

rouvrir: cf. *couvrir*, 161.

rouz: f., 76.1.

rumb: b heard, 23 (b).

s: pron'n, 23-4 (prop. nouns,

24); — linking, 30, 32-3;

— plur. sign, 47. B, 49; —

doubled, 74; appended to

certain verb-forms, 27. s, b,

113. A (pers. end.), 127;

— omitted in verse, 425.2;

— retained in Engl., lost

in Fr., 436.

sache: irr. use, 389.

saillir: 161.

saône: a silent, 17 (ao).

satisfaire: conj.; cf. *fuir*,

161; — with *à*, 213. d.

savoir: irr., 161; — use,

317. a, b; — with *ne* alone,

376.

sculpt: p silent, 23 (p).

sc: pron'n, 23 (s).

se: 100, 104, 253.

sec: f., 76.1.

second: c = g, 23 (c).

secourir: cf. *courir*, 161.

séduire: cf. *conduire*, 161.

s'en aller: 149.

sentir: 161.

sens: s heard, 23 (s).

sentence: accent, 10.2; — ar-

ranger't (history, 407; di-

rect, 409; inverted, 413).

seoir: 161.

sept: pron'n, 88.

servir: cf. *sentir*, 161.

serviteur: f., 76.1.

seulement: 388.2.

si: t elided, 27. s, a; — with

cond'l, 295, 314; — with

pres't, 304. c; — with im-

per'f, 306; — with fut.,

311; — with subj., 332; —

si or aussi, 393; — re-

placed by *que*, 403. b.

si or out: 397.

signet: g silent, 23 (gn).

simple: place, 222.

singular for plural: 184.1.

so: 100, 104-5, 253.

soit . . . soit: 401.

sortir: conj., cf. *sentir*,

161; with être, 142.

soudre: 161.

souffrir: cf. *couvrir*, 161.

soûl: l silent, 23 (l).

souloir: 161.

soumettre: cf. *mettre*, 161.

sourcil: l silent, 23 (il).

sourdre: 161.

souscrire: cf. *écrire*, 161.

soustraire: cf. *traire*, 161.

soutenir: cf. *tenir*, 161.

soutirer: à, 213. d.

souvenir: cf. *venir*, 161.

-sse: fem. end'g, 68. b.

-st: pron'n, 23 (t), 24. B.

subjunctive: history, 319; —

general use, 320.

IN SUBORD. CLAUSES:

general, 321-2; — classif'n,

323; — reference-lists of

words govern'g the subj.

of uncertain completion

(verbs and verb-phrases,

325-327; conjunct. phrases

and relat. pron., 326-7); of

emotion (verbs and verb-

- phrases. 328); of *mental reserve* (exclusive words, 329; conjunct. and pron. phrases, 330); — after *si*, 332; — special cases, 334; — use of tenses, 336; — replaced by infinit., 331.
- IN INDEPEND. CLAUSES:**  
338; — *sache*, 339.
- subvenir*: cf. *venir*, 161.
- sud*: *d* heard, 23 (*d*).
- suffire*: 161.
- suivre*: 161.
- superlative: form'n, 81-2, 85; — with *de*, 211. *d*; — repet'n, 229; — no article, 229.1; — absolute, 229.2; — invariable, 230.
- supposé*: infl., 220.4.
- surcroître*: cf. *croître*, 161.
- surfaire*: cf. *faire*, 161.
- surprendre*: cf. *prendre*, 161.
- surseoir*: cf. *asseoir*, 161.
- survenir*: cf. *venir*, 161.
- survêtir*: cf. *vêtir*, 161.
- survivre*: cf. *vivre*, 161.
- syllabication: 9.
- t*: pron'n, 26; — linking, 33; — doubled, 35, 74-5, 126; added in verbs, 27.2. b; 113. a (pers. end.), 151. b; — lost, p. 65 (foot-note), 134.
- tabac*: *c* silent, 23 (*c*).
- taire*: cf. *plaire*, 161.
- tandis que*: *elis'n*, 27; use, 406.
- tant mieux (pis)*, 393.1; *emphat.*, 393.2.
- taon*: *ao* in, 17.
- teindre*: cf. *peindre*, 161.
- tel*: 112, 293.
- tenir*: 161.
- teur*: nouns in, 63. b, 78.
- teuse*: 63. b, 78.
- tiers*: 92.2.
- time: expressed, 90, 234, 237.
- tomber*: with *être*, 142.
- tous*: *s* in, 23 (*s*).
- tout*: 112. c, 112.2, 292; — *à coup (d'un coup)*, 399; — *en*, 367.1; — *que*, 292.2.
- traduire*: cf. *conduire*, 161.
- traire*: 161.
- tranquille*: *ill* in, 23 (*ill*).
- transcrire*: cf. *écrire*, 161.
- transmettre*: cf. *mettre*, 161.
- travail*: pl., 50.4.
- tressaillir*: cf. *assaillir*, 161.
- trice*: fem. end'g, 63. b, 78.
- tu*: use of, 247-8.
- u* (*û*): hist., 1; — pron'n, 14; + vow., 17 (and cf. *qu*).
- ue*: hist., 1; pron'n, 15, 17 (*u* + vow.).
- un*: hist., 38; form, 42; use, 197; omitted, 203-4.
- user*: *de* or not, 211. g.
- vaincre*: 161 (131).
- valoir*: 161.
- venir*: conj. cf. *tenir*, 161; with *être*, 142.
- verbs: history, 113, 295; — classif'n, 116-17; — reg., 112-154; — irreg., 155-161; — agreem't, 296-302; w. one of several subjects, 297-8; w. collect's, 299; after *ce*, 300; after *qui*, 301; after *nous, vous, on*, 302; — modes and tenses, see each.
- vers*: 216. f.
- verse: general, 421; — syllables and caesura, 422; *e* mute, 323; — hiatus, 424; — rhyme, 425; — words and constr'ns, 426; — enjambement, 427; — kinds of, 428.
- vêtir*: 161.
- vieux*: forms, 75.
- ville*: *ill* in, 23 (*ill*).
- vingt*: pron'n, 88.
- vis*: *s* heard, 23 (*s*).
- vivre*: 161.
- voir*: 161.
- vouloir*: 161.
- vous*: use, 100.2, 247, 249; — verbs after, 302.
- vowels: history, 2; pron'n, 14-19 (see each).
- vu*: infl'n, 220.4.
- w*: pron'n, 23.
- 'what': 280.
- 'whose': 111.1, 276. c.
- x*: pron'n, 23; — linking, 30; — spurious sign, 47. B; — plur. sign, 47. B, 49; — change to *s*, 76.
- y*: pron'n, 18; — or *i*, 36, 131.
- y*: pronom'l particle, 101, 244; — *y compris*, 220.4.
- z*: pron'n, 23.
- zigzag*: *g* heard, 23 (*g*).





## ANNOUNCEMENTS.

---

### *MODERN LANGUAGES.*

---

#### *Heath's Series of Modern Language Texts.*

TO supply the increasing demand for improved text-books, growing out of the immense advance in modern language study during the last decade, we have planned to publish a series of Texts, selected and edited by the most eminent scholars, and carefully graded to meet the wants of different classes of students.

This series will embrace such classics in these languages as are commonly read in American colleges and schools, with some others that are well adapted for such use, but are not now available for lack of suitable editions.

The editions will be handsomely printed and neatly bound, in cheap and handy volumes, suitable for the class-room or for private reading. In each grade sufficient variety will be offered for students of all ages. All the books will represent, in their respective grades, the latest progress of scholarship and the best results of experience in teaching.

For description of books already published, see our special circulars or descriptive catalogue.

For fuller description of books in preparation, see succeeding pages of this announcement.

*The following list comprises books already published or now in preparation. Those printed in italics are in preparation. It is our purpose to extend this list, and to make it so complete in the number and character of the books, that teachers may safely apply to us for new material in every part of their work; and any hints from teachers as to books needed, or improvements on those already published, will be gratefully received.*

## CLASSIFIED LIST OF BOOKS.

(From the nature of the case the following classification can be only very general; the place for a given work depending on the age and present attainments of the student and the method of instruction.)

I. **ELEMENTARY.**—For earliest study; with full grammatical notes and vocabulary:—

1. German.

First Year Preparatory Course.	Professor Faulhaber.
Beginner's German Reader.	" Joynes.
Grimm's Märchen.	" Van der Smissen.
Colloquial German Reader.	" Deutsch.
Preparatory Book of German Prose.	" Boisen.
German Conversation.	" Meissner.

2. French.

Preparatory French Reader.	" Super.
<i>Familiar Fables in French.</i>	" Joynes.

3. Spanish.

Practical Method in Spanish.	" Ybarra.
------------------------------	-----------

II. **INTERMEDIATE.**—With notes:—

1. German.

(a) Easy prose for first year classes, or for rapid reading in the second year.

Leander's Träumereien.	Professor Van Daell.
Krummacher's Parabeln.	" Harrison.
Storm's Immensee.	" ———
Hauff's Das Kalte Herz ( <i>with vocabulary</i> ).	" Van der Smissen.
Hauff's Der Zwerg Nase ( <i>no notes</i> ).	" Grandgent.
Onkel und Nichte ( <i>notes in preparation</i> ).	" Faulhaber.
Novelletten-Bibliothek. ( <i>2 independent vols.</i> )	" Bernhardt.
Hoffmann's Historische Erzählungen.	" Beresford-Webb.
Ali Baba and the Forty Thieves ( <i>no notes</i> ).	" Grandgent.

## (b) Prose and verse somewhat more advanced.

Chamisso's Peter Schlemihl.	Professor Primer.
Jensen's Die braune Erica.	" Joynes.
Holberg's Niels Klim.	" Babbitt.
Freytag's Die Journalisten.	" Toy.
François' Phosphorus Hollunder.	" Faulhaber.
Freytag's Aus dem Staat Friedrich des Grossen.	" Hager.
German Science Reader.	" Gore.
Scientific German.	" Hodges.
Kleist's Michael Kolhaas.	" Primer.
Heine's Poems.	" White.
Heine's Die Harzreise.	" Van Daell.
Schiller's Geisterseher.	" Joynes.
Schiller's Der Taucher.	" Van der Smissen.
Schiller's Wilhelm Tell.	" ———
Schiller's Jungfrau von Orleans.	" Wells.

## 2. French.

## (a) Easy prose.

Lamartine's Jeanne d'Arc.	Professor Barrère.
Petite Histoire du Peuple Français.	" ———
Souvestre's Le Mari de Mme. de Solange.	" Super.
Lectures Françaises.	" Cohn.
George Sand's La Famille de Germandre.	" Sée.
George Sana's Les Maîtres Mosaïstes.	" "
Historiettes Modernes. (2 independent vols.)	" Fontaine.
De Musset's Pierre et Camille.	" Super.
De Vigny's Le Cachet Rouge.	" Fortier.
De Vigny's La Canne de Jonc.	" Spiers.
France's Abeille.	" Lebon.

## (b) Prose somewhat more advanced.

Victor Hugo's Bug Jargal.	" Boïelle.
Daudet's La Belle-Nivernaise.	" "
Souvestre's Un Philosophe sous les Toits (with and without vocabulary).	" Fraser.

Souvestre's <i>Confessions d'un Ouvrier</i> .	Professor Super.
Sept Grands Auteurs du XIX. <sup>e</sup> Siècle.	" Fortier.
<i>Revolutions of Modern France</i> .	" Easton.
<i>Morceaux Choisis de Mme. de Staël</i> .	" Sée.
<i>Voltaire's Prose</i> .	" Cohn.
Molière's <i>Le Bourgeois Gentilhomme</i> .	" Gasc.
Molière's <i>Le Médecin malgré lui</i> .	" "
Molière's <i>Le Tartuffe</i> .	" "

**III. ADVANCED.** — For higher reading in college or university, with notes explanatory and critical : —

**1. German.**

<i>Heine's Prose</i> .	Profs. Sheldon and Bendelari.
<i>Goethe's Egmont</i> .	Professor ———
Goethe's <i>Torquato Tasso</i> .	" Thomas.
<i>Goethe's Shorter Poems</i> .	" Van der Smissen.
<i>Goethe's Faust. Parts I. and II.</i>	" Thomas.
Goethe's <i>Sesenheim. From Dichtung und Wahrheit</i> .	" Huss.
<i>Schiller's Wallenstein</i> .	" Bartlett.
<i>Schiller's Über Naïve und Sentimentalische Dichtung</i> .	" von Jagemann.
Schiller's <i>Ballads</i> .	" Johnson.
<i>Lessing's Prose</i> .	" Brandt.
Lessing's <i>Minna von Barnhelm</i> .	" Primer.
<i>Lessing's Emilia Galotti</i> .	Profs. Richardson and Genung.
<i>Grillparzer's Sappho</i> .	Professor Buchheim.
<i>Deutsche Literaturgeschichte. Erstes Buch</i> .	" Wenckebach.
<i>Musterstücke zur d. Lit. Erstes Buch</i> .	" "

**2. French.**

<i>Corneille's Polyeucte</i> .	Professor Fortier.
<i>Victor Hugo's Ruy Blas</i> .	" Garner.
<i>Choix d'Extraits de Daudet</i> .	" Price.
<i>Lamartine's Méditations</i> .	" Curme.
<i>Piron's La Métromanie</i> .	" Delbos.
<i>Introduction to Modern French Lyrics</i> .	" Bowen.

3. Spanish.

*Cervantes' Don Quijote de la Mancha*  
(with vocabulary).

Professor Todd.

*Calderon's La Vida es Sueño.*

" Lang.

4. Italian.

*Boccaccio's Decamerone.*

" Elliott.

IV. **GRAMMATICAL**. — Herein the attempt will be made to supply the long-felt desideratum of *working grammars* which shall represent the best results of modern scholarship, and at the same time meet the wants of teachers and pupils of every grade, up to the highest classes in colleges and universities:

1. German.

Joynes-Meissner German Grammar.

Professor Joynes.

A Short German Grammar.

" Sheldon.

Selections for German Composition.

" Harris.

German at Sight.

" Babbitt.

2. French.

French Grammar.

" Edgren.

3. Italian.

Italian Grammar.

" Grandgent.

V. **HISTORIES OF LITERATURE.**

*Deutsche Literaturgeschichte.*

Professor Wenckebach.

Primer of French Literature.

" Warren.

VI. **DICTIONARIES.**

Heath's New German Dictionary.

Elizabeth Weir.

" " French "

Professor Roubaud.

---

## *Hints on French Syntax.*

---

With exercises. By F. STORR, Chief Master of Modern Subjects, Merchant Tailors' Schools, London. 5th Edition. 48 pages. Flexible cloth, and interleaved. Introduction price, 30 cents.

CLEAR and practical rules on the essentials of French Syntax, illustrated by examples, emphasis being laid on those topics on which the author has found that students most need direction. He has borne in mind, that the fewer and simpler such rules are, and the less that anomalies and rare usages are insisted on, the more time will be left for acquiring a mastery of the language, to which end grammar is but a subsidiary, and not the chief instrument.

The exercises consist of graded sentences, taken mostly from standard authors, and following only in general the same order as the "Hints." The evil, so common in similar books, of meaningless sentences, to be translated by mechanically applying rules which they are made to illustrate, is therefore eliminated.

A key is also published, *and is sent to teachers only.*

---

## *Primer of French Literature.*

---

By F. M. WARREN, Associate in French and German, Johns Hopkins University, Baltimore, Md. Cloth, 256 pages. Mailing price, 85 cents. Introduction price, 75 cents.

THE object of this Primer is to give an outline of French Literature from the origin down to the present day. It embodies the most recent investigations of the scientific periodicals on the Mediæval Literature, while the part relating to Classical and Modern authors is derived from notes used in private-school instruction. It is thus expected to meet the wants of both elementary and advanced work in colleges and private schools.

The make-up of the Primer resembles that of Jebb's Greek or Brooke's English, with chronological and subject divisions of the matter, typographical devices to catch the eye and aid the memory, and a complete index of proper names and the leading anonymous works. The sociological aspects of the various periods and the influence of foreign literatures are also concisely indicated. While designed primarily for classes, it can be used as a hand-book for private reading and a point of departure for farther study.

## *Preparatory French Reader.*

By O. B. SUPER, Ph.D., Professor of Modern Languages, Dickinson College, Carlisle, Pa. 232 pages. Cloth. Price by mail, 90 cents. Introduction price, 80 cents.

**M**ANY teachers of French have complained of the lack of easy and interesting reading suitable for beginners, and this book is intended to supply this want. It is not a "Classic French Reader," consisting of extracts in prose and poetry, but contains easy and entertaining stories of some length,—long enough to give the pupil a chance to become interested in them. The book aims to develop facility in reading,—to teach not literature but language, and thus to prepare for the appreciation of literature. The text, therefore, is so simple that translation will not be a burden, and so arranged that a vocabulary will be fixed, progress seen, and moderate facility in reading easily acquired.

The selections are progressive in character, beginning with short translations from Andersen's tales, continuing with one from the Grimm Brothers and another from Mme. de Girardin. The second part is more advanced, containing tales or selections from Erckmann-Chatrian, A. Dumas, A. Daudet, Méry, and Mme. Foa, averaging some eight pages each. The third part consists of "Les Prisonniers du Caucase," by Xavier de Maistre. The poems are pleasing, and have been chosen chiefly on account of their simplicity. Notes and a vocabulary are added. The vocabulary contains one feature believed to be new; viz., the showing, as far as a difference in type would permit, the indebtedness of the English language to the French.

*Our special circular on this book shows that it has been received in all parts of the country with the appreciation to which its merits entitle it. The circular also shows that nearly one hundred colleges and schools adopted this book the first year after publication.*

**Thos. McCabe, Ph.D., Prof. of** *French, Swain Free School, New Bedford:* Je l'ai trouvé excellent tant pour la parfaite traduction des meilleures pièces d'Andersen et la matière extrêmement bonne que pour le plan entier qui est logique et conforme à toutes les lois de l'instruction moderne. Certainement je me

**Hermann Schoenfeld, Prof. of** *servirai de ce livre à l'occasion donnée.*



## *Heath's New French Dictionary.*

In two parts: French-English and English-French. Compiled from the best authorities in both languages by Professors De Lorme and Wallace, and Henry Bridgeman. Revised, Corrected, and Considerably Enlarged from the 7th and latest edition (1877) of the Dictionary of the French Academy by Professor E. Roubaud, B. A. (Paris). Two hundred and sixty-second thousand. 1152 pages. Cloth. Retail price, \$1.50. Special price for class use.

**T**HIS edition has been made to conform to the 7th and latest edition (1877) of the Dictionary of the French Academy. This has involved the introduction of nearly 3000 additional words and of changes in the spelling, accentuation and hyphens of many others. Words, now obsolete, are designated; the plural of foreign and compound nouns is indicated, and a *complete* list of nouns of double gender together with their meanings has been added. The dictionary contains also full vocabularies of Proper Names,—historical, mythological and geographical, together with a table of French coins, measures and weights with their equivalents.

In short, neither expense nor pains have been spared to make it thoroughly accurate, and to adapt it in every way to the requirements of our time. It is at once cheap and complete, and it is believed to contain many useful features which exist in no other French-English Dictionary.

*Specimen pages sent on application.*

**R. M. Jones, Head Master, William Penn Charter School, Philadelphia:** It really does seem as though you now have got the work beyond competition. I ask for nothing better.

**Prof. E. Snyder, Illinois Industrial Univ., Champaigne, Ill.:** I find it the best Dictionary for class work.

**G. W. De Lisle, French Master, Marlborough Coll., Eng.:** I have been using your French Dictionary and like it very much. I have given directions to order it henceforth as the school Dictionary.

**New York World:** The wonderful popularity of this work ceases to be wonderful when it is examined.

**Edward S. Joynes, Prof. of Mod. Langs., Univ. of S. C.:** In all points, including *price*, it is better fitted than any book of its class I have ever seen for the use of students generally in school or college.

**Ben. Winfield, B. A., Head Master, Manchester Commercial Schools:** In completeness, accuracy, type, and cheapness, it far surpasses in excellence any work of its class yet presented to the public.

**B. F. Sledd, Prof. of Mod. Langs., Wake Forest College, N. C.:** Your new dictionaries prove excellent in every respect. My students are entirely satisfied with them.







